 السلام عليكم ورحة الله وبركاته: أما بعد:
فإن الرئاسة العامة لإدارات البحوث العلمية والإفتاء والدعوة والإرشاد بالمملكة العربية السعودية تقرر أن الدكتور محمد تقى الدين الهلالي والدكتور محمد حسن خان قد قاما بترجمة معاني القرآن الكريم وصحيح الإمام البخاري وكتاب اللذلول والمرجان فيها اتفقت عليه البخاري وسلم إلى اللغة الإنجليزية ترجمة صحيحة وذلك أثناء عملهما في الجامعة الإسلامية بالمدينة المنورة، فلا معنى من الفسح لهذه الكتب بالدخول إلى المملكة وتداولها لعدم المحذور فيها والله ولي التوفيق.
وصلت الرسول صلى الله وسلم على بنينا محمد وأي والله وصبه.
الرئيس العام
إدارات البحوث العلمية والإفتاء والدعوة والإرشاد
عبد العزيز بن عبد الله بن باز
الدكتور محمد تقى الدين الهلالي:

الدكتور محمد محسن خان:

تقرر الأمانة العامة للجامعة الإسلامية بالمدينة المنورة أن المذكورين بعاليه كانا من ضمن الاعماليين بالجامعة. وأنها قد قاما أثناء ذلك بترجمة معاني القرآن الكريم باللغة الإنجليزية وترجمة صحيح البخاري بها أيضاً.

ولقد سدت بحمد الله فراً كبيراً يحتاج العالم الإسلامي للملته. كما أن المذكورين يمتزجان بحسن العقيدة السليمة من الشواوين، وبالصفات الحميدة.

وبناء على الرغبة أعطيا هذه الشهادة، والله ولتي التوفيق.

وصلى الله وسلم وبارك على نبينا محمد وعلى آله وصحبه.

الأمين العام للجامعة

أ. محمد فلانه
11 – THE BOOK OF AL-
JUMU‘AH (FRIDAY) .................. 21

(1) CHAPTER. The prescription of Jumu‘ah prayer and Khutba ........... 21
(2) CHAPTER. The superiority of taking a bath on Friday .................... 21
(3) CHAPTER. To perfume before going for the Friday (prayer) ........... 22
(4) CHAPTER. The superiority of Jumu‘ah (prayer and Khutba) ........... 23
(5) CHAPTER ........................................ 24
(6) CHAPTER. To use (hair) oil for the Friday prayer ........................... 24
(7) CHAPTER. To wear the best clothes (for the Jumu‘ah prayer) ... 25
(8) CHAPTER. To clean the teeth with Siwak on Friday ..................... 26
(9) CHAPTER. Whoever cleans his teeth with Siwak .......................... 27
(10) CHAPTER. What should be recited in the Fajr prayer on Friday ....... 27
(11) CHAPTER. To offer Jumu‘ah prayer and Khutba in villages and towns ........................................ 27
(12) CHAPTER. Is the bath necessary for those who do not present themselves for the Jumu‘ah (prayer) ................................................. 29
(13) CHAPTER ........................................ 31
(14) CHAPTER. Not to attend the Jumu‘ah (prayer) if it is raining ......... 31
(15) CHAPTER. For whom is the Jumu‘ah (prayer) compulsory? ............. 31
(16) CHAPTER. The time for the Jumu‘ah (prayer) ......................... 32
(17) CHAPTER. If it becomes very hot on Fridays ........................... 33
(18) CHAPTER. To go walking unhurriedly ........................................ 34
(19) CHAPTER. One should not separate two persons on Fridays ....... 35
(20) CHAPTER. A man should not make his brother get up to sit in his place ................................................................. 36
(21) CHAPTER. Adhān on Friday (for the Jumu‘ah prayer) ................. 36
(22) CHAPTER. One Mu‘adhdhin on Friday ..................................... 36
(23) CHAPTER. The Imam repeats the wordings of the Adhān when he hears it ................................................................. 37
(24) CHAPTER. To sit on the pulpit while Adhān is pronounced ......... 38
(25) CHAPTER. Adhān before delivering the Khutba .......................... 38
(26) CHAPTER. (To deliver) the Khutba on the pulpit ......................... 38
(27) CHAPTER. To deliver the Khutba while standing ......................... 40
(28) CHAPTER. The facing of the Imam towards the people ................. 40
(29) CHAPTER. Saying “Ammā ba’du” in the Khutba ......................... 41
(30) CHAPTER. To sit in between the two Khūtba ............................. 45
(31) CHAPTER. To listen to the Khutba (religious talk) on Friday ....... 45
(32) CHAPTER. During the Khutba, two Rak’a Ṣalāt before sitting (Tahayyat-ul-Masjid) ......................................................... 46
(33) CHAPTER. When the Imam is delivering the Khutba, a light two Rak’a Ṣalāt (prayer) (Tahayyat-ul-Masjid) .................................. 46
(34) CHAPTER. To raise hands during the Khutba (religious talk) .... 46
CONTENTS OF VOLUME TWO

(35) CHAPTER. *Istisqa' in the Khutba on Friday* ........................................ 47
(36) CHAPTER. One should keep quiet and listen while the *Imām* is delivering the *Khutba* .................................................................................................................. 48
(37) CHAPTER. An hour (opportune—lucky time) on Friday .......................................................................................................................... 48
(38) CHAPTER. If some people leave the *Imām* during the Ṣalāt-ul-Jumu'ah ........................................... 48
(39) CHAPTER. To offer Ṣalāt before and after the Jumu'ah prayer .................................................................................................................. 49
(40) CHAPTER. When the Ṣalāt is ended, you may disperse through the land, and seek of the Bounty of Allah... " .......................................................................................................................... 49
(41) CHAPTER. The afternoon nap after the Jumu'a (prayer) ................................................................. 50

12 – THE BOOK OF SALAT-UL-KHAUF (FEAR PRAYER)........................................ 51
(1) CHAPTER. The Ṣalāt-ul-Khauf ........................................................................................................ 51
(2) CHAPTER. The Ṣalāt-ul-Khauf while standing or riding ......................................................................... 52
(3) CHAPTER. To guard one another during the Ṣalāt-ul-Khauf ................................................................. 52
(4) CHAPTER. *As-Ṣalāt* at the time of besieging a fort and at the time of meeting the enemy .................................................................................................................. 53
(5) CHAPTER. The chaser and the chased can offer Ṣalāt (prayer) while riding, and by signs .......................................................................................................................... 54
(6) CHAPTER. Offering *As-Ṣalāt* (the prayers) while attacking the enemy and in battles .................................................................................................................. 55

13 – THE BOOK OF THE TWO ‘EID (PRAYERS AND FESTIVALS) ........................................ 56
(1) CHAPTER. The two ‘Eid and sprucing oneself up on them ........................................................................ 56
(2) CHAPTER. A display of spears and shields on ‘Eid Festival day ................................................................ 56
(3) CHAPTER. The legal way of the celebrations on the two ‘Eid festivals .................................................................................................................. 57
(4) CHAPTER. Eating on the day of Fīr before the ‘Eid-al-Fīr prayer ................................................................. 58
(5) CHAPTER. Eating on the Day of Nahr (10th of Dhul-Ḥijjah) ................................................................. 58
(6) CHAPTER. To proceed to a Musalla without a pulpit ............................................................................... 59
(7) CHAPTER. ‘Eid prayer before the *Khutba* and no Adhān or Iqāma for it ................................................. 60
(8) CHAPTER. The *Khutba* after the ‘Eid prayer .............................................................................................. 62
(9) CHAPTER. It is disliked to carry arms on ‘Eid and in the Haram .......................................................... 63
(10) CHAPTER. To offer the ‘Eid prayer early .............................................................................................. 64
(11) CHAPTER. Superiority of deeds on the days of Taṣhīrīq .............................................................................. 65
(12) CHAPTER. To say *Takbīr* on the days of Minā and while proceeding to ‘Arafāt ........................................ 65
(13) CHAPTER. *As-Ṣalāt* using a small spear as a *Sutra* .................................................................................. 66
(14) CHAPTER. To put the *Anaza* (spear-headed stick) or Ḥarba in front of the *Imām* on ‘Eid day .......... 67
(15) CHAPTER. The coming out of ladies and menstruating women to the Musalla ............................................. 67
(16) CHAPTER. The attendance of boys at Musalla ....................................................................................... 67
(17) CHAPTER. The *Imām* faces the people while delivering the *Khutba* (religious talk) of ‘Eid .......... 68
(18) CHAPTER. The mark of the Musalla ....................................................................................................... 68
(19) CHAPTER. The preaching to the women by the *Imām* on ‘Eid day ...................................................... 69
(20) CHAPTER. If a woman has no veil to use for ‘Eid .................................................................................. 70
(21) CHAPTER. Menstruating women should keep away from the Musalla .................................................... 71
(22) CHAPTER. An-Nahr and Adh-Dhahbah at the Musalla on the day of Nahr .................................................. 72
(23) CHAPTER. If the *Imām* is asked about something while he is delivering the *Khutba* .............................. 72
(24) CHAPTER. Whoever returned (after offering the 'Eid prayer) on the day of 'Eid through a way different from that by which he went. ........................................ 73
(25) CHAPTER. Whoever missed the 'Eid prayer should offer two Rak'ā prayer...............................74
(26) CHAPTER. Ṣalāt before or after the 'Eid prayer.......................................................... 75

14 – THE BOOK OF WITR...... 76
(1) CHAPTER. What is said regarding the Witr prayer......................... 76
(2) CHAPTER. The timing of the Ṣalāt-ul-Witr (Witr prayer)............. 78
(3) CHAPTER. The Prophet ﷺ used to wake his family up for the Witr prayer........................................ 78
(4) CHAPTER. Witr as the last Ṣalāt (at night).................................. 78
(5) CHAPTER. To offer the Witr prayer while riding on an animal....... 79
(6) CHAPTER. Offering prayers of Witr while on a journey............... 79
(7) CHAPTER. To recite Qur’ān before and after bowing.................. 80

15 – THE BOOK OF AL-ISTISQA’................................................................. 82
(1) CHAPTER. Going out of the Prophet ﷺ to offer Istisqa’ prayer .... 82
(2) CHAPTER. Invocation of the Prophet ﷺ.................................................. 82
(3) CHAPTER. Request of the people to the Imām to offer the Istisqa’ prayer........................................ 84
(4) CHAPTER. Turning cloak inside out while offering the Istisqa’ prayer. 85
(5) CHAPTER. The taking of revenge by Allāh عز وجل over His creatures by drought................................. 85
(6) CHAPTER. Istisqa’ in the main mosque (of the town)............... 85
(7) CHAPTER. To invoke Allāh for rain in the Khutba of Friday facing a direction other than the Qiblah .... 87
(8) CHAPTER. Istisqa’ (to invoke Allāh for the rain) on the pulpit.... 88
(9) CHAPTER. Whoever To invoke Allāh for rain in the Jumu’ah prayer...................................................... 88
(10) CHAPTER. Invocation (for stoppage of rain)................................. 89
(11) CHAPTER. The saying that “The Prophet ﷺ did not turn his cloak inside out during the invocation for rain on Friday.”...... 89
(12) CHAPTER. If the people request the Imām to invoke Allāh for rain, the Imām should not refuse.............................. 90
(13) CHAPTER. If Al-Mushrīkūn intercede the Muslims to invoke Allāh for rain during drought........ 90
(14) CHAPTER. To say, “Around us and not on us,” when it rains excessively................................................ 91
(15) CHAPTER. To invoke Allāh for rain while standing......................... 92
(16) CHAPTER. To recite aloud while offering the prayer of Istisqa’.’ 93
(17) CHAPTER. How the Prophet ﷺ turned his back towards the people [while offering the Ṣalāt (prayer) for rain]........................................ 93
(18) CHAPTER. The Istisqa’ prayer consists of two Rak'ā................. 94
(19) CHAPTER. To offer the Istisqa’ prayer at the Musalla................. 94
(20) CHAPTER. Facing the Qiblah while offering the Istisqa’ prayer.... 94
(21) CHAPTER. While offering the Istisqa’ prayer, people should raise hands along with the Imām............. 95
(22) CHAPTER. The raising of both hands by the Imām during Istisqa’ while invoking Allāh for rain................. 95
(23) CHAPTER. What should be said (or what to say) if it rains....... 96
(24) CHAPTER. One who stood in the rain till the water started trickling down his beard......................... 96
(25) CHAPTER. If the wind blows (what should one do or say?) ........... 97
CONTENTS OF VOLUME TWO

(26) CHAPTER. "I was granted victory with Ās-Ṣabā." .................. 98
(27) CHAPTER. Earthquakes and (other) signs (of the Day of Judgement). ....................... 98
(28) CHAPTER. "And instead for the provision He gives you, you deny." .................................. 99
(29) CHAPTER. Except Allah nobody knows when it will rain...... 99

16 – THE BOOK OF THE ECLIPSES .............................................. 101
(1) CHAPTER. Āṣ-Ṣalāt (the prayer) during a solar eclipse ...... 101
(2) CHAPTER. To give Ṣadaqa during the eclipse .................. 102
(3) CHAPTER. Making a loud announcement of Āṣ-Ṣalāt (the prayer) in congregation for eclipse. 103
(4) CHAPTER. A Khutba (delivered) by the ʿImām on the eclipse................... 104
(5) CHAPTER. Should one say: The sun Kasafat or Khasafat?......... 105
(6) CHAPTER. "Allāh frightens His slaves) with Kasūf (eclipse)." .... 106
(7) CHAPTER. To seek refuge with Allāh from the torment in the grave during eclipse. .............. 106
(8) CHAPTER. To prolong the prostrations in the eclipse ʿat. .... 107
(9) CHAPTER. To offer the eclipse Salāt (prayer) in congregation ...... 108
(10) CHAPTER. Offering of Eclipse prayer by women along with men... 109
(11) CHAPTER. Manumission (of slaves) during the solar eclipses.... 110
(12) CHAPTER. To offer the eclipse prayer in the mosque........... 111
(13) CHAPTER. The solar eclipse does not occur because of someone’s death or life. ..................... 112
(14) CHAPTER. To remember Allāh during the eclipse............. 113
(15) CHAPTER. Invocation during the eclipse............................... 113
(16) CHAPTER. The saying of Ṣamāʿ baʿdu during the Khutba of the eclipse .................................. 114
(17) CHAPTER. The prayer of the lunar eclipse:............................ 114
(18) CHAPTER. The first Rakʿā of the eclipse prayer is longer......... 115
(19) CHAPTER. To recite aloud in the eclipse ʿat. ....................... 115

17 – THE BOOK OF PROSTRATION DURING THE RECITATION OF THE QUR’ĀN ................................................. 117
(1) CHAPTER. Prostrations during the recitation of the Qurʾān. ......... 117
(2) CHAPTER. To prostrate during the recitation of Sūrat Tanzīl – Āṣ-Ṣajda (No.32) .................. 117
(3) CHAPTER. To prostrate while reciting Sūrat Sād (No.38) ........... 117
(4) CHAPTER. The prostration in An-Najm. (No.53) ...................... 118
(5) CHAPTER. The prostration of Muslims along with Al-Mushrikūn; and a Mushrik is Najasun (impure) and does not perform ablution; ...... 118
(6) CHAPTER. Whoever recited the Verses of prostration and did not prostrate........................................... 119
(7) CHAPTER. Prostration while reciting ʿIdhās-Ṣamaʿun-Shaqqat............. 119
(8) CHAPTER. Whoever prostrated with the prostration of the reciter. 120
(9) CHAPTER. The overcrowding of the people when the ʿImām recites Āṣ-Sajda ................................. 120
(10) CHAPTER. Whoever thinks that Allāh has not made prostration of recitation compulsory. 121
(11) CHAPTER. Whoever recited the Verse of Sajda during the ʿat (prayer) and prostrated......................... 122
(12) CHAPTER. Whoever does not find a place for prostration (with the ʿImām) because of overcrowding... 122
18 – THE BOOK OF ABRIDGED OR SHORTENED PRAYERS (AT-TAQSİR)........ 123

(1) CHAPTER. For what period of stay one should offer shortened prayers.......................... 123
(2) CHAPTER. As-Salāt (the prayers) at Mina (during Hajj)........ 123
(3) CHAPTER. How long did the Prophet ﷺ stay during his Hajj? .... 124
(4) CHAPTER. The length of the journey that makes it permissible to offer a shortened prayer? .......... 125
(5) CHAPTER. When a traveller leaves his original place, he can shorten his Salāt (prayers)............ 126
(6) CHAPTER. Three Rak’a of Maghrib prayer during a journey... 127
(7) CHAPTER. To offer Nawāfīl on the back of animals................. 128
(8) CHAPTER. To offer the Salāt by signs (while riding) on an animal... 128
(9) CHAPTER. To get down to offer compulsory Salāt. ............... 129
(10) CHAPTER. To offer the Nawāfīl while riding a donkey.............. 130
(11) CHAPTER. Whoever did not offer the Nawāfīl before and after the (compulsory) Salāt during a journey...................... 130
(12) CHAPTER. Whoever offered Nawāfīl not after the compulsory Salāt but before it........................ 131
(13) CHAPTER. To offer Maghrib and ‘Ishā prayers together on a journey........................................ 132
(14) CHAPTER. Should the Adhān or Iqāma be pronounced when the Maghrib and ‘Ishā prayers are offered together?.................. 133
(15) CHAPTER. To delay the Salāt-uz-Zuhr till the ‘Asr prayers........ 134
(16) CHAPTER. Whenever a person travels after midday, he should offer the Zuhr prayers and then ride for a journey.................... 134
(17) CHAPTER. To offer Salāt (prayer) while sitting......................... 134
(18) CHAPTER. To offer Salāt (prayers) by signs while sitting........ 136
(19) CHAPTER. Whoever cannot offer Salāt while sitting, can offer Salāt while lying on his side........ 136
(20) CHAPTER. Whoever starts his Salāt sitting (because of ailment) and then during the Salāt (prayer) feels better, can finish the rest while standing........................................ 137

19 – THE BOOK OF SALĀT-UT- TAHAJJUD (NIGHT PRAYER).......................... 138

(1) CHAPTER. The Tahajjud prayer at night............................ 138
(2) CHAPTER. The superiority of Tahajjud prayer....................... 139
(3) CHAPTER. To perform a long prostration in the Tahajjud...... 140
(4) CHAPTER. Leaving the night prayer by a patient.................... 140
(5) CHAPTER. The Prophet’s exhorting to Tahajjud and Nawāfīl without making them compulsory........ 141
(6) CHAPTER. Standing of the Prophet at night......................... 143
(7) CHAPTER. Sleeping in the last hours of the night..................... 143
(8) CHAPTER. Whoever took the Suhūr and did not sleep before offering Fajr prayers..................... 144
(9) CHAPTER. To prolong the standing posture in the Tahajjud.... 145
(10) CHAPTER. How was the Salāt of the Prophet ﷺ and how many Rak’a, he used to offer at night?.... 145
(11) CHAPTER. The waking up of the Prophet ﷺ from his sleep for the night prayer................................. 147
(12) CHAPTER. Satan’s tying of knots at the back of the head if one does not offer the night prayer..... 148
(13) CHAPTER. If one sleeps and does not offer the Salāt (prayer), Satan urinates in his ears............. 149
(14) CHAPTER. Offering Salāt
(prayer) and invoking Allah in the last hours of the night.................. 149
(15) CHAPTER. Sleeping in the first part of the night and getting up in its last part.......................... 150
(16) CHAPTER. The Salât (prayer) of the Prophet ﷺ at night in Ramaḍān and (in) other months.... 150
(17) CHAPTER. The superiority of remaining with ablution during the day and night....................... 151
(18) CHAPTER. It is disliked to exaggerate in matters of worship.... 152
(19) CHAPTER. It is disliked for a person to leave the night Salât........ 152
(20) CHAPTER........................................ 153
(21) CHAPTER. The superiority of one who wakes up at night and offers the Salât with a loud voice... 154
(22) CHAPTER. Regularity of two Rak'â (Sunna) of the Fajr............. 156
(23) CHAPTER. To lie down on the right side after offering two Rak'â (Sunna) of the Fajr prayer........ 156
(24) CHAPTER. Whoever talks after offering two Rak'â (Sunna) (of the Fajr prayer).................... 156
(25) CHAPTER. What is said about the Nawâfil being offered as two Rak'â followed by two and so on... 157
(26) CHAPTER. To talk after offering two Rak'â (Sunna of the Fajr prayer).......................... 157
(27) CHAPTER. To offer two Rak'â before the Fajr prayer............ 160
(28) CHAPTER. What is recited in the two Rak'â (Sunna) of the Fajr... 160
(29) CHAPTER. To offer the Nawâfil after the compulsory (congregational) Salât (prayers)........ 161
(30) CHAPTER. Whoever did not offer the Salât after the compulsory (congregational) Salât........ 162
(31) CHAPTER. To offer the Salât-ud-Ďuhâ in journey................... 162
(32) CHAPTER. Whoever did not offer the Ďuhâ prayer and thought it permissible (to offer it)........ 163
(33) CHAPTER. To offer Salât-ud-Ďuhâ when not travelling............ 163
(34) CHAPTER. To offer two Rak'â before the Zuhr prayer............. 164
(35) CHAPTER. The (optional) Salât before the Maghrib prayers.... 165
(36) CHAPTER. To offer Nawâfil in congregation........................... 165
(37) CHAPTER. To offer the Nawâfil prayers at home.................... 168

20 – THE BOOK OF THE SUPERIORITY OF OFFERING AŚ-SALÂT IN THE MOSQUE OF MAKKAH AND AL-MADĪNA........................................... 169
(1) CHAPTER. The superiority of offering Aś-Salât in the Mosque of Makkah and Al-Madîna............... 169
(2) CHAPTER. The Masjid Qubâ’ (the Mosque of Qubâ’).............. 170
(3) CHAPTER. Whoever visited the mosque of Qubâ’ every Saturday.... 170
(4) CHAPTER. To go to the Mosque of Qubâ’.............................. 171
(5) CHAPTER. The superiority of the place between the pulpit and the grave (of the Prophet ﷺ)........ 171
(6) CHAPTER. The mosque of Bait-ul-Maqdis (Jerusalem)............. 172

21 – THE BOOK OF DEALING WITH ACTIONS IN AŚ-SALÂT (THE PRAYER).......................... 173
(1) CHAPTER. To take the help of the hands while offering Salât........ 173
(2) CHAPTER. What speech is prohibited during Aś-Salât............. 174
(3) CHAPTER. The saying of Subḥān Allah and Al-hamdulillāh during Aś-Salât.......................... 175
(4) CHAPTER. Whoever named some people or greeted somebody during Aś-Salât.......................... 176
(5) CHAPTER. Clapping [during the Salât] is permissible only for women........................................ 176
CONTENTS OF VOLUME TWO

22 – THE BOOK OF

AS-SAHW

23 – THE BOOK OF
FUNERALS [AL-JANĀ'IZ]

(6) CHAPTER. Whoever came back or went forward during the Ṣalāt . . . . 177
(7) CHAPTER. If a mother calls her son while he is offering As-Ṣalāt . . . . 177
(8) CHAPTER. The levelling of small stones during As-Ṣalāt . . . . . 178
(9) CHAPTER. Spreading the clothes over the site of prostration. 178
(10) CHAPTER. What kind of actions are permissible during As-Ṣalāt . . . . 179
(11) CHAPTER. If an animal runs away while one is in As-Salāt . . . . 180
(12) CHAPTER. Blowing and spitting while in As-Ṣalāt (the prayer) . . . . 181
(13) CHAPTER. If a man claps during the Ṣalāt because of ignorance, his Ṣalāt will not be invalid . . . . . . 182
(14) CHAPTER. If a person in Salāt is asked to step forward, or to wait, there will be no harm therein . . . . 182
(15) CHAPTER. One should not return greetings during the Ṣalāt . . . . 182
(16) CHAPTER. To raise the hands in Ṣalāt because of necessity . . . . 183
(17) CHAPTER. Keeping the hands on the hips during As-Ṣalāt . . . . 185
(18) CHAPTER. Thinking of something during As-Ṣalāt (the prayer) . . . . 185

22 – THE BOOK OF

AS-SAHW

(1) CHAPTER. What is said regarding the Ṣahw . . . . . 187
(2) CHAPTER. If one offers five Rakʿā (instead of four) . . . . . 187
(3) CHAPTER. If one finishes his Ṣalāt with Taslīm after offering two or three Rakʿā (by mistake) . . . . 188
(4) CHAPTER. Whoever did not recite Taṣḥah-hud (At-Tahiyyāt) after the two prostrations of Ṣahw . . . . 188
(5) CHAPTER. To say Takbīr in the prostrations of Ṣahw . . . . . 189
(6) CHAPTER. When a person forgets whether he has offered three or four Rakʿā . . . . . . 190
(7) CHAPTER. Ṣahw in compulsory Ṣalāt and Nawāfil . . . . . 191
(8) CHAPTER. If a person speaks to a person offering Ṣalāt (prayer), and the latter beckons with his hand and listens . . . . . . 191
(9) CHAPTER. Beckoning during the Ṣalāt [by a person in Ṣalāt] . . . . 193

23 – THE BOOK OF
FUNERALS [AL-JANĀ'IZ]

(1) CHAPTER. What is said about funerals . . . . . 196
(2) CHAPTER. The order of following the funeral procession . . . . 197
(3) CHAPTER. Visiting the deceased person after he has been put in his shroud . . . . . . 198
(4) CHAPTER. A man who informs the relatives of the deceased person (of his death) by himself . . . . 200
(5) CHAPTER. Conveying the news of the funeral (procession) . . . . 201
(6) CHAPTER. The superiority of the person whose child dies . . . . . 202
(7) CHAPTER. The saying of a man to a woman at the grave, “Be patient.” . . . . . . 203
(8) CHAPTER. The bath of a dead and his ablution with water and Sīdr . . . . . . 203
(9) CHAPTER. It is desirable to wash (the dead body) for an odd number of times . . . . . . 204
(10) CHAPTER. To start from the right side while giving a bath to a dead body . . . . . . 204
(11) CHAPTER. (To start with) the parts of the dead body which are washed in ablution . . . . . . 205
(12) CHAPTER. Can a woman be shrouded in the waist-sheet of a man? . . . . . . 205
(13) CHAPTER. To sprinkle camphor on the dead body . . . . . 205
(14) CHAPTER. To undo the hair of a (dead) female . . . . . 206
(15) CHAPTER. How to shroud a dead body. .......................... 206
(16) CHAPTER. To entwine the head-hair of a (dead) woman in three braids. .................. 207
(17) CHAPTER. To make the hair of a (dead) woman fall at her back. 208
(18) CHAPTER. White cloth for the shroud. ................................ 208
(19) CHAPTER. Shrouding in two pieces of cloth. .................. 208
(20) CHAPTER. The perfuming of a dead body with Ḥanūf. ........ 209
(21) CHAPTER. How to shroud a Muḥrīm. .......................... 209
(22) CHAPTER. To shroud one in a shirt, stitched or unstitched. ... 210
(23) CHAPTER. To shroud (a dead) body without using a shirt. .... 211
(24) CHAPTER. Using no turban in shrouding. ...................... 211
(25) CHAPTER. To shroud one with all of one's property. ........ 212
(26) CHAPTER. If there is nothing except one piece of cloth (for shrouding). .................. 212
(27) CHAPTER. If sufficient cloth for the shroud is not available. .... 213
(28) CHAPTER. (If) somebody prepared his shroud (before his death). ...................... 214
(29) CHAPTER. (Is it permissible for) women to accompany the funeral procession? .......... 214
(30) CHAPTER. The mourning of a woman for a dead person other than her husband. ........ 215
(31)CHAPTER. Visiting the graves. .................................. 216
(32) CHAPTER. The deceased is punished because of the weeping of his relatives. ................. 216
(33) CHAPTER. What (sort of) wailing over a deceased is disliked. 220
(34) CHAPTER. ........................................ 221
(35) CHAPTER. He who tears off his clothes (when afflicted with a calamity) is not from us. .... 222
(36) CHAPTER. The sorrow of the Prophet ﷺ for Sa'd bin Khāula. .... 222
(37) CHAPTER. Shaving the head on a calamity is forbidden. ........... 223
(38) CHAPTER. He who slaps his cheeks is not from us. ............. 223
(39) CHAPTER. Prohibition of wailing and following the traditions of the Days of Ignorance when afflicted with a calamity. .............. 224
(40) CHAPTER. Whoever sat down and looked sad when afflicted with a calamity. ............. 224
(41) CHAPTER. Whoever shows no signs of grief and sorrow on the falling of a calamity. .... 225
(42) CHAPTER. Patience is to be observed at the first stroke of a calamity. ..................... 226
(43) CHAPTER. The saying of the Prophet ﷺ: "Indeed we are grieved by your separation." .......... 227
(44) CHAPTER. To weep near a patient. ................................ 228
(45) CHAPTER. The forbiddance of wailing and crying aloud. ........ 228
(46) CHAPTER. Standing for the funeral procession. .................. 229
(47) CHAPTER. When should one sit after standing for the funeral procession? ................ 230
(48) CHAPTER. Who ever accompanies a funeral procession should not sit till the coffin is put down. ..................... 230
(49) CHAPTER. Standing for the funeral procession of a Jew. .... 231
(50) CHAPTER. Men, and not women, are to carry the coffin. .... 232
(51) CHAPTER. Hurrying up with the coffin. ................................ 232
(52) CHAPTER. The saying of the deceased while he is being carried on the bier, "Take me quickly." .... 233
(53) CHAPTER. Whoever aligned in two or three rows behind the Ḥamām for a funeral Ṣalāt (prayer). ..................... 233
(54) CHAPTER. The rows for funeral prayer............................. 234
(55) CHAPTER. The lining up of boys in rows with men in the funeral prayer........................................ 234
(56) CHAPTER. The legal way of offering the funeral prayer. 235
(57) CHAPTER. Superiority of accompanying funeral processions; 236
(58) CHAPTER. Whoever waits till the deceased is buried..................237
(59) CHAPTER. The offering of the funeral Salāt (prayer) by boys along with the men..............................237
(60) CHAPTER. To offer the funeral Salāt (prayer) at a Musalla and in the mosque .................................... 238
(61) CHAPTER. What is disliked of establishing places for worship (mosques) over the graves............. 238
(62) CHAPTER. The offering of the funeral Salāt of a woman who died during the delivery (of a child)...... 239
(63) CHAPTER. Where should the Imam stand while leading the funeral prayer of a female or a male?............ 239
(64) CHAPTER. There are four Takbīr in the funeral prayers........... 240
(65) CHAPTER. The recitation of Sūrat-al-Fāṭiha in the funeral Salāt. 241
(66) CHAPTER. To offer the (funeral) Salāt on the grave after the burial of the deceased 241
(67) CHAPTER. A dead person hears the footsteps (of the living) 242
(68) CHAPTER. Whoever desired to be buried in the Sacred Land. 243
(69) CHAPTER. Burial at night. 243
(70) CHAPTER. Building a mosque (a place of worship) at a grave. 244
(71) CHAPTER. Who may get down in the grave of a woman. 244
(72) CHAPTER. The funeral Salāt (prayer) of a martyr. 245
(73) CHAPTER. The burial of two or three men in one grave. 246
(74) CHAPTER. Whoever thinks no bath is required for the martyrs. 246
(75) CHAPTER. Who should be put first in the Lahd.................... 246
(76) CHAPTER. The placing of Idhkhīr and grass in the grave. 248
(77) CHAPTER. Can the dead body be taken out of its grave. 248
(78) CHAPTER. The Lahd and the (straight) cut in the grave. 250
(79) CHAPTER. If a boy becomes a Muslim and then dies, should a funeral prayer be offered for him? Should Islam be explained to a boy? 250
(80) CHAPTER. If Al-Muṣyrik says, "Lā ilāha illallāh" at the time of his death. 254
(81) CHAPTER. Placing a leaf of a date-palm over the grave. 255
(82) CHAPTER. Preacher delivering a lecture at a grave and the sitting of his companions around him. 256
(83) CHAPTER. What is said about committing suicide. 257
(84) CHAPTER. It is disliked to offer the funeral prayer for the hypocrites, and to ask Allāh’s Forgiveness for the Muṣyrikiūn. 258
(85) CHAPTER. The praising of a deceased by the people. 259
(86) CHAPTER. The punishment in the grave. 260
(87) CHAPTER. To seek refuge from the punishment in the grave. 263
(88) CHAPTER. Punishment in the grave because of back-biting and soiling one’s clothes with urine. 264
(89) CHAPTER. The deceased is shown his actual place (in Paradise or in Hell). 265
(90) CHAPTER. The speech of the deceased upon the bier. 265
(91) CHAPTER. The dead children of Muslims. 266
(92) CHAPTER. The (dead) children of Al-Muṣyrikiūn. 266
(93) CHAPTER. 267
24 – THE BOOK OF ZAKÀT... 276

(1) CHAPTER. The obligation of Zakàt ........................................ 276
(2) CHAPTER. To give Bai’a (pledge) for paying Zakàt ............. 280
(3) CHAPTER. The sin of a person who does not pay Zakàt ........ 280
(4) CHAPTER. A property from which the Zakàt is paid is not Al-Kanz (hoarded-money) ............... 282
(5) CHAPTER. To spend money in the right way ....................... 284
(6) CHAPTER. Giving alms for showing off.............................. 285
(7) CHAPTER. No charity is accepted from what is grabbed from the war booty in an illegal way. .......... 285
(8) CHAPTER. As-Ṣadaqa must be from money earned honestly .... 285
(9) CHAPTER. To practise charity before such time when nobody would accept it ......................... 286
(10) CHAPTER. “Protect yourself from Hell-fire even with a half date.” .............................................. 288
(11) CHAPTER. What kind of As-Ṣadaqa (charity etc.) is superior? .................. 290
(12) CHAPTER. To give in charity openly ...................................... 291
(13) CHAPTER. To give in charity secretly ....................................... 291
(14) CHAPTER. If one gives an object of charity to a wealthy person unknowingly ......................... 291
(15) CHAPTER. If a person gives something in charity to his own son unknowingly ......................... 292
(16) CHAPTER. To give objects of charity with the right hand ......... 293
(17) CHAPTER. Whoever ordered his servant to give something in charity and did not give it himself ........ 294
(18) CHAPTER. The wealthy only are required to give in charity .... 294
(19) CHAPTER. The one who follows up his charitable gifts with reminders of generosity .................. 296
(20) CHAPTER. Whoever loves to give something in charity on the very day (he receives his earnings) .... 296
(21) CHAPTER. To exhort one to give in charity ...................... 297
(22) CHAPTER. To give in charity as much as you can afford ........ 298
(23) CHAPTER. As-Ṣadaqa (charity) expiates sins ...................... 298
(24) CHAPTER. Whoever gave things in charity while he was a Musřrik and then embraced Islam ............ 299
(25) CHAPTER. The servant gets a reward for giving charity when ordered by the owner ....................... 300
(26) CHAPTER. The reward of the lady who gives in charity, from her husband’s house ...................... 300
(27) CHAPTER. The Statement of Allāh تَعَالَٰ .......................... 301
(28) CHAPTER. The examples of an alms-giver and a miser .......... 302
(29) CHAPTER. Giving in charity from the earnings and trade .......... 303
(30) CHAPTER. Every Muslim has to give in charity ................. 303
(31) CHAPTER. How much is Zakāt, and how much may be given in charity? ................................ 304
(32) CHAPTER. The Zakāt of silver ........................................... 304
(33) CHAPTER. Zakāt may be paid in kind (and not in cash) ........ 305
(34) CHAPTER. The individual property of different people should
neither be gathered together nor the joint property should be divided, in assessing the Zakât.............................. 306
(35) CHAPTER. If a property is equally owned by two partners, its Zakât is to be paid as a whole...... 307
(36) CHAPTER. The Zakât of camels.................................................. 307
(37) CHAPTER. Whoever has to pay a one-year-old she-camel as Zakât and has not got it........ 308
(38) CHAPTER. The Zakât of sheep.......................................................... 309
(39) CHAPTER. Neither an old, nor a defective animal, nor a male-goat may be taken as Zakât........ 310
(40) CHAPTER. To accept a she-kid as Zakât........................................... 311
(41) CHAPTER. “Do not take the best from the property as Zakât.”.. 311
(42) CHAPTER. There is no Zakât for less than five camels........ 312
(43) CHAPTER. The Zakât of cows............................................................ 312
(44) CHAPTER. The giving of Zakât to relatives.............................................. 313
(45) CHAPTER. No Zakât on the horse of a Muslim................................. 315
(46) CHAPTER. No Zakât on the slave belonging to a Muslim........ 316
(47) CHAPTER. Giving in charity to orphans............................................... 316
(48) CHAPTER. The giving of Zakât to husband and to orphans...................... 317
(49) CHAPTER. The Statement of Allah.......................................................... 318
(50) CHAPTER. To abstain from begging...................................................... 320
(51) CHAPTER. The one whom Allah gives something without his asking for it........ 322
(52) CHAPTER. Whoever asks the people to increase his wealth...................... 322
(53) CHAPTER. The Statement of Allah.......................................................... 323
(54) CHAPTER. Estimating the date-fruits on the palms for Zakât..................... 326
(55) CHAPTER. ‘Uṣyf on the yield of the land irrigated by rain or running water.............................. 328
(56) CHAPTER. There is no Zakât on less than five Awsuq.............................. 328
(57) CHAPTER. Zakât of dates during plucking season.................................... 329
(58) CHAPTER. Whoever sold his fruits, trees, land or crops and gave Zakât from some other property... 330
(59) CHAPTER. Can one buy the thing which he has given in charity?................................. 331
(60) CHAPTER. What is said regarding what is given to the Prophet and his offspring in charity................................. 332
(61) CHAPTER. As-Ṣadaqa for the freed slave-girls of the wives of the Prophet........................................... 332
(62) CHAPTER. When alms is transferred................................................... 333
(63) CHAPTER. Zakât should be taken from the rich and given to the poor.............. 334
(64) CHAPTER. The invoking and supplicating of the Imam for the one who gives in charity................................. 334
(65) CHAPTER. (Is Zakât imposed on) what is taken out of the sea............................ 335
(66) CHAPTER. There is Khumus on Rikâz.................................................................. 336
(67) CHAPTER. “...And those employed to collect (the funds)...”.............................. 337
(68) CHAPTER. The use of the camels and their milk given as Zakât................................. 338
(69) CHAPTER. Branding the camels given in As-Ṣadaqa........................................... 338
(70) CHAPTER. Obligation of Ṣadaqat-ul-Fitr...................................................... 338
(71) CHAPTER. Ṣadaqat-ul-Fitr on the free or slave Muslims................................. 339
(72) CHAPTER. Ṣadaqat-ul-Fitr is one ‘Sā’ of barley.............................................. 339
(73) CHAPTER. Ṣadaqat-ul-Fitr is one ‘Sā’ of meal (per head).............................................. 339
(74) CHAPTER. Ṣadaqat-ul-Fitr is one ‘Sā’ of dates (per head)............................... 340
(75) CHAPTER. (Sadaqat-ul-Fitr) is one Ṣā' of raisins (dried grapes).... 340
(76) CHAPTER. Sadaqat-ul-Fitr is to be given before the ‘Eid prayers................................. 340
(77) CHAPTER. Sadaqat-ul-Fitr on a slave as well as on a free Muslim. 341
(78) CHAPTER. Sadaqat-ul-Fitr is obligatory on the young and the old........................................ 342

25 – THE BOOK OF HAJJ ...... 343
(1) CHAPTER. It is obligatory to perform Hajj .................................................. 343
(2) CHAPTER. “And proclaim to mankind the Hajj”........................................ 343
(3) CHAPTER. To go for Hajj on a pack-saddle (of a camel).............................. 344
(4) CHAPTER. The superiority of Al-Hajj-ul-Mabrūr........................................... 345
(5) CHAPTER. The demarcation of Mawāqūt for Hajj........................................... 346
(6) CHAPTER. The Statement of Allah .............................................................. 347
(7) CHAPTER. Miqāt of Hajj and ‘Umra for the people of Makkah.... 347
(8) CHAPTER. The Miqāt for the people of Al-Madina ...................................... 348
(9) CHAPTER. The Miqāt for the people of Šām .................................................. 348
10) CHAPTER. The Miqāt for the people of Najd. .............................................. 349
(11) CHAPTER. The Miqāt for people living within Mawāqūt. 349
(12) CHAPTER. The Miqāt for the people of Yemen........................................... 350
(13) CHAPTER. The Miqāt for the people of ‘Irāq is Dhāt-Irq. 350
(14) CHAPTER................................................................. 351
(15) CHAPTER. The going of the Prophet for Hajj.............................................. 351
(16) CHAPTER. “Al-‘Aqiq is a blessed valley.”...................................................... 351
(17) CHAPTER. To wash the perfume thrice of Ḳirm........................................... 352
(18) CHAPTER. The use of perfume while assuming Ḳirm. 353
(19) CHAPTER. Talbiya and Ḳirm with head-hair matted (with resin or the like)........................................ 354
(20) CHAPTER. To recite Talbiya and assume Ḳirm at the mosque of Dhubuḥaf......................................... 355
(21) CHAPTER. What kind of clothes a Muḥrim should not wear. 355
(22) CHAPTER. Riding alone or with somebody else during Ḳa‘īj...... 355
(23) CHAPTER. What kind of clothes a Muḥrim should wear....... 356
(24) CHAPTER. Passing the night at Dhubuḥaf till dawn................................. 358
(25) CHAPTER. Talbiya is to be recited aloud..................................................... 358
(26) CHAPTER. The Talbiya. ......................................................... 359
(27) CHAPTER. The praising and glorification of Allah and saying Takbir before Talbiya, while mounting animal................................................................. 359
(28) CHAPTER. Reciting Talbiya when one has mounted his Rahila.. 360
(29) CHAPTER. Reciting Talbiya while facing the Qiblah .............................. 360
(30) CHAPTER. Reciting Talbiya on entering a valley........................................ 361
(31) CHAPTER. How should a menstruating woman and a woman in a puerperal state assume Ḳīrām? 362
(32) CHAPTER. Whoever assumed Ḳīrām with the same intention as that of the Prophet.................................................. 363
(33) CHAPTER. “The Hajj is (in) the well-known (lunar year) months...”. 364
(34) CHAPTER. Ḳa‘īj-at-Tamattu, Ḳa‘īj-at-Qirān, and Ḳa‘īj-at-Ifrād. .... 366
(35) CHAPTER. Talbiya for Hajj and the intention of Ḳa‘īj................................. 371
(36) CHAPTER. Ḳa‘īj-at-Tamattu’. 371
(37) CHAPTER. “This is for him whose family is not present at the Al- Ḳasjid-al-Haram. 371
(38) CHAPTER. Taking a bath on entering Makkah................................. 373
(39) CHAPTER. To enter Makkah by day or by night................................. 373
(40) CHAPTER. From where to enter Makkah................................. 374
(41) CHAPTER. From where to leave Makkah. .............................. 374
(42) CHAPTER. The superiority of Makkah and its buildings, and the statement of Allah. .............................. 376
(43) CHAPTER. The superiority of the Haram (of Makkah). ............... 379
(44) CHAPTER. The inheritance, sale and purchase of the houses of Makkah. ................................................. 380
(45) CHAPTER. The residence of the Prophet in Makkah............. 381
(46) CHAPTER. The Statement of Allah: ........................................ 382
(47) CHAPTER. The Statement of Allah .. ................................. 383
(48) CHAPTER. The covering of the Ka'bah . ................................ 384
(49) CHAPTER. The demolishing of the Ka'bah. .......................... 385
(50) CHAPTER. What is said regarding the Black Stone.............. 385
(51) CHAPTER. Closing the door of the Ka'bah and Salāt in it. ........ 386
(52) CHAPTER. Offering As-Salāt (the prayers) inside the Ka'bah . 386
(53) CHAPTER. Whoever did not enter the Ka'bah. ......................... 386
(54) CHAPTER. Saying Takbīr inside the Ka'bah. ......................... 387
(55) CHAPTER. How (the legality of the Ramal started). ................. 388
(56) CHAPTER. The touching (and kissing) of the Black Stone and Ramal ................................................... 388
(57) CHAPTER. Doing Ramal in Tawāf during Hajj and 'Umra .... 388
(58) CHAPTER. Touching the Black Stone with a stick ................. 390
(59) CHAPTER. The two Yemenite Corners of the Ka'bah.............. 390
(60) CHAPTER. To kiss the Black Stone ....................................... 391
(61) CHAPTER. Whoever pointed towards the Corner (Black Stone) .. 391
(62) CHAPTER. To say Takbīr in front of the Corner (having the Black Stone) .................................................. 392
(63) CHAPTER. Tawāf of the Ka'bah on reaching Makkah........... 392
(64) CHAPTER. The Tawāf of women and men. ............................. 393
(65) CHAPTER. The permissibility of talking during the Tawāf. ......... 395
(66) CHAPTER. Whoever saw a string during the Tawāf and cut it. 395
(67) CHAPTER. It is neither permissible for a naked person to perform Tawāf nor Ḥajj for a Mushrik .............................. 395
(68) CHAPTER. If one stops during the Tawāf (should he start from the beginning?) .............................................. 396
(69) CHAPTER. Two Rak'ā prayer after Tawāf, .............................. 396
(70) CHAPTER. After the first Tawāf on entering Makkah to 'Arafāt and returned .............................................. 397
(71) CHAPTER. Two Rak'ā prayer of Tawāf outside the mosque. ...... 397
(72) CHAPTER. Two Rak'ā (prayer) of Tawāf behind Maqām-Ibrāhīm ....................................................... 398
(73) CHAPTER. Tawāf after the morning and 'Asr prayer .......... 398
(74) CHAPTER. A sick person may perform Tawāf while riding .... 400
(75) CHAPTER. Providing the pilgrims with water to drink .......... 400
(76) CHAPTER. What is said about Zamzam (water) ................. 401
(77) CHAPTER. Tawāf of Al-Qārin ............................................ 402
(78) CHAPTER. Tawāf with ablution ........................................... 404
(79) CHAPTER. The Tawāf (Sāy) between As-Safā and Al-Marwā .... 405
(80) CHAPTER. Sāy between As-Safā and Al-Marwā ................. 407
(81) CHAPTER. A menstruating woman can perform all the ceremonies of Hajj except Tawāf .... 409
(82) CHAPTER. Assuming Ḥira from Al-Baţhā' and other places .... 412
(83) CHAPTER. Where to offer the Zuhr prayer on the day of Tarwīyā. 412
(84) CHAPTER. As-Salāt at Mina. 413
(85) CHAPTER. Fasting on the Day of 'Arafa (at 'Arafāt). 414
(86) CHAPTER. Talbiya and Takbīr while proceeding from Mina to 'Arafāt. 414
(87)CHAPTER. To proceed at noon on the Day of 'Arafa. 415
(88) CHAPTER. Staying on one's riding animal at 'Arafāt. 415
(89) CHAPTER. To offer the two Salāt together at 'Arafāt. 416
(90) CHAPTER. To shorten the Khasba on the Day of 'Arafa. 416
(91) CHAPTER. To hurry up for the stay (at 'Arafāt). 417
(92) CHAPTER. The offering of two Salāt together at Al-Muzdalifa. 421
(93) CHAPTER. Whoever combined the two prayer at one time. 421
(94) CHAPTER. Adhān and Iqāma for each of them. 422
(95) CHAPTER. Whosoever sent the weak early (from Al-Muzdalifa to Mina). 423
(96) CHAPTER. At what time is the Fajr prayer to be offered at Jam'. 425
(97) CHAPTER. When to depart from Jam' (i.e., Al-Muzdalifa). 426
(98) CHAPTER. Talbiya and Takbīr in the morning of the day of Nahr till the Ramy of Jamarat-al-'Aqaba. 426
(99) CHAPTER. "...And whosoever performs the 'Umra in the months of Hajj before the Hajj..." 427
(100) CHAPTER. The riding over the Budn. 428
(101) CHAPTER. ...and whosoever performs the 'Umra in the months of Hajj before the Hajj..." 427
(102) CHAPTER. Whoever drove the Budn along with him. 429
(103) CHAPTER. The marking of the Budn (camels for sacrifice). 431
(104) CHAPTER. To slaughter in behalf of one's wives. 437
(105) CHAPTER. To slaughter at the Manhar at Mina. 437
(106) CHAPTER. When to depart from Jam' (i.e., Al-Muzdalifa). 440
(107) CHAPTER. What is to be eaten of Budn and what to be distributed. 441
(125) CHAPTER. Slaughtering before having one's head shaved.... 442
(126) CHAPTER. Whoever matted his head-hair on assuming Ḥāram .... 444
(127) CHAPTER. To shave the head and to have the head-hair cut short on finishing the Ḥāram .......... 445
(128) CHAPTER. To get the head-hair cut short after 'Umra ............ 446
(129) CHAPTER. The visit [(of the Ka'bah) to perform Ṭawfīq al-Iṣāda] on the Day of Naḥr .............. 447
(130) CHAPTER. Ramy of the Ḥāmra after Ṭaḥīḥ or head shaved before slaughtering the Ḥady ........... 448
(131) CHAPTER. To give religious verdicts while riding an animal. ..... 448
(132) CHAPTER. Al-Khūba during the Days of Mina ..................... 449
(133) CHAPTER. May those who provide the pilgrims with water stay at Makkah during the nights of Mina? ....................................... 452
(134) CHAPTER. To do the Ramy of the Ḥāmār ................................ 453
(135) CHAPTER. Ramy of Ḥāmār from the middle of the valley ....... 453
(136) CHAPTER. The Ramy of the Ḥāmār with seven small stones...... 454
(137) CHAPTER. Keeping the House (Ka'bah) on the left on doing Ramy of the Ṭawfīq-ul-'Aqaba ......... 454
(138) CHAPTER. To say 'Allāhu Akbar' on throwing every pebble .... 455
(139) CHAPTER. Not standing (for invocation) after doing Ramy of the Ṭawfīq-ul-'Aqaba ................. 455
(140) CHAPTER. After doing Ramy of the two Ṭamrāt one should invoke Allāh ........................................... 456
(141) CHAPTER. Invocation near Al-Jamrat-ul-Du'ayya and Al-Jamrat-ul-Wustā ......................... 456
(142) CHAPTER. Invoking (Allāh) near the two Ṭamrāt .......... 457
(143) CHAPTER. To perfume after Ramy and to have head shaved before Ṭawfīq-ul-Iṣāda .............. 458
(144) CHAPTER. Ṭawfīq-ul-Wadā'. 458
(145) CHAPTER. If a woman gets her menses after Ṭawfīq-ul-Iṣāda ..... 459
(146) CHAPTER. 'Asr prayer at Abūn on the day of departure from Mina (Day of Nafr) ..................... 461
(147) CHAPTER. Al-Muḥāṣṣab ...... 462
(148) CHAPTER. To camp at Dhī-Tuwā before entering Makkah and at Al-Baṭhā on returning from Makkah. ........................................... 462
(149) CHAPTER. Staying at Dhī-Tuwā on returning from Makkah ... 463
(150) CHAPTER. Trading during the time of Ḥajj . 463
(151) CHAPTER. To depart from Al-Muḥāṣṣab in the night ......... 464
11 — THE BOOK OF AL-JUMU’AH (FRIDAY)

(1) CHAPTER. The prescription of Friday [Salāt-ul-Jumu’ah (Jumu’ah prayer)] and Khutba (religious talk) according to the Statement of Allāh ﷺ: “When the call is proclaimed for the Salāt (prayer) of Friday (Jumu’ah prayer) come to the remembrance of Allāh [Jumu’ah religious talk (Khutba) and Salāt (prayer)] and leave off business (and every other thing).” (V.62:9)

876. Narrated Abū Hurairah: I heard Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ saying, “We (Muslims) are the last (to come) but (will be) the foremost on the Day of Resurrection though the former nations were given the Scripture before us. And this was their day (Friday) the celebration of which [i.e. religious ceremonies like Khutba (religious talk), (Jumu’ah prayer etc.)] was made compulsory for them but they differed about it. So, Allāh gave us the guidance for it (Friday) and all the other people are behind us in this respect: the Jews’ (holy day is) the following day (i.e. Saturday) and the Christians’ (is) the day after the following day (i.e. Sunday).”

(2) CHAPTER. The superiority of taking a bath on Friday. And is it necessary for boys and women to attend the Friday (prayer)?

877. Narrated ʿAbdullāh bin ʿUmar: Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ said, “Anyone of you attending the Friday (prayer) should take a bath.”
878. Narrated Ibn 'Umar: While 'Umar bin Al-Khattāb was standing and delivering the Khutba (religious talk) on a Friday, one of the Companions of the Prophet, who was one of the foremost Muhājir (emigrants) came. 'Umar said to him, "What is the time now?" He replied, "I was busy and could not go back to my house till I heard the Adhān. I did not perform more than the ablution." There-upon 'Umar said to him, "Did you perform only the ablution although you know that Allah’s Messenger used to order us to take a bath (on Fridays)?"

879. Narrated Abū Sa’īd Al-Khudri: Allah’s Messenger said, "The taking of a bath on Friday is compulsory for every Muslim who has attained the age of puberty."

(3) CHAPTER. To perfume (oneself) before going for the Friday (prayer).

880. Narrated Abū Sa’īd: I testify that Allah’s Messenger said, "The taking of a bath on Friday is compulsory for every Muslim who has attained the age of puberty and (also) the cleaning of his teeth with Siwāk, and the using of perfume, if available."

‘Amr (a subnarrator) said, "I confirm that the taking of a bath is compulsory, but as for
the Siwâk and the use of perfume, Allâh knows better whether it is obligatory or not, but according to the Hadîth it is as above.’

(4) CHAPTER. The superiority of Jumu’ah (prayer and Khutba).

[The weekly congregational Salât (prayer) offered by Muslims at the time of Salât-uz-Zuhr (Zuhr prayer). This Salât (prayer) is preceded by a Khutba (religious talk).]

881. Narrated Abû Hurairah: Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ said, “Any person who takes a bath on Friday like the bath of Janâba and then goes for the Salât (prayer) (in the first hour i.e., early), it is as if he had sacrificed a camel (in Allâh’s Cause); and whoever goes in the second hour it is as if he had sacrificed a cow; and whoever goes in the third hour, then it is as if he had sacrificed a horned ram; and if one goes in the fourth hour, then it is as if he had sacrificed a hen; and whoever goes in the fifth hour then it is as if he had offered an egg. When the Imam comes out [i.e. starts delivering the Khutba (religious talk)], the angels present themselves to listen to the Khutba.”
882. Narrated Abū Hurairah (رضي الله عنه): While ‘Umar (bin Al-Khaṭṭāb) was delivering the �buat (religious talk) on a Friday, a man entered (the mosque). ‘Umar asked him, “What has detained you from the Salāt (prayer)?” The man said, “It was only that when I heard the Aḏḥān I performed ablution (for the Salāt).” On that ‘Umar said, “Did you not hear the Prophet (صلى الله عليه وسلم) saying: ‘Anyone of you going out for the Friday (prayer) should take a bath’?”

883. Narrated Salmān Al-Fārsi (رضي الله عنه): The Prophet (صلى الله عليه وسلم) said, “Whoever takes a bath on Friday, purifies himself as much as he can, then uses his (hair) oil or perfumes himself with the scent of his house, then proceeds [for the Salāt-ul-Jumu‘ah (Jumu‘ah prayer)] and does not separate two persons sitting together (in the mosque), then offers Salāt (prayers) as much as (Allāh has) written for him and then remains silent while the Imām is delivering the Ḫuṭba (religious talk), his sins in-between the present and the last Friday would be forgiven.”

884. Narrated Tāwūs: I said to Ibn ‘Abbās (رضي الله عنهما), “The people are
narrating that the Prophet ﷺ said, ‘Take a bath on Friday and wash your heads (i.e., take a thorough bath) even though you were not Junub and use perfume.’” On that Ibn ‘Abbâs replied, “I know about the bath, (i.e., it is essential) but I do not know about the perfume (i.e., whether it is essential or not.”

885. Narrated Tâwûs: Ibn ‘Abbâs رضي الله عنهما mentioned the statement of the Prophet ﷺ regarding the taking of a bath on Friday and then I asked him whether the Prophet ﷺ had ordered perfume or (hair) oil to be used if they could be found in one’s house. He (Ibn ‘Abbâs) replied that he did not know about it.

(7) CHAPTER. To wear the best available clothes (for the Jumu’ah prayer).

886. Narrated ‘Abdullâh bin ‘Umar رضي الله عنهما: ‘Umar bin Al-Khaṭṭâb رضي الله عنهما saw a silken cloak (being sold) at the gate of the mosque and said to Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ, “I wish you would buy this to wear on Fridays and also on occasions of the arrivals of the delegations”. Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ replied, “This will be worn by a person who will have no share (reward) in the Hereafter.” Later on similar cloaks were given to Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ and he gave one of them to ‘Umar bin Al-Khaṭṭâb. On that ‘Umar said, “O Allâh’s Messenger! You have given me this cloak although on the cloak of ‘Utârîd (a cloak merchant who was selling that silken
cloak at the gate of the mosque) you passed such and such a remark.” Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ replied, “I have not given you this to wear”. And so ‘Umar bin Al-Khattâb ﷺ gave it to his pagan brother in Makkah to wear.

(8) CHAPTER. To clean the teeth with Siwâk on Friday.

And Abû Sa‘îd said that the Prophet ﷺ used to clean his teeth.

887. Narrated Abû Hurairah: Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ said, “If I had not found it hard for my followers — or the people — I would have ordered them to clean their teeth with Siwâk for every Salât (prayer).”

888. Narrated Anas: Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ said, “I have told you repeatedly to (use) the Siwâk.” (The Prophet ﷺ put emphasis on the use of the Siwâk.)

889. Narrated Hudhaifa: Whenever the Prophet ﷺ got up at night [for the night Salât (prayer)], he used to clean his mouth.
(9) CHAPTER. Whoever cleans his teeth with Siwāk belonging to someone else.

890. Narrated ‘Āishah: ‘Abdur-Rahmān bin Abī Bakr came holding a Siwāk with which he was cleaning his teeth. Allāh’s Messenger looked at him. I requested ‘Abdur-Rahmān to give the Siwāk to me and after he gave it to me, I divided it into two, chewed one of it, and gave it to Allāh’s Messenger. Then he cleaned his teeth with it and (at that time) he was resting against my chest.

(10) CHAPTER. What should be recited (from the Qur’ān) in the Salāt-ul-Fajr (Fajr prayer) on Friday.

891. Narrated Abū Hurairah: The Prophet used to recite (the following) in the Salāt-ul-Fajr (Fajr prayer) of Friday: “Alif, Lām, Mīm, Tanzil” (Sūrat Al-Sajda), (No.32) and “Hal-āta-al-al-Insānī” (i.e. Sūrat Ad-Dahr). (No.76).

(11) CHAPTER. To offer the Salāt-ul-Jumu’ah [prayer and Khutba (religious talk)] in villages and towns.

892. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbās: The first Jumu’ah (prayer) offered after the
Jumu‘ah (prayer) offered at the mosque of Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ was in the mosque of the tribe of ‘Abdul Qais at Jawatha in Bahrain.

893. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar ﷺ: I heard Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ saying, “All of you are guardians.”

Yūnūs said: Ruzaiq bin Ḥukaim wrote to Ibn Shihāb while I was with him at Wādī Al-Qura saying, “Shall I lead the Jumu‘ah (prayer)?” Ruzaiq was working on the land (i.e., farming) and there was a group of Sudanese people and some others with him; Ruzaiq was then the Governor of Aila. Ibn Shihāb wrote (to Ruzaiq) ordering him to lead the Salāt-ul-Jumu‘ah (Jumu‘ah prayer) and telling him that Sālim told him that ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Umar had said, “I heard Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ saying, ‘All of you are guardians and responsible for your wards and the things under your care. The Imam (i.e., ruler) is the guardian of his subjects and is responsible for them, and a man is the guardian of his family and is responsible for them. A woman is the guardian of her husband’s house and is responsible for it. A servant is the guardian of his master’s belongings and is responsible for them.’”

Ibn Umar added, “I thought that he also said, ‘A man is the guardian of his father’s property and is responsible for it. All of you are guardians and responsible for your wards and the things under your care.’”
(12) CHAPTER. Is the taking of a bath (on Friday) necessary for women, boys, and others who do not present themselves for the Jumu’ah (prayer).

And Ibn ‘Umar said, “A bath is compulsory for those on whom the Jumu’ah (prayer) is obligatory.”


895. Narrated Abū Sa’id Al-Khudrī: Allah’s Messenger said, “The taking of a bath on Friday is compulsory for every Muslim who has attained the age of puberty.”

896. Narrated Abū Hurairah: Allah’s Messenger said “We (Muslims) are the last (to come) but (will be) the foremost on the Day of Resurrection. They were given the Scripture before us and we were given the Qur’ān after them. And this
was the day (Friday) about which they differed and Allah gave us the guidance (for that). So the following day (i.e. Saturday) is for the Jews and the day after the following day (i.e. Sunday) is for the Christians'. " The Prophet ﷺ remained silent (for a while).

897. Then said, “It is obligatory for every Muslim that he should take a bath once in seven days, when he should wash his head and body.”

898. Narrated Abu Hurairah through different narrators that the Prophet ﷺ said, “It is Allah’s Right on every Muslim that he should take a bath (at least) once in seven days.”

(13) CHAPTER.

899. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar ﷺ: The Prophet ﷺ said, “Allow women to go to the mosques at night.”

900. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar ﷺ: One of the wives of ‘Umar (bin Al-Khaṭṭāb) used to offer the Fa‘r and the ‘Iṣḥā’ Salāt (prayers) in congregation in the mosque. She was asked why she had come out for the Salāt as she knew that ‘Umar disliked it, and he has great Ghaira (self-respect). She replied, “What prevents him from stopping me from this act?” The other replied, “The statement
of Allâh's Messenger ﷺ: 'Do not stop Allâh's Irnâ (women-slaves) from going to Allâh's Mosques', prevents him.'

(14) CHAPTER. It is permissible for one not to attend the Jumu'ah (prayer) if it is raining.

901. Narrated Mûhammad bin Sirîn: On a rainy day Ibn 'Abbas رضي الله عنه said to his Mu'adh-dîhîn, 'After saying, 'Aš-hadu anna Muhammadan nasîl-Allâh' (I testify that Mûhammad is Allâh's Messenger), do not say 'Hâyiya 'alâs-alâh' [Come for the Salât (prayer)] but say: 'Salût-Fi Bû'tikum (offer Salât in your houses)'. (The man did so). But the people disliked it. Ibn 'Abbas said, 'It was done by one who was much better than I (i.e., the Prophet ﷺ). No doubt, the Jumu'ah (prayer) is compulsory but I dislike to put you to task by bringing you out walking in mud and slush.'

(15) CHAPTER. From where (distance) should one present oneself for the Jumu'ah (prayer) and for whom is the Jumu'ah (prayer) compulsory?

(What judgement is inferred from) the Statement of Allâh ﷻ:

"...When the call is proclaimed for the Salât (prayer) on Friday (Jumu'ah prayer) come to the remembrance of Allâh [Jumu'ah religious talk (Khutba) and Salât (prayer)]."

(V.62:9)

And 'Atâ said, "If you are in a village and
the Adhan is pronounced for the Salat-ul-Jumu’ah (Jumu’ah prayer), it is obligatory for you to present yourself for the Jumu’ah (prayer) whether you hear the Adhan or not. And at times, Anas used to establish the Salat-ul-Jumu’ah (Jumu’ah prayer) at his palace and sometime he did not, while he was at a place called Az-Zawiya, situated at a distance of two parasangs (about six miles from Basrah).

902. Narrated ‘Aishah, the wife of the Prophet ﷺ: The people used to come from their abodes and from Al-‘Awali (i.e., outskirts of Al-Madina up to a distance of four miles or more from Al-Madina). They used to pass through dust and used to be drenched with sweat and covered with dust; so, sweat used to trickle from them. One of them came to Allah’s Messenger ﷺ who was in my house. The Prophet ﷺ said to him, “I wish that you keep yourself pure and clean on this day of yours (i.e., take a bath).”

(16) CHAPTER. The time for the Jumu’ah (prayer) due when the sun declines, i.e., just after mid-day.

The same was said by ‘Umar, ‘Ali, An-Nu’man bin Bashir and ‘Amr bin Hurairah."

903. Narrated Yahya bin Sa’id: I asked ‘Amra about taking a bath on Fridays. She replied, “‘Aishah رضي الله عنها said, ‘The people used to work (for their livelihood) and whenever they went for the Jumu’ah (prayer)
they used to go to the mosque in the same shape as they had been in work. So they were asked to take a bath on Friday."

904. Narrated Anas bin Malik: The Prophet used to offer the Jumu‘ah (prayer) immediately after mid-day.

905. Narrated Anas bin Malik: We used to offer the Jumu‘ah (prayer) early and then have an afternoon nap.

(17) CHAPTER. If it becomes very hot on Fridays (then what should be done)?

906. Narrated Anas bin Malik: The Prophet used to offer the Salāt (prayer) earlier if it was very cold; and if it was very hot he used to delay the Salāt, i.e. the Jumu‘ah (prayer).
(18) CHAPTER. To go for the Jumu’ah (prayer) walking unhurriedly.

And the Statement of Allâh (J.24),7:34: 

“...Come to the remembrance of Allâh [Jumu’ah religious talk (Khuṭba) and Salah (prayer)]” (V.62:9) and whoever said that the meaning of “come” is “to prepare and go for the Salah (prayer)” as is inferred from the Statement of Allâh (J.24): “And strives for it, with the necessary effort due for it...” (V.17:19)

And Ibn ‘Abbas t.a. said: “Selling is forbidden at that time.” And ‘Aţâ’ said, “All types of work are forbidden [at the time of the Salah (prayer)].” And narrated Aţ-Zuhrî: If the Adhān is pronounced by the Mu’âdh-dîn on Friday [for Salât-ul-Jumu’ah (Jumu’ah prayer)] anyone on a journey should attend the Salât (prayer).

907. Narrated Abû ‘Abs t.a. while he was going for the Jumu’ah prayer: I heard the Prophet s.a.w. saying, “Anyone whose feet are covered with dust in Allah’s Cause, shall be saved by Allah from the Hell-fire.”

908. Narrated Abû Hurairah t.a: I heard Allâh’s Messenger s.a.w. saying, “If the Iqâma is pronounced for the Salât (prayer),...
do not run for it but just walk for it calmly and offer Salāt whatever you get, and complete whatever you have missed.”

909. Narrated ʿAbdullāh bin Abī Qatāda on the authority of his father: The Prophet ﷺ said, “Do not stand up for Salāt (prayer) unless you see me (in front of you), and observe calmness and solemnity”.

(19) CHAPTER. One should not separate two persons (sitting together in a row) on Fridays.

910. Narrated Salmān Al-Fārisī: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ said, “Anyone who takes a bath on Friday and cleanse himself as much as he can and puts oil (on his hair) or scents himself; and then proceeds for the Salāt (prayer) and does not separate two persons [sitting together in a mosque for the Salāt-ul-Jumu’ah (Jumu’ah prayer)], and offers Salāt (prayer) as much as is written for him and remains quiet when the Īmām delivers the Khutbah (religious talk), all his sins in-between the present and the last Friday will be forgiven.”
(20) CHAPTER. A man should not make his brother get up to sit in his place (i.e., usurp his seat) on Friday.

911. Narrated Ibn Juraij: I heard Nafi' saying, “Ibn 'Umar said, ‘The Prophet forbade that a man should make another man to get up to sit in his place.'” I said to Nafi’, ‘Is it for Jumu‘ah (prayer) only?’ He replied, “For Jumu‘ah (prayer) and also for any other (prayer).”

(21) CHAPTER. Adhan on Friday (for the Jumu‘ah prayer).

912. Narrated A’s-Sa’ib bin Yazid: In the lifetime of the Prophet, Abū Bakr and ‘Umar, the Adhan for the Jumu‘ah prayer used to be pronounced when the Imam sat on the pulpit. But during the caliphate of ‘Uthmān when the Muslims increased in number, a third Adhan at Az-Zaurā‘ was added. Abū ‘Abdullāh said, “Az-Zaurā‘ is a place in the market of Al-Madina.”

(22) CHAPTER. One Mu‘adh-dhin on Friday.

913. Narrated A’s-Sa’ib bin Yazid: The person who increased the number of
Adhân for the Jumu‘ah prayer to three was ‘Uthmân bin ‘Affân and it was when the (Muslim) population of Al-Madîna increased. In the lifetime of the Prophet there was only one Mu‘adh-dhin and the Adhân used to be pronounced only after the Imâm had taken his seat (i.e., on the pulpit).

(23) CHAPTER. The Imâm, while sitting on the pulpit, repeats the wordings of the Adhân when he hears it.

914. Narrated Abû Umâma bin Sahl bin Hunaif: I heard Mu‘awiyah bin Abî Sufyân (repeating the wording of the Adhân) while he was sitting on the pulpit. When the Mu‘adh-dhin pronounced the Adhân saying, “Allahu-Akbar, Allahu-Akbar”, Mu‘awiyah said: “Allahu-Akbar, Allahu-Akbar.” And when the Mu‘adh-dhin said, “Ash-hadu an la ilâha illallah” (I testify that none has the right to be worshipped but Allâh), Mu‘awiyah said, “And (so do) I”. When he said, “Ash-hadu anna Muḥammadan Rasûl Allâh” (I testify that Muḥammad is Allâh’s Messenger), Mu‘awiyah said, “And (so do) I”. When the Adhân was finished, Mu‘awiyah said, “O people, when the Mu‘adh-dhin pronounced the Adhân, I heard Allâh’s Messenger on this very pulpit saying what you have just heard me saying”. 

[111]
(24) CHAPTER. To sit on the pulpit while the Adhán is being pronounced.

915. Narrated Aṣ-Ṣā‘īb bin Yazīd: 'Uthmān bin 'Affān introduced the second Adhán on Fridays when the number of the people in the mosque increased. Previously the Adhán on Fridays used to be pronounced only after the Imām had taken his seat (on the pulpit).

(25) CHAPTER. To pronounce the Adhán before delivering the Khuṭba (religious talk).

916. Narrated Az-Zuhri: I heard Aṣ-Ṣā‘īb bin Yazīd saying, “In the lifetime of Allah’s Messenger ﷺ, and Abū Bakr and ‘Umarرضي الله عنهما, the Adhán for the Jumu‘ah prayer used to be pronounced after the Imām had taken his seat on the pulpit. But when the people increased in number during the caliphate of ‘Uthmānرضي الله عنه, he introduced a third Adhán on Friday for the (Jumu‘ah prayer) and it was pronounced at Az-ẓaurā‘ and that new state of affairs remained stable and firm (in the succeeding years).

(26) CHAPTER. (To deliver) the Khuṭba (religious talk) on the pulpit.

And Anas ﷺ said: “The Prophet ﷺ delivered the Khuṭba on the pulpit.”

917. Narrated Abī Ḥāzim bin Dīnār: Some people went to Sahl bin Sa‘d Aṣ-Ṣā‘īdī and told him that they had different opinions
regarding the wood of the pulpit. They asked him about it and he said, “By Allah, I know of what wood the pulpit was made, and no doubt I saw it on the very first day when Allah’s Messenger took his seat on it. Allah’s Messenger sent for such and such an Ansârî woman (and Sahî mentioned her name) and said to her, ‘Order your slave-carpenter to prepare for me a pulpit on which I may sit at the time of addressing the people.’ So, she ordered her slave-carpenter and he made it from the tamarisk of the forest and brought it (to the woman). The woman sent that (pulpit) to Allah’s Messenger who ordered it to be placed here. Then I saw Allah’s Messenger offering Salât (prayer) on it and then bowed on it. Then he stepped back, got down and prostrated on the ground near the foot of the pulpit and again ascended the pulpit. After finishing the Salât (prayer) he faced the people and said, ‘I have done this so that you may follow me and learn the way I offer the Salât (prayer).”

918. Narrated Jâbir bin ‘Abdullâh: The Prophet used to stand by a stem of a date-palm tree [while delivering a Khutba (religious talk)]. When the pulpit was placed for him we heard that stem crying like a pregnant she-camel till the Prophet got down from the pulpit and placed his hand over it.
919.Narrated Sālim: My father said, “I heard the Prophet delivering the Khutba (religious talk) on the pulpit and he said, ‘Whoever comes for the Jumu‘ah (prayer) should take a bath (before coming).’”

(27) CHAPTER. To deliver the Khutba (religious talk) while standing.

And Anas said: “While the Prophet was delivering the Khutba (religious talk) standing...” [This narration of Anas is a part of Hadith No. 933. (See Fath Al-Bāri)].

920.Narrated Ibn ‘Umar: The Prophet used to deliver the Khutba (religious talk) while standing and then he would sit, then stand again as you do nowadays.

(28) CHAPTER. The facing of the Imam towards the people and the facing of the people towards the Imam during the Khutba (religious talk).

And Ibn ‘Umar and Anas faced the Imam.
921. Narrated Abū Sā'īd Al-Khūdri: One day the Prophet sat on the pulpit and we sat around him.

(29) CHAPTER. Saying “Amma ba’du”(1) in the Khutba (religious talk) after glorifying and praising Allāh.

Ibn Abbās quoted this from the Prophet ﷺ.

922. Narrated Fātimah bint Al-Mundhir: Amās’ bint Abī Bakr Ās-Siddiq said, “I went to ‘Āishah and the people were offering Salāt (prayers). I asked her, ‘What is wrong with the people?’ She pointed towards the sky with her head. I asked her, ‘Is there a sign?’ ‘Āishah nodded with her head meaning ‘Yes’.” Amās’ added, “Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ prolonged the Salāt (prayer) to such an extent that I fainted. There was a waterskin by my side and I opened it and poured some water on my head. When Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ finished Salāt, and the solar eclipse had cleared, the Prophet ﷺ addressed the people and praised Allāh as He deserves and said, ‘Amma ba’du.’” Amās’ further said, “Some Anṣārī women started talking, so I turned to them in order to make them quiet. I asked ‘Āishah what the Prophet ﷺ had said. ‘Āishah said: ‘He said, ‘I have seen things at this place of mine which were never shown to me before; (I have seen) even Paradise

---

(1) (Chap.22) Amma ba’du: It means “Whatever comes after”, and it is an expression used for separating an introductory from the main topics in a Khutba (religious talk), the introductory being usually concerned with Allāh’s Praises and Glorification.
and Hell. And, no doubt it has been revealed to me that you (people) will be put to trial in your graves like or nearly like the trial of Masih Ad-DajjaL. (The angels) will come to everyone of you and ask him, 'What do you know about this man (Prophet Muhammad ﷺ)?' The faithful believer or firm believer (Hishãm was in doubt which word the Prophet ﷺ used), will say, 'He is Allah's Messenger ﷺ and he is Muḥammad ﷺ who came to us with clear evidences and guidance. So we believed him, accepted his teachings and followed and trusted his teachings.' Then the angels will tell him to sleep (in peace) as they have come to know that he was a believer. But the hypocrite or a doubtful person (Hishãm is not sure as to which word the Prophet ﷺ used), will be asked what he knew about this man (Prophet Muhammad ﷺ). He will say, 'I do not know but I heard the people saying something (about him) so I said the same' Hishãm added, "Fāṭima told me that she remembered that narration completely by heart except that she said about the hypocrite or a doubtful person that he will be punished severely."

923. Narrated ‘Amr bin Taghlib: Some property or something else was brought to Allah’s Messenger ﷺ and he distributed it. He gave to some men and ignored the others. Later he got the news of his being admonished by those whom he had ignored. So he glorified and praised Allah and said, "Ammã ba ‘du. By Allah, I may give to a man and ignore another, although the one whom I ignore is more dearer to me than the one whom I give. But I give to some people as I
feel that they have no patience and no contentment in their hearts and I leave those who are patient and self-contented with the goodness and richness which Allah has put in their hearts and 'Amr bin Taghil is one of them.’ ‘Amr added, ‘By Allah! Those words of Allah’s Messenger were more dearer to me than the best red camels.’

924. Narrated ‘Aishah: Once in the middle of the night Allah’s Messenger went out and offered Salah (prayer) in the mosque and some men also offered Salah (prayer) with him. The next morning the people spoke about it and so more people gathered and offered Salah (prayer) with him (in the second night). They circulated the news in the morning, and so, on the third night the number of people increased greatly. Allah’s Messenger came out and they offered Salah (prayer) behind him. On the fourth night the mosque was overwhelmed by the people till it could not accommodate them. Allah’s Messenger came out only for the early morning Salah (prayer) and when he finished the Salah (Fajr prayer), he faced the people and recited Tashah-hud (I testify that none has the right to be worshipped but Allah and that Muhammad is His Messenger), and then said, “Ammã ba’du. Verily your presence (in the mosque at night) was not hidden from me, but I was afraid that this Salah (prayer) might be made compulsory and you might not be able to carry it out.’
925. Narrated Abū Ḥumaid As-Sa'īdī: One night Allāh’s Messenger stood up after the Ṣalāt (prayer) and recited Taṣḥah-hud and then praised Allāh as He deserved and said, “Ammā ba’du.”

926. Narrated Al-Miswar bin Makhrama: Once Allāh’s Messenger got up for delivering the Khutba (religious talk) and I heard him after “Taṣḥah-hud” saying “Ammā ba’du.”

927. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbās: Once the Prophet ascended the pulpit and it was the last gathering in which he took part. He was covering his shoulder with a big cloak and binding his head with an oily bandage. He glorified and praised Allāh and said, “O people! Come to me.” So the people came and gathered around him and he then said, “Ammā ba’du.”

“From now onward, this community of the Anṣār will decrease and other people will increase. So anybody who becomes a ruler of
the followers of Muḥammad (ﷺ) and has the power to harm or benefit people, then, he should accept the good from the good-doers amongst them (Anṣār) and excuse the wrongdoers amongst them.”

(30) CHAPTER. To sit in between the two Khuṭba (religious talk) (on Friday).

928. Narrated ʿAbdullāh (bin ʿUmar): The Prophet ﷺ used to deliver two Khuṭba (religious talk) and sit in between them.

(31) CHAPTER. To listen to the Khuṭba (religious talk) on Friday.

929. Narrated Abū Hurairah: The Prophet ﷺ said, “When it is a Friday, the angels stand at the gate of the mosque and keep on writing the names of the persons coming to the mosque in succession according to their arrivals. The example of the one who enters the mosque in the earliest hour is that of one offering a camel (in sacrifice). The one coming next is like one offering a cow and then a ram and then a chicken and then an egg respectively. When the Imām comes out [for Salāt-ul-Jumuʿah (Jumuʿah prayer)] they (i.e. angels) fold their papers and listen to the Khuṭba (religious talk).”
(32) CHAPTER. When the Imam sees a person entering the mosque during the Khutba, he should order him to offer two Rak’ah Salat (prayer) before sitting (Tahayyat-ul-Masjid).

930.Narrated Jâbir bin ‘Abdulläh: A person entered the mosque while the Prophet was delivering the Khutba (religious talk) on a Friday. The Prophet said to him, “Have you offered Salat (prayer)?” The man replied in the negative. The Prophet said, “Get up and offer two Rak’a Salat (prayer) (Tahayyat-ul-Masjid)”.

(33) CHAPTER. Whoever comes when the Imam is delivering the Khutba (religious talk) should offer a light two Rak’a Salat (prayer) (Tahayyat-ul-Masjid).

931. Narrated Jâbir: A man entered the mosque while the Prophet was delivering the Khutba (religious talk). The Prophet said to him, “Have you offered Salat (prayer)?” The man replied in the negative. The Prophet said, “Offer two Rak’a Salat (prayer) (Tahayyat-ul-Masjid)”.

(34) CHAPTER. To raise hands during the Khutba (religious talk).

932. Narrated Anas: While the Prophet was delivering the Khutba (religious talk) on a Friday, a man stood up and said, “O Allah’s Messenger! The livestock and the sheep are dying, so pray to Allah for rain.” So he (the Prophet) raised both his hands and invoked Allah (for it).
CHAPTER. Istisqā’ (invoking Allāh for rain) in the Khaṭba (religious talk) on Friday.

933. Narrated Anas bin Malik:

Once in the lifetime of the Prophet ﷺ the people were afflicted with drought.

While the Prophet ﷺ was delivering the Khaṭba (religious talk) on a Friday, a bedouin stood up and said, “O Allāh’s Messenger! Our possessions are being destroyed and the children are hungry; please invoke Allāh (for rain)”. So the Prophet ﷺ raised his hands, (invoked Allāh for rain). At that time there was not a trace of cloud in the sky. By Him, in Whose Hands my soul is, as soon as he lowered his hands, clouds gathered like mountains, and before he got down from the pulpit, I saw the rain falling on the beard of the Prophet ﷺ. It rained that day, the next day, the third day, the fourth day till the next Friday. The same bedouin or another man stood up and said, “O Allāh’s Messenger! The houses have collapsed, our possessions and livestock have been drowned; please invoke Allāh for us (to stop the rain).” So, the Prophet ﷺ raised both his hands and said, “O Allah! Round about us and not on us”. So, in whatever direction he pointed with his hands, the clouds dispersed and cleared away, and Al-Madīna’s (sky) became clear as a hole in between the clouds. The valley of Qanāt remained flooded and went on flowing for one month, none came from outside but talked about the abundant rain.
(36) CHAPTER. One should keep quiet and listen while the Imām is delivering the Khutba (religious talk) on Friday.

And if a person says to his companion: "Be quiet and listen," even then he is doing something wrong (which will reduce his reward). Narrated Salmān: The Prophet ﷺ said, “Whenever the Imām is delivering the Khutba (religious talk), it is essential for the audience to keep quiet and listen.”

(37) CHAPTER. An hour (opportune – lucky time) on Friday.

934. Narrated Abū Hurairah: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ said, “When the Imām is delivering the Khutba (religious talk), and you ask your companion to keep quiet and listen, then no doubt you have done a Laghw (an evil act).”

935. Narrated Abū Hurairah: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ talked about Friday and said, “There is an hour (opportune – lucky time) on Friday and if a Muslim gets it while offering Ṣalāt (prayer) and asks something from Allah, then Allah will definitely meet his demand.” And he (the Prophet ﷺ) pointed out the shortness of that time with his hands.

(38) CHAPTER. If some people leave the Imām during the Ṣalāt-ul-Jumu’ah (Jumu’ah
prayer), then the Ṣalāt (prayer) of the remaining people and the Īmām is permissible.

936. Narrated Jābir bin ʻAbdullāh رضي الله عنه: While we were praying [attending the Jumu‘ah (Khutba and prayer)] with the Prophet ﷺ, some camels loaded with food, arrived (from Sham). The people diverted their attention towards the camels (and left the mosque), and only twelve persons remained with the Prophet ﷺ. So this Verse was revealed:

“And when they see some merchandise or some amusement [beating of Tambur (drums) etc.] they disperse headlong to it, and leave you (Muḥammad ﷺ) standing...” (V.62:11)

(39) CHAPTER. To offer As-Ṣalāt (the prayer) before and after the Jumu‘ah prayer.

937. Narrated ʻAbdullāh bin ʻUmar رضي الله عنه: Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ used to offer two Rak‘ā before the Zuhr prayer and two Rak‘ā after it. He also used to offer two Rak‘ā after the Maghrib prayer in his house, and two Rak‘ā after the ʻĪshā’ prayer. He never offered prayers after the Ṣalāt-ul-Jumu‘ah (Jumu‘ah prayer) till he departed (from the mosque), and then he would offer two Rak‘ā at home.

(40) CHAPTER. The Statement of Allāh ﷻ: “Then when the (Jumu‘ah) Ṣalāt (prayer) is ended, you may disperse through the land, and seek of the Bounty of Allāh...” (V.62:10)

938. Narrated Sahl bin Sa‘d رضي الله عنه: There was a woman amongst us who had a farm and she used to sow Silq (a kind of
vegetable) on the edges of streams in her farm. On Fridays she used to pull out the Silq from its roots and put the roots in a utensil. Then she would put a handful of powdered barley over it and cook it. The roots of the Silq were a substitute for meat. After finishing the Salat-ul-Jumu’ah (Jumu’ah prayer) we used to greet her and she would give us that food which we would eat with our hands, and because of that meal, we used to look forward to Friday.

939. Narrated Sahl: As above with the addition: We never had an afternoon nap nor meals except after offering the Jumu’ah (prayer).

(41) CHAPTER. The afternoon nap after the Jumu’ah (prayer).

940. Narrated Anas: We used to offer the Jumu’ah (prayer) early and then take the afternoon nap.

941. Narrated Sahl: We used to offer the Jumu’ah (prayer) with the Prophet and then take the afternoon nap.
(1) CHAPTER. The Ṣalāt-ul-Khauf (Fear prayer).

And the Statement of Allāh ﷺ:

"And when you (Muslims) travel in the land, there is no sin on you if you shorten As-Ṣalāt (prayer) if you fear that the disbelievers may put you in trial (attack you etc.) verily the disbelievers are ever unto you open enemies. When you (O Messenger Muḥammad ﷺ) are among them, and lead them in As-Ṣalāt (the prayer), let one party of them stand up (in Ṣalāt) with you taking their arms with them; when they finish their prostrations, let them take their position in the rear, and let the other party come up which has not yet offered Ṣalāt and let them offer Ṣalāt with you taking all precautions, and bearing arms. Those who disbelieve wish, if you were negligent of your arms and your baggage, to attack you in a single rush, but there is no sin on you if you put away your arms because of the inconvenience of rain or because you are ill, but take (every) precaution for yourselves. Verily! Allāh has prepared a humiliating torment for the disbelievers. (V.4:101-102)"

942. Narrated Shu‘aib: I asked Az-Zuhri, "Did the Prophet ﷺ ever offer the Ṣalāt-ul-Khauf (Fear prayer)?" Az-Zuhri said, "I was told by Ṣālim that ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Umar رضي الله عنهما had said, ‘I took part in a holy battle with Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ in Najd. We faced the enemy and arranged ourselves in rows. Then Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ stood up to lead the Ṣalāt (prayer) and one party stood to offer Ṣalāt (prayer) with him while the other faced the enemy. Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ and the former party bowed and performed two
prostrations. Then that party left (after completing their 2nd Rak'a individually with Taslim, while the Prophet kept on standing). Then they took the place of those who had not offered Salāt (prayer). [The second (latter) party] joined Allāh's Messenger who prayed one Rak'a (i.e. his 2nd Rak'a with the latter party) and performed two prostrations and finished his Salāt (prayer) with Taslim. Then everyone of them [of the 2nd (latter) party] bowed once and performed two prostrations individually (i.e. completed their 2nd Rak'a and finished their Salāt (prayer) with Taslim].”

(2) CHAPTER. The Salāt-ul-Khauf (Fear prayers) (can be offered) while standing or riding.

943. Narrated Nāfi‘: Ibn ‘Umar رضي الله عنهما said something similar to Mujāhid’s saying: Whenever (Muslims and non-Muslims) stand face to face in battle, the Muslims can offer Salāt (prayer) while standing. Ibn ‘Umar added, “The Prophet said, ‘If the number of the enemy is greater than the Muslims, they can offer Salāt while standing or riding (individually).’” [See Fath Al-Bārī].

(3) CHAPTER. To guard one another during the Salāt-ul-Khauf (fear prayer).

944. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbās رضي الله عنهما: Once the Prophet led the Salāt-ul-Khauf (Fear prayer), (some of) the people stood behind him. He said Takbīr (Allāhu-Akbar) and those behind him also said the same. He bowed and they bowed. Then he prostrated and they also prostrated. Then he stood for the second Rak'a and those who had offered the first Rak’a (completed their 2nd Rak'a
with Taslim) went to guard their brothers (the second party). The second party joined him and performed bowing and prostrations with him (in his 2nd Rak'a and then got up to finish their 2nd Rak'a after the Prophet had finished his 2nd Rak'a with Taslim) so all the people were in Salat (prayer) but they were guarding one another during the Salat (prayer).

(4) CHAPTER. As-Salât (the prayer) at the time of besieging a fort and at the time of meeting the enemy.

Al-Auzâ'i said, “If there are signs of victory and it is impossible to offer the Salat (prayer) then everyone should offer his Salat (prayer) with signs. If he cannot do even that then he can delay the Salat (prayer) till the battle is over or till they feel secure, then they can offer two Rak'at prayers. But if they are unable to complete the Salat (prayer) then they can perform one bowing and two prostrations (one Rak'a), and if they are unable to do even this, then saying Allahu Akbar is not sufficient for them, and so they should postpone the Salat (prayer) till they feel secure.” Makhtul agrees to it (i.e. this verdict). And Anas bin Malik said, “I reached at dawn during the siege of Tustar and the fighting was at its peak. The Muslims were not able to offer the Fajr prayer and we did not offer Salat (prayer) till a part of the day had passed and then we offered the Salat with Abû Mûsa and we were granted victory by Allâh.” Anas further said, “It would not make me happy even if I got the whole world and whatever is in it instead of that Salat (prayer) (i.e. the one they missed because of fighting).”
came, cursing the disbelievers of Quraish and said, “O Allah’s Messenger! I have not offered the ‘Asr prayer and the sun was about to set.”” The Prophet replied, “By Allah! I too, have not offered the Salât (prayer) yet.” The Prophet then went to Buṭhān, performed ablution and performed the ‘Asr prayer after the sun had set and then offered the Maghrib prayer after it.” [Please see H. No. 596 and 598].

(5) CHAPTER. The chaser and the chased can offer Salât (prayer) while riding, and by signs.

Al-Walid said: I told Al-Auza’ī about the Salât (prayer) of Shurabbil bin A-Samt and his companions on the backs of animals. On that he said, “That was the case with us if we feared that the time of Salât would be over.”

Al-Walid (disagreed with Al-Auza’ī) deriving his verdict from the statement of the Prophet: “None should offer the ‘Asr prayer but at Banī Quraiza.”

946. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar: When the Prophet returned from the battle of Al-Ahzâb (The Confederates), he said to us, “None should offer the ‘Asr prayer but at Banī Quraiza.” The ‘Asr prayer became due for some of them on the way. Some of them decided not to offer the Salât but at Banī Quraiza while others decided to offer the Salât on the spot and said that the intention of the Prophet was not what the former party had understood. And when that was told to the Prophet he did not blame anyone of them.
(6) CHAPTER. **Takbîr** (Allâh is the Most Great) and offering the **Fajr** prayer early when it is still dark and offering **As-Salât** (the prayers) while attacking the enemy and in battles.

947. Narrated Anas bin Mâlik : Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ offered the **Fajr** prayer when it was still dark, then he rode and said, **Allâhu Akbar!** Khaibar is ruined. When we approach near a nation, the most evil will be the morning of those who had been warned.” The people came out into the streets saying, “Muhammad and his army.” Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ vanquished them by force and their warriors were killed; the children and women were taken as captives. Safiyya was taken by Dihya Al-Kalbî and later she belonged to Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ who married her and her **Mahr** was her manumission.
(1) CHAPTER. The two ‘Eid and sprucing oneself up on them.

948. Narrated ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Umar: ‘Umar bought a silk cloak from the market, took it to Allāh’s Messenger and said, “O Allāh’s Messenger! Take it and adorn yourself with it during the ‘Eid and when the delegations visit you.” Allāh’s Messenger replied, “This dress is for those who have no share (in the Hereafter)”. After a long period Allāh’s Messenger sent a cloak of silk brocade to ‘Umar. ‘Umar came to Allāh’s Messenger with the cloak and said, “O Allāh’s Messenger! You said that this dress was for those who had no share (in the Hereafter); yet you have sent me this cloak.” Allāh’s Messenger said to him, “Sell it and fulfil your needs by it.”

(2) CHAPTER. A display of spears and shields on ‘Eid Festival day.

949. Narrated ‘Āishah: Allāh’s Messenger came to my house while two girls were singing beside me the songs of Bu’āth (a story about the war between the two

(1) (The Book 13) See glossary ['Eid-al-Fitr and ‘Eid-al-Adhã]. And “Eid Ṣalāt (prayer)”: consists of a two Rak‘a prayer with seven Takbirāt (Allāh-u-Akbar) in the first Rak‘a and five Takbirāt in the second Rak‘a, excluding the Takbir of opening of the prayer and the Takbir of the Qayām (standing) for the second Rak‘a.
tribes of the Ānsūr, the Khazraj and the ‘Aṣṣ, before Islam). The Prophet ﷺ lay down and turned his face to the other side. Then Abū Bakr came and spoke to me harshly saying, “Musical instruments of Satan near the Prophet ﷺ?” Allah’s Messenger ﷺ turned his face towards him and said, “Leave them.” When Abū Bakr became inattentive, I signalled to those girls to go out and they left.

950. It was the day of ‘Eid, and the black people were playing with shields and spears; so, either I requested the Prophet ﷺ, or he asked me whether I would like to see the display. I replied in the affirmative. Then the Prophet ﷺ made me stand behind him and my cheek was touching his cheek and he was saying, “Carry on! O Banī Arfida,” till I got tired. The Prophet ﷺ asked me, “Are you satisfied (Is that sufficient for you)?” I replied in the affirmative and he told me to leave.

(3) CHAPTER. The legal way of the celebrations on the two ‘Eid festivals for the Islamic World (Muslims).

951. Narrated Al-Bara’ī: I heard the Prophet ﷺ delivering a Khutba (religious talk) saying, “The first thing to be done on this day of ours (first day of ‘Eid-al-Adhà) is to offer Ṣalāt (prayer); and after returning [from Ṣalāt (prayer)] we slaughter our sacrifices (in the Name of Allāh) and whoever does so, he acted according to our Sunna (legal ways).
952. Narrated ‘Aishah: Abū Bakr came to my house while two small Ansārī girls were singing beside me the stories of the Ansār concerning the Day of Bu‘thah and they were not (professional) singers. Abū Bakr said protestingly, “Musical instruments of Satan in the house of Allah’s Messenger!” It happened on the ‘Eid day and Allah’s Messenger said, “O Abū Bakr! There is an ‘Eid (festival) for every nation and this is our ‘Eid (festival).”

(4) CHAPTER. Eating on the day of Fīr before going out (for the ‘Eid-al-Fīr prayer).

953. Narrated Anas bin Mālik: Allah’s Messenger never proceeded [for the Salāt (prayer)] on the Day of ‘Eid-al-Fīr unless he had eaten some dates. Anas also narrated: The Prophet used to eat odd number of dates.

(5) CHAPTER. Eating on the Day of Nahr (10th of Dhul-Hijjah).

954. Narrated Anas: The Prophet said, “Whoever slaughtered (his sacrifice) before the Salāt (‘Eid prayer) should slaughter again.” A man stood up and said, “This is the day on which one has
desire for meat,” and he mentioned something about his neighbours. It seemed that the Prophet believed him. Then the same man added, “I have a young she-goat which is dearer to me than the meat of two sheep.” The Prophet permitted him to slaughter it as a sacrifice. I do not know whether that permission was valid only for him or for others as well.

955.Narrated Al-Bara` bin `Azib: The Prophet delivered the Khutba (religious talk) after offering As-Salat (the prayer) on the day of Nahr and said, “Whoever offers the Salat (prayer) like us and slaughters like us then his Nusuk (sacrifice) will be accepted by Allâh. And whoever slaughters his sacrifice before the Salat (‘Eid prayer) then he has no Nusuk (not done the sacrifice”). Abû Burda bin Niyâr, the uncle of Al-Bara’ said, “O Allah’s Messenger! I have slaughtered my sheep before the Salat (‘Eid prayer) and I thought today as a day of eating and drinking (not alcoholic drinks), and I liked that my sheep should be the first to be slaughtered in my house. So, I slaughtered my sheep and took my food before coming for the Salat (prayer).” The Prophet said, “The sheep which you have slaughtered is just mutton (not a Nusuk).” He (Abû Burda) said, “O Allah’s Messenger! I have a young she-goat which is dearer to me than two sheep. Will that be sufficient as a Nusuk on my behalf?” The Prophet said, “Yes, it will be sufficient for you but it will not be sufficient (as a Nusuk) for anyone else after you.”

(6) CHAPTER. To proceed to a Musallâ (praying place) without a pulpit.
956. Narrated Abu Sa’id Al-Khudri: The Prophet used to proceed to the Musalla (praying place) on the days of ‘Eid-al-Fitr and ‘Eid-al-Adha; the first thing to begin with was the Salat (prayer), and after that he would stand in front of the people and the people would keep sitting in their rows. Then he would preach them, advise them and give them orders. And after that if he wished to send an army for an expedition, he would do so; or if he wanted to give an order he would do so, and then depart. The people followed this legal way till I went out with Marwan, the governor of Al-Madina, for the Salat (prayer) of ‘Eid-al-Awl or ‘Eid-al-Fitr. When we reached the Musalla, there was a pulpit made by Kathir bin A-Salt. Marwan wanted to get up on that pulpit before As-Salat. I caught hold of his clothes but he pulled them and ascended the pulpit and delivered the Khutba (religious talk) before the Salat (prayer). I said to him, “By Allah, you have changed (the Prophet’s legal way).” He replied, “O Abu Sa’id! Gone is that which you know.” I said, “By Allah! What I know is better than what I do not know.” Marwan said, “People do not sit to listen to our Khutba after As-Salat (prayer), so I delivered the Khutba before As-Salat (prayer).”

(7) CHAPTER. Walking and riding for the ‘Eid prayer. The ‘Eid prayer is offered before delivering the Khutba (religious talk) and there is no Adhan or Iqama for it.

957. Narrated ‘Abdullah bin ‘Umar: Allah’s Messenger used to offer
As-Salāt (the prayer) of ‘Eid-al-Adhā and ‘Eid-al-Fitr and then deliver the Khutba (religious talk) after As-Salāt.


959. Narrated ‘Atā that during the early days of Ibn Az-Zubair, Ibn ‘Abbas had sent a message to him telling him that the Adhān for the ‘Eid prayer was never pronounced (in the lifetime of Allah’s Messenger) and the Khutba (religious talk) used to be delivered after As-Salāt (the prayer).

960. Narrated ‘Ata’: Ibn ‘Abbas and Jābir bin ‘Abdullāh said, “There was no Adhān for As-Salāt (prayer) of ‘Eid-al-Fitr and ‘Eid-al-Adha.”

961. Narrated ‘Ata’: I heard Jābir bin ‘Abdullāh saying, “The Prophet stood up and started with As-Salāt (the prayer of ‘Eid), and after it, he delivered the Khutba (religious talk). When the Prophet of Allah finished [the Khutba (religious talk)], he went to the women and preached them, while he was leaning on Bilāl’s hand, Bilāl was spreading his garment and the ladies were putting alms in it.” I said to ‘Ata’, “Do you think it incumbent upon an Imām to go to the
women and preach them after finishing the Salât and Khutba?” ‘Atâ’ said, “No doubt it is incumbent on Imám to do so, and why should they not do so?”

(8) CHAPTER. The Khutba (religious talk) (should be delivered) after the ‘Eid prayer.

962. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbâs: I offered the ‘Eid prayer with Allah’s Messenger ﷺ, Abú Bakr, ‘Umar and ‘Uthmán and all of them offered Salât (prayer) before delivering the Khutba (religious talk).

963. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ, Abú Bakr and ‘Umar used to offer the Salât-al-’Eidain (the two ‘Eid prayers) before delivering the Khutba (religious talk).

964. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbâs: The Prophet ﷺ offered a two Rak‘a Salât (prayer) on the day of ‘Eid-al-Fîtr and he did not offer any Salât before or after it. Then he went towards women along with Bilâl and ordered them to give alms and so they started giving their ear-rings and necklaces (in charity).

965. Narrated Al-Barâ’ bin ‘Azib: The Prophet ﷺ said, “The first thing we
do on this day of ours is to offer Ṣalāt [then deliver the Khutba (religious talk)] and then return to slaughter the sacrifice. So, anyone who does so, he acted according to our Sunna (legal way), and whoever slaughtered the sacrifice before Aṣ-Ṣalāt (the prayer), it was just meat which he presented to his family and would not be considered as Nusuk.” A person from the Ānsār named Abū Burda bin Niyār said, “O Allāh’s Messenger! I slaughtered the Nusuk (before Aṣ-Ṣalāt) but I have a young she-goat which is better than an older sheep.” The Prophet ﷺ said, “Sacrifice it in lieu of the first, but it will be not sufficient (as a sacrifice) for anybody else after you.”

(9) CHAPTER. It is disliked to carry arms on ‘Eid and in the Haram (sanctuary)

And Al-Ḥasan said: (In the lifetime of the Prophet ﷺ) It was forbidden to carry arms on the day of ‘Eid except if there was fear from the enemy.

966. Narrated Sa’īd bin Jubair: I was with Ibn ‘Umar when a spear-head pierced the sole of his foot and his foot stuck to the paddle of the saddle and I got down and pulled his foot out, and that happened in Mīnā. Al-Ḥajjāj got the news and came to enquire about his health and said, “Alas! If we could only know the man who wounded you!” Ibn ‘Umar said, “You are the one who wounded me.” Al-Ḥajjāj asked, “How is that?” Ibn ‘Umar said, “You have allowed the arms to be carried on a day on which nobody used to carry them and you allowed arms to be carried in the Haram (sanctuary) while it was forbidden to carry
arms in the Haram (sanctuary).”

967. Narrated Sa‘īd bin ‘Amr bin Sa‘īd bin Al-‘Āsi: Al-Hajjāj went to Ibn ‘Umar while I was present there. Al-Hajjāj asked Ibn ‘Umar, “How are you?” Ibn ‘Umar replied, “I am all right,” Al-Hajjāj asked, “Who wounded you?” Ibn ‘Umar replied, “The person who allowed arms to be carried on the day on which it was forbidden to carry them (he meant Al-Hajjāj).”

968. Narrated Al-Barā‘: The Prophet ﷺ delivered the Khuṭba (religious talk) on the day of Nahr (‘Eid-al-Adhā) and said, “The first thing we do on this day of ours is to offer the prayer [then deliver the Khuṭba (religious talk)] and then return and slaughter (our sacrifices). So anyone who does so, he acted according to our Sunna (legal ways); and who ever slaughtered before As-Salaūt (the prayer), then it was just meat that he offered to his family and would not be considered as a sacrifice in any way.” My uncle Abū Burda bin Niyyār got up and said, “0, Allah’s Messenger! I slaughtered the sacrifice before the Sallaūt (prayer) but I have a young she-goat which is better than an older sheep.” The Prophet ﷺ said, “Slaughter it in lieu of the first and such a goat will not be
considered as a sacrifice for anybody else after you.’”

(11) CHAPTER. Superiority of (doing good) deeds on the days of Tashriq (11th, 12th, 13th of Dhuł-Hijjah).

Ibn ‘Abbas said, “Remember Allāh during the well-known days; i.e., the first ten days of Dhuł-Hijjah, and also the fixed number of appointed days; i.e. the days of Tashriq.” Ibn ‘Umar and Abū Hurairah used to go out to the market saying Takbīr during the first ten days of Dhuł-Hijjah and the people would say Takbīr after their Takbīrs. Muhammad bin ‘Alī used to say Takbīr after Nawāfil.

969. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbas: The Prophet ﷺ said, “No good deeds done on other days are superior to those done on these (first ten days of Dhuł-Hijjah).” Then some Companions of the Prophet ﷺ said, “Not even Jihād?” He replied, “Not even Jihād, except that of a man who does it by putting himself and his property in danger (for Allāh’s sake i.e., with his life and property), and does not return with any of those things (i.e., is martyred).”

(12) CHAPTER. To say Takbīr on the days of Minā and while proceeding to ‘Arafāt.

‘Umar during his stay at Minā, used to say Takbīr in his tent (with such a loud voice) that the people in the mosque would hear it and they too would start saying Takbīr and the people in the market too would do the same and then the whole Minā would quiver with Takbīr. During those days Ibn ‘Umar used to say Takbīr at Minā and after the (compulsory) Salāt (prayers) and also
while in bed in his tent, while sitting, and while walking. He used to do so during all those days. Maimūna used to say *Takbīr* on the day of *Nahr*. The women used to say *Takbīr* behind Abān bin ‘Uthmān and ‘Umar bin ‘Abdul Azīz, along with the men in the mosque during the nights of *Tāshrīq*.

970. Narrated Muḥammad bin Abī Bakr Al-Thaqafī: While we were going from Minā to ‘Arafāt, I asked Anas bin Mālik about *Talbiya*, “How did you use to say *Talbiya* in the company of the Prophet ﷺ?” Anas said: “People used to say *Talbiya* and their saying was not objected to, and they used to say *Takbīr* and that was not objected to either.”

971. Narrated Umm ‘Aṭiyāya: We used to be ordered to come out on the Day of *‘Eid* and even bring out the virgin girls and menstruating women from their houses so that they might stand behind the men and say *Takbīr* along with them and invoke Allāh along with them and hope for the blessings of that day and for purification from sins.

(13) CHAPTER. *As-Salāt* (the prayers) on the day of *‘Eid* using “*Harba*” (a small spear) (as a *Sutra*).

972. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar: On the day of (*Eid-al-*)*Fitr* and (*Eid-al-*)*Adhā* a spear used to be planted in front of the Prophet ﷺ [as a *Sutra* for the *Salāt* (prayer)] and then he would offer *Salāt* (prayer).
(14) CHAPTER. To put the ‘Anaza (spear-headed stick) or Harba in front of the Imâm on ‘Eid day.

973. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar: The Prophet used to proceed to the Musâlâ and an ‘Anaza used to be carried before him and planted in the Musâlâ in front of him (as a Sutra) and he would offer Salât (prayer) facing it.

(15) CHAPTER. The coming out of ladies and menstruating women to the Musâlâ.

974. Narrated Muhammad: Umm ‘Atiyya said, “Our Prophet ordered us to come out (on ‘Eid day) with the mature girls and the virgins staying in seclusion.” Hafsa narrated the above-mentioned Hadîth and added, “The mature girls or virgins staying in seclusion, but the menstruating women had to keep away from the Musâlâ.”

(16) CHAPTER. The attendance of boys at Musâlâ.

975. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbâs: I (in my boyhood) went out with the Prophet on the day of ‘Eid-al-Fitr or ‘Eid-al-Adhâ. The Prophet offered Salât (prayers) and then delivered the Khutba (religious talk) and
then went towards the women, preached and advised them and ordered them to give alms.

(17) CHAPTER. The Imām faces the people while delivering the Khuṭba (religious talk) of ‘Eid.

Abū Sa'id said, “The Prophet ﷺ stood facing the people.”

976. Narrated Al-Barā’ Rāfi‘un: The Prophet ﷺ went towards Al-Baqi’ (the graveyard at Al-Madîna) on the day of (‘Eid-al-Adha) and offered a two Rak’a Salât (prayer) (of ‘Eid-al-Adha) and then faced us and said, “On this day of ours, our first act of worship is to offer the Salât (prayer) [then to deliver the Khuṭba (religious talk)] and then return and slaughter the sacrifices, and whoever does this, concords with our Sunna (legal way); and whoever slaughtered his sacrifice before that [i.e. before the Salât (prayer)] then that was a thing which he prepared earlier for his family and it would not be considered as a Nusuk (sacrifice)”. A man stood up and said, “O, Allah’s Messenger! I slaughtered [the animal before the Salât (prayer)] but I have a young she-goat which is better than an older sheep.” The Prophet ﷺ said to him, “Slaughter it. But a similar sacrifice will not be sufficient for anybody else after you.”

(18) CHAPTER. The mark of the Musâllâ.

977. Narrated ‘Abdul Raḥmān bin ‘Abîs: Ibn ‘Abbas ﷺ was asked whether he had joined the Prophet ﷺ in the ‘Eid prayer. He said, “Yes. And I could not have joined him had I not been young.” (The Prophet ﷺ}
came out) till he reached the mark which was near the house of Kathir bin As-Salt, offered the Salât (prayer), delivered the Khutba (religious talk) and then went towards the women. Bilāl was accompanying him. He preached them, advised them, and ordered them to give alms. I saw the women putting their ornaments with their outstretched hands into Bilāl’s garment. Then the Prophet along with Bilāl returned home.

(19) CHAPTER. The preaching to the women by the Imam on the ‘Eid day.

978. Narrated Ibn Juraij: ‘Atā’ told me that he had heard Jābir bin ‘Abdullāh saying, “The Prophet stood up to offer the Salât (prayer) of ‘Eid-al-Fīr. He first offered the Salât (prayer) and then delivered the Khutba (religious talk). After finishing it he got down (from the pulpit) and went towards the women and advised them while he was leaning on Bilāl’s hand. Bilāl was spreading out his garment while the women were putting their alms.” I asked ‘Atā’ whether it was the Zakāt of the day of Fīr. He said, “No, it was just alms given at that time. Some lady put her finger ring and the others would do the same.” I said, (to ‘Atā’), “Do you think that it is incumbent upon the Imam to give advice to the women (on ‘Eid day)?” He said, “No doubt, it is incumbent upon the Imam to do so and why should they not do so?”

979. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbās: “I attended with the Prophet , Abū Bakr, ‘Umar and ‘Uthman the ‘Eid-al-
Fitr prayers. They used to offer the Salāt (prayer) before the Khutba and then deliver the Khutba afterwards. Once the Prophet ﷺ came out (for the ‘Eid prayer) as if I were just observing him waving to the people to sit down. He, then accompanied by Bilal, came crossing the rows till he reached the women. He recited the following Verse: “O Prophet! When believing women come to you to give the Bai’ah (pledge) to you…” (to the end of the Verse) (V.60:12).” After finishing the recitation he ﷺ said, “O ladies! Are you fulfilling your covenant?” None except one woman said, “Yes.” Hasan did not know who that woman was. The Prophet ﷺ said, “Then give alms.” Bilal spread his garment and said, “Keep on giving alms. Let my father and mother sacrifice their lives for you (ladies).” So the ladies kept on putting their Fatkh (big rings) and other kinds of rings in Bilal’s garment.” ‘Abdur-Razzāq said, “Fatkh is a big ring which was used to be worn in the (Pre-Islamic) Period of Ignorance.

(20) CHAPTER. If a woman has no veil to use for ‘Eid.

980. Narrated Ayyūb: Hafsah bint Sirin said, “On ‘Eids we used to forbid our girls to go out for Salat-ul-‘Eid (‘Eid prayer). A lady came and stayed at the palace of Banu Khalaf and I went to her. She said, “The husband of my sister took part in twelve holy battles along with the Prophet ﷺ and my sister was with her husband in six of them. My sister said that they used to nurse the sick and treat the wounded. Once she asked: O Allah’s Messenger! If a woman has no veil, is there any harm if she does not come out (on ‘Eid day)? The Prophet ﷺ said, ‘Her companion should let her share her veil with her, and the
women should participate in the good deeds and in the religious gatherings of the believers.’”

Hafsa added, “When Umm ‘Atiyaa came, I went to her and asked her, ‘Did you hear anything about such and such a thing?’ Umm ‘Atiyaa said, ‘Yes, let my father be sacrificed for the Prophet ﷺ. (And whenever she mentioned the name of the Prophet ﷺ she always used to say: Let my father be sacrificed for him). He said, ‘Virgin mature girls staying often screened (or said, ‘Mature girls and virgins staying often screened – Ayyub is not sure as to which was the word used) and menstruating women should come out (on the ‘Eid day). But the menstruating women should keep away from the Masjīd. And all the women should participate in the good deeds and in the religious gatherings of the believers.’” Hafsa said, “On that I said to Umm Aīyya, ‘Also those who are menstruating?’” Umm ‘Aīyya replied, “Yes. Do they not present themselves at ‘Arafat and elsewhere?”.

(21) CHAPTER. Menstruating women should keep away from the Masjīd.

981. Narrated Umm ‘Atiyaa
We were ordered to go out (for ‘Eid) and also to take along with us the menstruating women, mature girls and virgins staying in seclusion. (Ibn ‘Aūn said, “Or mature virgins staying in seclusion”). The menstruating women could present themselves at the religious gathering and invocation of Muslims but should keep away from their Masjīd.
13 - THE BOOK OF THE TWO 'EID (FESTIVALS)

(22) CHAPTER. An-Nahr(1) and Adh-Dhabh(2) (to slaughter animals) (as offerings) at the Musallâ (praying place) on the day of Nahr.

982. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar: The Prophet used to Nahr or Dhâb (slaughter sacrifices) at the Musallâ (on ‘Eid-al-Adhâ).

(23) CHAPTER. The talk of the Imâm and if the Imâm is asked about something while he is delivering the Khutba (religious talk).

983. Narrated Al-Barâ’ bin ‘Azib: On the day of Nahr Allâh’s Messenger delivered the Khutba (religious talk) after the Salât (‘Eid prayer) and said, “Whoever offered Salât (prayer) like us and slaughtered the sacrifice like we did, then he acted according to our Nusuk (followed the right way). And whoever slaughtered the sacrifice before the Salât (prayer), then that was just mutton (i.e. not done his sacrifice).” Abu Burda bin Niyâr stood up and said, “O Allâh’s Messenger! By Allâh, I slaughtered my sacrifice before I came out for As-Salât (‘Eid prayer) and thought that today was the day of eating and drinking (non-alcoholic drinks) and so I made haste (in slaughtering) and ate and also fed my family and neighbours.” Allâh’s Messenger said, “That was just mutton (not a sacrifice).”

---

(1) An-Nahr: Literally means slaughtering of the camels only, and it is done by cutting the carotid arteries at the root of camel’s neck.

(2) Adh-Dhabh: Means slaughtering of animals other than camels, e.g., sheep, cow, goat etc., and is done by cutting the carotid and jugular blood vessels at the upper part of the neck and not at its root.
Then Abū Burda said: “I have a young she-goat and no doubt, it is better than two sheep. Will that be sufficient as a sacrifice for me?” The Prophet ﷺ replied, “Yes. But it will not be sufficient for anyone else (as a sacrifice) after you.”

984. Narrated Anas bin Malik: Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ offered the Salāt (prayer) on the day of Nahr and then delivered the Khutbah (religious talk) and ordered that whoever had slaughtered his sacrifice before the Salāt (prayer) should repeat it (i.e., should slaughter another sacrifice). Then a person from the Anṣār stood up and said, “O Allāh’s Messenger! Because of my neighbours (he described them as being very needy or poor) I slaughtered (the sacrifice) before the Salāt (prayer). I have a young she-goat which, in my opinion, is better than two sheep.” The Prophet ﷺ gave him the permission for slaughtering it as a sacrifice.

985. Narrated Jundab: On the day of Nahr the Prophet ﷺ offered the Salāt (prayer) and delivered the Khutbah (religious talk) and then slaughtered the sacrifice and said, “Anybody who slaughtered (his sacrifice) before the Salāt (prayer) should slaughter another animal in lieu of it, and the one who has not yet slaughtered should slaughter the sacrifice mentioning Allāh’s Name on it.”

(24) CHAPTER. Whoever returned (after offering the ‘Eid prayer) on the day of ‘Eid through a way different from that by which he went.

986. Narrated Jābir (bin ‘Abdullāh): On the day of ‘Eid the Prophet ﷺ used to return (after offering the ‘Eid prayer) through a way different from that by which he went.
13 — THE BOOK OF THE TWO ‘EID (FESTIVALS)

(25) CHAPTER. Whoever missed the Salat-al-‘Eid (‘Eid prayer) should offer two Rak‘a prayer.

And similarly the women and those who are at home and in the villages should do so, as is confirmed by the statement of the Prophet ﷺ: “O Muslims, this is our ‘Eid.” At Az-Zāwiya, Anas bin Malik ordered his slave Ibn Abī Ghaniyā to collect his (Anas’s) family and offspring. Anas led a Salat (prayer) similar to that offered by the people of any town and recited Takbir similar to theirs. ‘Ikrima said, “The villagers should gather on the day of ‘Eid and offer two Rak‘a as the Imam does.” ‘Atā’ said, “Whoever misses the Salat-al-‘Eid (‘Eid prayer) should offer two Rak‘a prayer.”

987. Narrated ‘Urwa on the authority of ‘Aishah رضي الله عنها: On the days of Minā, (11th, 12th, and 13th of Dhuль-Hijjah) Abū Bakr رضي الله عنه came to her while two young girls were beating the tambourine and the Prophet ﷺ was lying covered with his clothes. Abū Bakr رضي الله عنه scolded them and the Prophet ﷺ uncovered his face and said to Abū Bakr, “Leave them, for these days are the days of ‘Eid and the days of Minā.”

988. ‘Āishah رضي الله عنها further said, “Once, the Prophet ﷺ was screening me and
I was watching the display of Ethiopians in the mosque and ('Umar) scolded them. The Prophet said, 'Leave them. O Banî Arfida! (Carry on), you are safe (protected).'

(26) CHAPTER. The offering of Salât (prayer) before or after the 'Eid prayer.

Ibn 'Abbâs disliked to offer Salât (prayer) before 'Eid prayer.

989. Narrated Ibn 'Abbâs: The Prophet went out and offered a two Rakâ Salât (prayer) (i.e., 'Eid prayer) on the day of Fîr and did not offer any other Salât (prayer) before or after it and at that time Bilâl was accompanying him.
(1) CHAPTER. What is said regarding the Witr prayer.

990. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar: Once a man asked Allâh’s Messenger about the Salât-ul-Lail (night prayer). Allâh’s Messenger replied, “The Salât-ul-Lail (night Tahajjud prayer) is offered as two Rak’â followed by two Rak’â (and so on) and if anyone is afraid of the approaching dawn Fajr prayer he should offer one Rak’a and this will be a Witr for all the Rak’â which he has offered before.”

[See the Book of Salât-ul-Tahajjud, No.19]

991. Nâfi’ told that ‘Abdullâh bin ‘Umar used to say Taslim between (the first) two Rak’â and (the third) odd one in the Witr prayer, and he used to attend to some of his needs.

992. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbâs: Once I passed the night in the house of Maimûna (his aunt). I lay on the cushion transversally in its breadth-wise direction while Allâh’s Messenger and his wife lay in its length-wise direction. The Prophet slept till midnight or nearly so and woke up rubbing his face and recited ten Verses from Surah Al-’Imrân. Allâh’s Messenger went towards a leather-skin and performed Wudû (ablution) in the most perfect way and then stood for the Salât (prayer). I did the same and stood beside him (on his left side). The Prophet put his right hand on my head, twisted my ear (pulled me, and made me to stand by his right side), and then offered two rak’ahs.

(1) (Chap.1): Witr prayer: A prayer of an odd number of Rak’â offered after ‘Ishâ prayer or after the Tahajjud (night) prayer, and it is to be offered before the Fajr prayer.
Rakʿā five times and then ended his Śalāt with Witr. He laid down till the Muʿadh-dhin (call-maker) came then he stood up and offered two Rakʿā (Sunna of Fajr prayer) and then went out and offered the Fajr prayer. (See Ḥadīth No. 183, Vol. I).

993. Narrated ʿAbdullāh bin ʿUmar رضي الله عنهما: The Prophet ﷺ said, “Night prayer is offered as two Rakʿā followed by two Rakʿā and so on, and if you want to finish it, offer only one Rakʿāt which will be Witr for all the previous Rakʿā.” Al-Qāsim said, “Since we attained the age of puberty we have seen some people offering a three Rakʿā prayer as Witr and all that is permissible. I hope there will be no harm in it.”

994. Narrated ʿAishah رضي الله عنها: Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ used to offer eleven Rakʿā at night and that was his night prayer and each of his prostrations lasted for a period enough for one of you to recite fifty Verses before Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ raised his head. He also used to offer two Rakʿā (Sunna) prayer before the (compulsory) Śalāt-ul-Fajr (Fajr prayer) and then lie down on his right side till the Muʿadh-dhin (call-maker) came to him for the Śalāt (prayer).
(2) CHAPTER. The timing of the ُسَلَةُ-عِل-\textit{Witr} (Witr prayer).

Abû Hurairah said, “The Prophet told me to offer Witr prayer before sleeping.”

995. Narrated Anas bin Sirîn: I asked Ibn ‘Umar: “What is your opinion about the two Rak’ā before the Fajr prayer, as to prolonging the recitation in them?” He said, “The Prophet used to offer at night two Rak’ā followed by two and so on, and end the Salāt (prayer) by one Rak’ā Witr. He used to offer two Rak’ā before the Fajr prayer immediately after the \textit{Adhān}.” (Hammâd, the subnarrator said, “That meant (that he offered Salāt) quickly.”)

996. Narrated ʿĀishah: Allâh’s Messenger offered Witr prayer at different nights at various hours extending (from the ʿIshâ’ prayer up to the last hour of the night.

(3) CHAPTER. The Prophet used to wake his family up for the Witr prayer.

997. Narrated ʿĀishah: The Prophet used to offer his night prayer while I was sleeping across in his bed. Whenever he intended to offer the Witr prayer, he used to wake me up and I would offer the Witr prayer too.

(4) CHAPTER. One should make Witr as the last Salāt (prayer) (at night).
14 – THE BOOK OF WITR

998. Narrated ‘Abdullãh (bin ‘Umar) رضي الله عنهما : The Prophet ﷺ said, “Make Witr as your last Salãt (prayer) at night.”

999. Narrated Sa‘îd bin Yasãr: I was going to Makkah in the company of ‘Abdullãh bin ‘Umar رضي الله عنهما and when I apprehended the approaching dawn, I dismounted and offered the Witr prayer and then joined him. ‘Abdullãh bin ‘Umar said, “Where have you been?” I replied, “I apprehended the approaching dawn so I dismounted and offered Witr prayer.” ‘Abdullãh said, “Isn’t there in the Messenger ﷺ of Allah a good example for you to follow?” I replied, “Yes, by Allah.” He said, “Allah’s Messenger ﷺ used to offer Salãt of Witr on the back of the camel (while on a journey).”

(5) CHAPTER. To offer the Witr prayer while riding on an animal.

1000. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar رضي الله عنهما: The Prophet ﷺ used to offer Salãt (Nawafil prayers) on his Rãhila (mount) facing its direction by signals, but not the compulsory Salãt (prayer). He also used to offer the Witr prayer on his Rãhila (mount).
(7) CHAPTER. To recite Qunūt (invocation) before and after bowing.

1001. Narrated Muḥammad bin Sirīn: Anas was asked, “Did the Prophet recite Qunūt in the Fajr prayer?” Anas replied in the affirmative. He was further asked, “Did he recite Qunūt before bowing?” Anas replied, “He recited Qunūt after bowing for some time (for one month).”

1002. Narrated ʿĀṣim: I asked Anas bin Mālik about the Qunūt. Anas replied, “Definitely it was (recited)”. I asked, “Before bowing or after it?” Anas replied, “Before bowing.” I added, “So-and-so has told me that you had informed him that it had been after bowing.” Anas said, “He told an untruth (i.e. “was mistaken”, according to the Hijāzī dialect).” Allah’s Messenger recited Qunūt after bowing for a period of one month. Anas added, “The Prophet sent about seventy men (who knew the Qurʾān by heart) towards the Mushrikūn (of Najd) who were less than they in number and there was a peace treaty between them and Allah’s Messenger (but the Mushrikūn broke the treaty and killed the seventy men). So Allah’s Messenger recited Qunūt for a period of one month invoking Allah to punish them.”

(1) Mushrikūn: Polytheists, pagans, idolaters and disbelievers in the Oneness of Allah and in His Messenger Muḥammad (ṣ).
1003. Narrated Anas bin Malik رضي الله عنه: The Prophet ﷺ recited Qunüt for one month (in the Fajr prayer) invoking Allah to punish the tribes of Ri‘l and Dhakwân.

1004. Narrated Anas رضي الله عنه: The Qunüt used to be recited in Maghrib and the Fajr prayers.
15 – THE BOOK OF AL-ISTISQA’

(i.e. to offer a two Rak‘a prayer and then to invoke Allâh for rain at the time of drought)

(1) CHAPTER. Al-Istisqa’ and the going out of the Prophet ﷺ to offer Istisqa’ prayer. (1)

1005. Narrated ‘Abbâd bin Tamîm’s uncle: The Prophet ﷺ went out to offer the Istisqa’ prayer and turned (and put on) his cloak inside out.

(2) CHAPTER. Invocation of the Prophet ﷺ: “O Allâh! Send (drought-famine) years on them (pagans of Makkah) like the (drought-famine) years of (Prophet) Yusuf (Joseph).”

1006. Narrated Abû Hurairah: Whenever the Prophet ﷺ lifted his head from the bowing in the last Rak‘a he used to say:


“O Allâh! Be hard on the tribes of Muḍâr and send (famine) years on them like the (famine) years of (Prophet) Yusuf (Joseph).”

The Prophet ﷺ further said, “Allâh forgave the tribes of Ghifâr and saved the

(1) (Chap.1) Istisqa’ prayer: is a two Rak‘a prayer similar to that of ‘Eid prayer with seven Takbirât in the first Rak‘a and five Takbirât in the second Rak‘a excluding the Takbir of the opening of the prayer and the Takbir of the Qiyâm (standing) for the second Rak‘a.
tribe of Aslam.”

Abū Az-Zinād (a subnarrator) said, “The Qunūt used to be recited by the Prophet in the Fajr prayer.”

1007. Narrated Masrūq: We were with ‘Abdullāh (bin Mas‘ūd) and he said, “When the Prophet saw the refusal of the people to accept Islam he said, “O Allāh! Send (on them) seven (famine years) like the seven (years of famine) of (Prophet) Yūsuf (Joseph).” So, drought overtook them for one year and destroyed every kind of life to such an extent that the people started eating hides, carcasses and rotten dead animals. Whenever one of them looked towards the sky, he would (imagine himself to) see smoke because of hunger. So, Abū Suffān went to the Prophet and said, “O Muḥammad! You order people to obey Allāh and to keep good relations with kith and kin. No doubt the people of your tribe are dying, so please invoke Allāh for them.” So Allāh revealed:

“Then wait you for the Day when the sky will bring forth a visible smoke up to... Verily you will revert (to disbelief). On the Day when We shall seize you with the greatest seizure (punishment)” (V.44:10-16)

“Al-Batṣha (i.e. grasp) happened in the battle of Badr and no doubt Ad-Dukhān (smoke), Al-Batṣha, Al-Lizām, and the Verse of Sūrah Ar-Rām have all passed.”
1008. Narrated ‘Abdullâh bin Dînâr: My father said, “I heard Ibn ‘Umar reciting the poetic verses of Abû Ţalîb:

And a white (person — i.e., the Prophet) who is requested to invoke Allâh for rain and who takes care of the orphans and is the guardian of widows.”

1009. Sâlim’s father (Ibn ‘Umar) said, “The following poetic verse occurred to my mind while I was looking at the face of the Prophet while he was invoking Allâh for rain. He did not get down till the rain water flowed profusely from every roof-gutter:

‘And a white (person — i.e., the Prophet) who is requested to invoke Allâh for rain and who takes care of the orphans and is the guardian of widows…’

And these were the words of Abû Ţalîb.”

1010. Narrated Anas: Whenever drought threatened them, ‘Umar bin Al-Khaṭṭâb used to ask Al-‘Abbâs bin ‘Abdul Muṭṭalib to invoke Allâh for rain. He used to say, “O Allâh! We used to ask our Prophet to invoke You for rain, and You would bless us with rain, and now we ask his uncle to invoke You for rain. O Allâh! Bless us with rain.”(1) And so it would rain.

(1) (H.1010) [It is of great importance to notice that it is permissible for one to request a living religious person to invoke Allâh on his behalf; but if you ask Allâh through a dead or an absent (person etc.) then it is not allowed. But it is absolutely forbidden to ask or request the dead for anything, it is regarded as Shirk]. See glossary for the word Shirk (polytheism).”
(4) CHAPTER. Turning one's cloak inside out while offering the Istisqa' prayer.

1011. Narrated 'Abdullāh bin Zaid: The Prophet offered the Istisqa' prayer and turned his cloak inside out.

1012. Narrated 'Abdullāh bin Zaid: The Prophet went towards the Musallā and invoked Allāh for rain. He faced the Qiblah and wore his cloak inside out, and offered two Rak'a prayers.

(5) CHAPTER. The taking of revenge by Allāh over His creatures by drought if they perform or do or commit His forbidden illegal things.

(6) CHAPTER. Istisqa' (i.e. to offer a two Rak'a Ṣalāt (prayer) and then invoke Allāh for rain) in the main mosque (of the town).
Narrated Sharik bin ‘Abdullah bin Abi Namir: I heard Anas bin Malik saying, “On a Friday, a person entered the main mosque through the gate facing the pulpit while Allah’s Messenger (ﷺ) was delivering the Khutba (religious talk). The man stood in front of Allah’s Messenger (ﷺ) and said, ‘O Allah’s Messenger! The livestock are dying and the roads are cut off; so please invoke Allah for rain.’” Anas added, “Allah’s Messenger (ﷺ) raised both his hands and said, ‘O Allah! Bless us with rain! O Allah! Bless us with rain! O Allah! Bless us with rain!’” Anas added, “By Allah, we could not see any trace of cloud in the sky and there was no building or a house between us and (the mountain of) Sila’.” Anas added, “A heavy cloud like a shield appeared from behind it (i.e. Sila’ mountain). When it came in the middle of the sky, it spread and then it started raining.” Anas further said, “By Allah! We could not see the sun for a week. Next Friday a person entered through the same gate and at that time Allah’s Messenger (ﷺ) was delivering the Friday’s Khutba. The man stood in front of him and said, ‘O Allah’s Messenger! The livestock are dying and the roads are cut off; please invoke Allah to withhold rain.’” Anas added, “Allah’s Messenger (ﷺ) raised both his hands and said, ‘O Allah! Round about us and not on us. O Allah! On the plateaus, on the mountains, on the hills, in the valleys and on the places where trees grow.’ So the rain stopped and we came out walking in the sun.” Sharik asked Anas whether it was the same person who had asked for the rain (the last Friday). Anas replied that he did not know.
1014. Narrated Sharik: Anas bin Malik said, “A person entered the mosque on a Friday through the gate facing the Daril-Qatia’ and Allah’s Messenger was standing, delivering the Khutba (religious talk). The man stood in front of Allah’s Messenger and said, ‘O Allah’s Messenger! livestock are dying and the roads are cut off; please invoke Allah for rain.’ So, Allah’s Messenger raised both his hands and said, ‘O Allah! Bless us with rain. O Allah! Bless us with rain. O Allah! Bless us with rain!’ Anas added, “By Allah, there were no clouds in the sky and there was no house or building between us and the mountain of Sila’. Then a big cloud, like a shield, appeared from behind it (i.e. Sila’ mountain) and when it came in the middle of the sky, it spread and then it started raining. By Allah! We could not see the sun for a week. The next Friday, a person entered through the same gate and Allah’s Messenger was delivering the Friday Khutba and the man stood in front of him and said, ‘O Allah’s Messenger! livestock are dying and the roads are cut off; please invoke Allah to withhold rain.’” Anas added, “Allah’s Messenger raised both his hands and said, ‘O Allah! Round about us and not on us. O Allah!’ On the plateaus, on the mountains, on the hills, in the valleys and on the places where trees grow.’” Anas added, “The rain stopped and we came out, walking in the sun.” Sharik asked Anas whether it was the same person who had asked for rain the
previous Friday. Anas replied that he did not know.

(8) CHAPTER. *Istisqa’* (to invoke Allâh for the rain) on the pulpit.

1015. Narrated Qatâda: Anas said, “While Allâh’s Messenger was delivering the Friday *Khutba* (religious talk) a man came and said, ‘O Allâh’s Messenger! Drought (no rain); please invoke Allâh to bless us with rain.’ So, he invoked Allâh for it, and it rained so much that we could hardly reach our homes and it continued raining till the next Friday.” Anas further said, “Then the same or some other person stood up and said, ‘O Allâh’s Messenger! Invoke Allâh to withhold the rain.’ On that, Allâh’s Messenger said, ‘O Allâh! Round about us and not on us.’” Anas added, “I saw the clouds dispersing right and left and it continued to rain but not over Al-Madîna.”

(9) CHAPTER. Whoever thought it sufficient to invoke Allâh for rain in the *Salât-ul-Jumu’a* (*Jumu’ah* prayer).

1016. Narrated Anas: A man came to the Prophet and said, “Livestock are destroyed and the roads are cut off.” So, Allâh’s Messenger invoked Allâh for rain and it rained from that Friday till the next
Friday. The same person came again and said, “Houses have collapsed, roads are cut off, and the livestock are destroyed. Please invoke Allah to withhold the rain.” Allah’s Messenger ﷺ stood up and said, “O Allah! (Let it rain) on the plateaus, on the hills, in the valleys and over the places where trees grow”. So the clouds cleared away from Al-Madina just as the taking off a garment from one’s body.

10(1) CHAPTER. Invocation (for stoppage of rain) if the roads are cut off because of excessive rain.

1017. Narrated Anas bin Malk Z:\nA man came to Allah’s Messenger ﷺ and said, “O Allah’s Messenger! Livestock are destroyed and the roads are cut off. So please invoke Allah (for rain).” So, Allah’s Messenger ﷺ invoked (Allah for rain) and it rained from that Friday till the next Friday. Then a man came to Allah’s Messenger ﷺ and said, “O Allah’s Messenger! Houses have collapsed, roads are cut off and the livestock are destroyed.” So Allah’s Messenger ﷺ invoked Allah saying: “O Allah! Let it rain on the tops of mountains, on the plateaus, in the valleys and over the places where trees grow.” So, the clouds cleared away from Al-Madina just as the taking off a garment from one’s body.

11(1) CHAPTER. The saying that “The Prophet ﷺ did not turn his cloak inside out during the invocation for rain on Friday.”
1018. Narrated Anas bin Malik: A man complained to the Prophet about the destruction of livestock and property and the hunger of the offspring. So, he invoked (Allah) for rain. The narrator (Anas) did not mention that the Prophet had worn his cloak inside out or faced the Qiblah.

(12) CHAPTER. If the people request the Imam to invoke Allah for rain, the Imam should not refuse the request.

1019. Narrated Anas bin Malik: A man came to Allah's Messenger and said, "O Allah's Messenger! Livestock are destroyed and the roads are cut off; so please invoke Allah (for rain)." So, Allah's Messenger invoked Allah for rain and it rained from that Friday till the next Friday. Then a man came to the Prophet and said, "O Allah's Messenger! The houses have collapsed, roads are cut off and the livestock are destroyed." So, Allah's Messenger said, "O Allah! (Let it rain) on the tops of the mountains, on the plateaus, in the valleys and over the places where trees grow." So, the clouds cleared away from Al-Madina just as the taking off a garment from one's body.

(13) CHAPTER. If Al-Mushrikin [polytheists, pagans, idolaters, and disbelievers in the Oneness of Allah and in His Messenger Muhammad] intercede the Muslims to invoke Allah for rain during drought.

"لَيْسَ مَنْ يَرْدُّهُمِ"
1020. Narrated Masruq: One day I went to Ibn Mas'ud who said, “When Quraish delayed in embracing Islam, the Prophet invoked Allah to curse them, so they were afflicted with a drought (famine) year because of which many of them died and they ate the carcasses and bones. Abu Sufyan came to the Prophet and said, ‘O Muhammad! You came to order people to keep good relation with kith and kin and your nation is being destroyed, so invoke Allah. The Prophet recited the Holy Verses of Sura Ad-Dukhan:

‘Then wait you for the Day when the sky will bring forth a visible smoke’ (V.44:10).

[When the famine was taken off,] the people renegaded once again as disbelievers. The Statement of Allah (in Sura Ad-Dukhan) refers to that:

‘On the Day when We shall seize you with the greatest seizure.’ (V.44:16)

And that was what happened on the day of the battle of Badr.” Asbath added on the authority of Mansur, “Allah’s Messenger invoked Allah for rain for them and it rained heavily for seven days. The people complained of the excessive rain. The Prophet said, ‘O Allah! (Let it rain) around us and not on us.’ So, the clouds dispersed from over his head and it rained over the surroundings (i.e. away from their city).”

(14) CHAPTER. To say, “Around us and not on us,” when it rains excessively.

1021. Narrated Anas: Allah’s Messenger was delivering the Khutba (religious talk) on a Friday when the people stood up, shouted and said, “O Allah’s Messenger! There is no rain (drought), the trees have dried and the livestock are
destroyed; please invoke Allāh for rain.” So Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ said twice, “O Allāh! Bless us with rain.” By Allāh, there was no trace of cloud in the sky and suddenly the sky became overcast with clouds and it started raining. The Prophet ﷺ came down the pulpit and offered the prayer. When he came back from the prayer (to his house) it was raining and it rained continuously till the next Friday. When the Prophet ﷺ started delivering the Friday Khutba, the people started shouting and said to him, “The houses have collapsed and the roads are cut off; so please invoke Allāh to withhold the rain.” So, the Prophet ﷺ smiled and said, “O Allāh! Round about us and not on us.”

The sky became clear over Al-Madina; but it kept on raining over the outskirts (of Al-Madina) and not a single drop of rain fell over Al-Madina. I looked towards the sky which was as bright and clear as a crown.

(15) CHAPTER. To invoke Allāh for rain while standing.

1022. Narrated ‘Abdullāh bin Yazīd Al Anṣārī that he went out with Al-Barā’ bin ‘Azīb, and Zaid bin Arqam and invoked for rain. He (‘Abdullāh bin Yazīd) stood up but not on a pulpit and invoked Allāh for rain and then offered two Rak’a prayers with loud recitation without pronouncing Adhān or Iqāma. Abū Ishaq said that ‘Abdullāh bin Yazīd had seen the Prophet ﷺ (doing the same).
1023.Narrated ‘Abbâd bin Tamîm that his uncle (who was one of the Companions of the Prophet) had told him, “The Prophet went out with the people to invoke Allâh for rain for them. He stood up and invoked Allâh for rain, then faced the Qiblah and turned his cloak (inside out) and it rained.”

(16) CHAPTER. To recite aloud while offering the prayer of Istisqâ.’

1024. Narrated ‘Abbâd bin Tamîm that his uncle said, “The Prophet went out to invoke Allâh for rain. He faced the Qiblah invoking Allâh. He turned his cloak (inside out) and then offered a two Rak’a prayer with loud recitation.”

(17) CHAPTER. How the Prophet turned his back towards the people [while offering the Salât (prayer) for rain].

1025. Narrated ‘Abbâd bin Tamîm that his uncle said, “I saw the Prophet on the day when he went out to offer the Istisqâ’ prayer. He turned his back towards the people and faced the Qiblah and invoked Allâh for rain. Then he turned his cloak inside out and led us a two Rak’a prayer with loud recitation.”
1026. Narrated ‘Abbāb bin Tamīm that his uncle said, “The Prophet invoked Allāh for rain and offered a two Rak‘a Salāt (prayer) and he turned his cloak inside out.”

1027. Narrated ‘Abbāb bin Tamīm that his uncle said, “The Prophet went towards the Muṣallā to offer the Iṣṭisqā’ prayer, he faced the Qiblā and offered a two Rak‘a Salāt (prayer) and turned his cloak inside out.” Narrated Abū Bakr, “The Prophet put the right side of his cloak on his left side.”

1028. Narrated ‘Abdullāh bin Zaid Al-Anṣārī: The Prophet went towards the Muṣallā to offer the Iṣṭisqā’ prayer and when he invoked Allāh or intended to invoke Allāh he faced the Qiblā and turned his cloak inside out.
(21) CHAPTER. While offering the Istisqa’ prayer, the people should raise their hands (for invocation) along with the Imam.

1029. Narrated Anas bin Malik: A bedouin came to Allah’s Messenger on a Friday and said, “O Allah’s Messenger! The livestock, the offspring, and the people have perished.” So, Allah’s Messenger raised both his hands invoking Allah (for rain) and the people too raised their hands with Allah’s Messenger invoking Allah (for rain). We had not left the mosque when it started raining. It rained till the next Friday when the same man came to Allah’s Messenger and said, “O Allah’s Messenger! The travellers are compelled to postpone their journeys (because of excessive rain) and the roads are overflooded.”

1030. The narrator Anas added that the Prophet raised his hands (during the invocation) to such an extent that the whiteness of his armpits was visible.

(22) CHAPTER. The raising of both hands by the Imam during Istisqa’ while invoking Allah for rain.

1031. Narrated Anas bin Malik: The Prophet never raised his hands for any invocation except for that of Istisqa’; and he
used to raise them so much that the whiteness of his armpits became visible. (Note: It may be that Anas did not see the Prophet raising his hands, but it is narrated that the Prophet used to raise his hands for invocations other than *Istisqā*.


(23) CHAPTER. What should be said (or what to say) if it rains.

1032. Narrated ‘Āishah: Whenever Allâh’s Messenger saw the rain, he used to say, “O Allâh! Let it be a fruitful rain.”

(24) CHAPTER. One who stood in the rain till the water started trickling down his beard.

1033. Narrated Anas bin Mālik: In the lifetime of Allâh’s Messenger the people were afflicted with a drought (famine) year. While the Prophet was delivering the *Khutba* (religious talk) on the pulpit on a Friday, a bedouin stood up and said, “O Allâh’s Messenger! The livestock are dying and the families (offspring) are hungry; please invoke Allâh to bless us with rain.” Allâh’s Messenger raised both his hands towards the sky and at that time there was not
a trace of cloud in the sky. Then the clouds started gathering like mountains. Before he got down from the pulpit, I saw rain-water trickling down his beard. It rained that day, the next day, the third day, the fourth day and till the next Friday, when the same bedouin or some other person stood up (during the Friday Khutba) and said, “O Allah’s Messenger! The houses have collapsed and the livestock are drowned. Please invoke Allah for us.” So, Allah’s Messenger raised both his hands and said, “O Allah! Around us and not on us.” Whichever side the Prophet directed his hand, the clouds dispersed from there till a hole (in the clouds) was formed over Al-Madina. The valley of Qanat remained flowing (with water) for one month and none came from outside who didn’t talk about the abundant rain.

(25) CHAPTER. If the wind blows (what should one do or say?)

1034. Narrated Anas: Whenever a strong wind blew, anxiety appeared on the face of the Prophet (fearing that, that wind might be a sign of Allah’s Wrath).
(26) CHAPTER. The statement of the Prophet ﷺ: “I was granted victory with As-Saba [Easterly wind (which frightened my enemies)].”

1035. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbās ﷺ:

The Prophet ﷺ said, “I was granted victory with As-Saba and the nation of ‘Ād was destroyed by Ad-Dabūr (westerly wind).”

(27) CHAPTER. What is said about earthquakes and (other) signs (of the approach of the Day of Judgement).

1036. Narrated Abū Hurairah ﷺ:

The Prophet ﷺ said, “The Hour (Last Day) will not be established until (religious) knowledge will be taken away (by the death of religious learned men), earthquakes will be very frequent, time will pass quickly, Al-Fitan (trials and afflictions) will appear, murders will increase and money will overflow amongst you.” (See Hadith No. 80, 81 and 85 Vol I).

1037. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar ﷺ:

(The Prophet ﷺ) said, “O Allāh! Bless our Sham and our Yemen.” People said, “Our Najd as well.” The Prophet ﷺ again said, “O Allāh! Bless our Sham and Yemen.” They said again, “Our Najd as well.” On that the Prophet ﷺ said, “There will appear earthquakes and Al-Fitan (trials and afflictions), and from there [Najd (East)] will come out the side of the head of Satan.” (See H. No. 7094, Vol. 9).
(28) CHAPTER. The Statement of Allâh (عَلَيْهِ الصَّلاةُ والِبُكْرَةُ) said: "And instead (of thanking Allâh) for the provision He gives you, you deny (Him by disbelief)." (V.56:82)

Ibn 'Abbas رضي الله عنهم said that it means that you should be thankful to Allâh (but instead of being grateful you are ungrateful to Allâh).

1038. Narrated Zaid bin Khalid Al-Juhani رضي الله عنهم: Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ led the morning Salât in Al-Hudaibiya and it had rained the previous night. When the Prophet ﷺ had finished the Salât (prayer) he faced the people and said, “Do you know what your Lord has said?” They replied, “Allah and His Messenger know better.” (The Prophet ﷺ said), “Allah said, ‘In this morning some of Ibâdi (My slaves or worshippers) remained as true believers and some became disbelievers; he who said that it had rained with the Blessing and Mercy of Allâh is the one who believes in Me and does not believe in the star, but he who said it had rained because of such and such (star) is a disbeliever in Me and is a believer in the star.’”

(29) CHAPTER. Except Allâh (عَلَيْهِ الصَّلاةُ) nobody knows when it will rain.

And Abû Hurairah narrated that the Prophet ﷺ said, “There are five things which nobody knows except Allâh.”
1039. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ said, “Keys of Al-Ghaib (the Unseen) are five which nobody knows but Allah... nobody knows what will happen tomorrow; nobody knows what is in the womb; nobody knows what he will gain tomorrow; nobody knows at what place he will die; and nobody knows when it will rain.”

(1) (H.1039) Al-Ghaib: (literally means a thing not seen but) this word includes vast meanings: Belief in Allāh, angels, Holy Books, Allāh’s Messengers, Day of Resurrection and Al-Qadar (Divine Preordainments), it also includes what Allāh and His Messenger (ﷺ) informed about the knowledge of the matters of the past, present and future things. e.g. news about the creation of the heavens, and earth, botanical and zoological life, the news about the nations of the past, and about Paradise and Hell etc.
1040. Narrated Abū Bakra: We were with Allah's Messenger when the sun eclipsed. Allah's Messenger stood up dragging his cloak till he entered the mosque. He led us in a two-Rak'a prayer till the sun (eclipse) had cleared. Then the Prophet said, "The sun and the moon do not eclipse because of someone's death. So whenever you see these eclipses offer Salāt and invoke (Allah) till the eclipse has cleared."

1041. Narrated Abū Mas'ūd: The Prophet said, "The sun and the moon do not eclipse because of the death of someone from the people but they are two signs amongst the signs of Allah. When you see them stand up and offer the Salāt (prayer)."

1042. Narrated Ibn 'Umar: The Prophet said, "The sun and the moon do not eclipse because of the death or life (i.e. birth) of someone but they are two signs amongst the signs of Allah. When you see them offer the Salāt (prayer)."
1043. Narrated Al-Mughira bin Shu'ba: The sun eclipsed in the lifetime of Allah's Messenger \( \text{رسول الله ﷺ} \) on the day when (his son) Ibrahim died. So, the people said that the sun had eclipsed because of the death of Ibrāhīm. Allah's Messenger \( \text{رسول الله ﷺ} \) said, “The sun and the moon do not eclipse because of the death or life (i.e. birth) of someone. When you see the eclipse, offer \( \\text{زكاة} \) (prayer) and invoke Allāh.”

1044. Narrated 'Aishah: In the lifetime of Allah's Messenger \( \text{رسول الله ﷺ} \), the sun eclipsed, so he led the people in \( \\text{صلاة} \) (prayer), and stood up and performed a long \( \\text{قامة} \), then bowed for a long while. He stood up again and performed a long \( \\text{قامة} \), but this time the period of standing was shorter than the first. He bowed again for a long time but shorter than the first one, then he prostrated and prolonged the prostration (twice). He did the same in the second \( \\text{ركعة} \) as he did in the first and then finished the \( \\text{صلاة} \) (prayer); by then the sun (eclipse) had cleared. Then he delivered a \( \\text{خطب} \) (religious talk) and after praising and glorifying Allāh he said, “The sun and the moon are two signs amongst the signs of
Allāh; they do not eclipse because of the death or the life (i.e. birth) of anyone. So, when you see the eclipse, remember Allāh and say Takbīr, offer Ṣalāt and give Ṣadaqa.”

The Prophet ﷺ then said, “O followers of Muḥammad! By Allāh! There is none who has more Ghaira than Allāh, so He has forbidden that His slaves, male or female commit illegal sexual intercourse. O followers of Muḥammad! By Allāh! If you knew that which I know you would laugh little and weep much.

(3) CHAPTER. Making a loud announcement of As-Ṣalāt (the prayer) in congregation for eclipse.

1045. Narrated ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Amr ﷺ: “When the sun eclipsed in the lifetime of Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ, a loud announcement was made (saying): As-Ṣalātu-Jāmi’a (prayer to be offered in congregation).”

(1) (H.1044) Ghaira: A feeling of fury and anger when one’s honour and prestige is injured or challenged. self respect, honour, jealousy as regards woman etc.
16- THE BOOK OF THE ECLIPSES

(4) CHAPTER. A Ḳhuṭba (religious talk) (is delivered) by the Imam on the eclipse.

‘Āishah and Asmā’ related that the Prophet ☪ delivered a Ḳhuṭba (religious talk) (on such an occasion).

1046. Narrated ‘Āishah, the wife of the Prophet ☪: In the lifetime of the Prophet ☪ the sun eclipsed and he went to the mosque and the people aligned in rows behind him. He said the Takbîr [starting the Salât (prayer)] and prolonged the recitation and then said Takbîr and performed a prolonged bowing; then he (lifted his head and) said, “Sami’ Allahu liman ḥamida (Allâh heard him who sent his praises to Him)”. He then did not prostrate but stood up and recited a prolonged recitation which was shorter than the first recitation. He, again, said Takbîr and then bowed a prolonged bowing but shorter than the first one and then said, “Sami’ Allahu liman ḥamida, Rabbanã walakal-hamd (Allâh heard him who sent his praises to Him).” He then did not prostrate but stood up and recited a prolonged recitation which was shorter than the first recitation. He, again, said Takbîr and then bowed a prolonged bowing but shorter than the first one and then said, “Sami’ Allahu liman ḥamida, Rabbanã walakal-hamd (Allâh heard him who sent his praises to Him).” He then stood up, glorified and praised Allâh as He deserved and then said, “The sun and the moon are two signs from amongst the signs of Allâh. They do not eclipse because of the death or the life (i.e. birth) of someone. When you see them make haste for the Salât.”

Narrated Az-Zuhri: I said to ‘Urwa, “When the sun eclipsed at Al-Madîna your brother (‘Abdullâh bin A-ubair) offered only a two Rak‘a Salât (prayer) like that of the morning (Fajr prayer).” ‘Urwa replied, “Yes, because he missed the legal way of its offering.”
CHAPTER. Should one say: The sun Kasafat or Khasafat? (Two verbs used to mean “eclipse”, the first is often used for the sun and the second for the moon). Allah says: “And the moon *Khasafat* (eclipsed).” (V.75:8)

1047.Narrated ‘A‘ishah (the wife of the Prophet ﷺ): On the day when the sun *Khasafat* (eclipsed) Allah’s Messenger ﷺ prayed; he stood up and said *Takbīr* and recited a prolonged recitation, then he performed a prolonged bowing, then he raised his head and said, “*Sami’ Allahu liman hamida*,” and then remained standing and recited a prolonged recitation which was shorter than the first. Then he performed a prolonged bowing which was shorter than the first. Then he prostrated and prolonged the prostration and he did the same in the second *Rak‘a* as in the first and then finished the *Ṣalāt* (prayer) with *Taslim*. By that time the sun (eclipse) had cleared. He addressed the people and said, as regards solar and lunar eclipses, “The sun and the moon are two signs from amongst the signs of Allah; they do not eclipse *Yakhsifan* because of the death or the life (i.e. birth) of someone. So when you see them make haste for the *Ṣalāt* (prayer).”
(6) CHAPTER. The statement of the Prophet ﷺ: “Allâh frightens Ibadûhû (His devotees or slaves) with Kusûf (eclipse).”

And this has been narrated by Abû Mûsa from the Prophet ﷺ.

1048. Narrated Abû Bakr from Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ: “The sun and the moon are two signs amongst the signs of Allâh and they do not eclipse because of the death of someone but Allâh frightens His slaves or devotees with them.”

(7) CHAPTER. To seek refuge with Allâh from the torment in the grave during eclipse.

1049. Narrated ‘Amra bint ‘Abd-Rahmân: A Jewess came to ask ‘Âishah رضي الله عنها about something. She said to her, “May Allâh give you refuge from the punishment in the grave.” So ‘Âishah رضي الله عنها asked Allâh’s
Messenger ﷺ, “Would the people be punished in their graves?” Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ said seeking refuge with Allâh from the punishment in the grave (and thus replied in the affirmative).

1050. Then one day, Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ rode to go to some place but the sun eclipsed. He returned in the forenoon and passed through the rear of the dwellings (of his wives) and stood for the (eclipse) Salât (prayer), and the people stood behind him. He stood up for a long period and then performed a prolonged bowing. Then he stood straight for a long period which was shorter than that of the first standing, again he performed a prolonged bowing which was shorter than the first bowing. Then he raised his head and prostrated (twice). Then he stood up (for the second Rak’a) for a long while but the standing was shorter than that of the first Rak’a. Then he performed a prolonged bowing which was shorter than the first one.

Then he stood up for a long period but shorter than the first. Then he performed a prolonged bowing but shorter than the first. Then he raised his head and prostrated twice and finished the Salât and [then delivered the Khutba (religious talk) and] said as much as Allâh wished. And then he ordered the people to seek refuge with Allâh from the punishment in the grave. [See Hadîth No. 1055, 1056].

(8) CHAPTER. To prolong the prostrations in the eclipse Salât (prayer).

1051. Narrated ‘Abdullâh bin ‘Amr ﷺ: When the sun eclipsed in the lifetime of
Allah’s Messenger and an announcement
As-Salātu Jāmi’a [that As-Salāt (the prayer) was to be held in congregation]. The Prophet performed two bowings in one Rak’a. Then he stood up and performed two bowings in one Rak’a. Then he sat down and finished the Salāt (prayer); and by then the (eclipse) had cleared. ‘Aishah said, “I had never performed such a long prostration.”

(9) CHAPTER. To offer the eclipse Salāt (prayer) in congregation.

Ibn ‘Abbas also offered the eclipse prayer with the people (in congregation) by the side of the Zamzam well. ‘Ali bin ‘Abdullah bin ‘Abbas also offered that Salāt in congregation and Ibn ‘Umar also offered it (in the same way).

1052. Narrated ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Abbās: The sun eclipsed in the lifetime of the Prophet. Allah’s Messenger offered the eclipse Salāt (prayer) and stood for a long period equal to the period in which one could recite Sūrat Al-Baqarah. Then he bowed for a long time and then stood up for a long period which was shorter than that of the first standing, then bowed again for a long time but for a shorter period than the first; then he prostrated twice and then stood up for a long period which was shorter than that of the first standing; then he bowed for a long time which was shorter than the previous one, and then he raised his head and stood up for a long period which was shorter than the first standing, then he bowed for a long time which was shorter than the first bowing,
and then prostrated (twice) and finished the \textit{Salāt}. By then, the sun \textit{(eclipse)} had cleared. The Prophet \textit{ \textsuperscript{2} } then said, “The sun and the moon are two signs from amongst the signs of Allāh. They eclipse neither because of the death of somebody nor because of his life (i.e. birth). So when you see them, remember Allāh.” The people said, “O Allāh’s Messenger! We saw you taking something from your place and then we saw you retreating.” The Prophet \textit{ \textsuperscript{2} } replied, “I saw Paradise and stretched my hands towards a bunch (of its fruits) and had I taken it, you would have eaten from it as long as the world remains. I also saw the Hell-fire and I had never seen such a horrible sight. I saw that most of its inhabitants were women.” The people asked, “O Allah’s Messenger! Why is it so?” The Prophet \textit{ \textsuperscript{2} } replied, “Because of their ungratefulness.” It was asked whether they are ungrateful to Allāh. The Prophet \textit{ \textsuperscript{2} } said, “They are ungrateful to their companions of life (husbands) and ungrateful to good favours done to them. If you have done good favours to one of them throughout the life and if she sees anything (undesirable) from you, she will say, ‘I have never seen any good from you’.”

\textbf{(10) CHAPTER. The offering of the Eclipse \textit{Salāt} (prayer) by women along with men. \textit{\	extsuperscript{1053}}} Narrated Fāṭīma bint Al-Mundhir: Asma’ bint Abī Bakr said, ‘I came to ‘A‘ishah the wife of the Prophet \textit{ \textsuperscript{2} } during the solar eclipse. The people were standing and offering the \textit{Salāt} (prayer) and she was also offering \textit{Salāt} (prayer). I asked her, ‘What has happened to the people?’ She pointed out with her hand towards the sky and said, ‘\textit{Subḥān Allāh}’. I said, ‘Is there a
sign?’ She requested in the affirmative.” Asmā’ further said, “I too then stood up for the *Salāt* (prayer) till I felt dizziness and then I poured water on my head. When Allāh’s Messenger had finished his *Salāt* (prayer), he thanked and praised Allāh and said, ‘I have seen, at this place of mine what I have never, I have seen even Paradise and Hell. No doubt, it has been revealed to me that you will be put to trial in the graves like or nearly like the trial of *(Al-Masīḥ) Ad-Dajjāl*. (I do not know which one of the two Asmā’ said.) (The angels) will come to everyone of you and will ask: What do you know about this man (i.e. Muḥammad)? The believer or a firm believer (I do not know which word Asmā’ said) will reply: He is Muḥammad, Allāh’s Messenger, who came to us with clear evidences and guidance, so we accepted his teachings, believed and followed him. The angels will then say to him: Sleep peacefully as we knew surely that you were a firm believer. The hypocrite or doubtful person (I do not know which word Asmā’ said) will say: I do not know. I heard the people saying something so I said it (the same).’” (See H. No. 1338).

(11) CHAPTER. Whoever loved manumission (of slaves) during the solar eclipses.

1054. Narrated Asmā’ (bint Abū Bakr): No doubt the Prophet ordered people to manumit slaves during the solar eclipse.
(12) CHAPTER. To offer the eclipse \textit{Salāt} (prayer) in the mosque.

1055.Narrated 'Amra bint 'Abdur-Rahmān: A Jewess came to 'Āishah to ask her about something and then she said, “May Allāh give you refuge from the punishment in the grave.” So 'Āishah asked Allāh’s Messenger, “Would the people be punished in their graves?” Allāh’s Messenger said, “I seek refuge with Allāh from the punishment in the grave (indicating an affirmative reply).”

1056. Then one day Allāh’s Messenger rode (to leave for some place) but the sun eclipsed. He returned in the forenoon and passed through the rear of the dwellings (of his wives) and stood up and started offering the (eclipse) \textit{Salāt} (prayer) and the people stood behind him. He stood for a long period and then performed a long bowing and then stood straight for a long period which was shorter than that of the first standing, then he performed a prolonged bowing which was shorter than the first bowing, then he raised his head and prostrated for a long time (twice) and then stood up (for the second \textit{Rak̲ā'} for a long while, but the standing was shorter than the standing of the first \textit{Rak̲ā’}. Then he performed a prolonged bowing, which was shorter than that of the first one. He then stood up for a long time but shorter than the first, then again performed a long bowing which was shorter than the first and then prostrated (twice) for a shorter while than that of the first prostration. Then he
finished the *Salāt* and [delivered the *Khutba* (religious talk) and] said what Allāh wished him to say; and ordered the people to seek refuge with Allāh from the punishment in the grave.

(13) CHAPTER. The solar eclipse does not occur because of someone’s death or life.

And this has been narrated by Abū Bakra, Al-Mughira, Abū Mūsā, Ibn ‘Abbās and Ibn ‘Umar.

1057. Narrated Abū Mas‘ūd: Allāh’s Messenger said, “The sun and the moon do not eclipse because of someone’s death or life (i.e., birth) but they are two signs amongst the signs of Allāh, so offer *Salāt* (prayers) whenever you see them.”

1058. Narrated ‘Aishah: In the lifetime of the Prophet the sun eclipsed and the Prophet stood up to offer the *Salāt* (prayer) with the people and recited a long recitation, then he performed a prolonged bowing; and then lifted his head and recited a prolonged recitation which was shorter than the first. Then he performed a prolonged bowing which was shorter than the first and then lifted his head up and performed two prostrations. He then stood up for the second *Rak‘a* and offered it like the first. Then (after finishing the *Salāt*) he stood up and said, “The sun and the moon do not eclipse because of someone’s life (i.e., birth) or death but they are two signs amongst the signs of Allāh which He shows to His worshippers. So whenever you see them,
make haste for the *Salāt* (prayer).”

(14) CHAPTER. To remember Allāh during the eclipse.

This is narrated by Ibn ‘Abbās. The sun eclipsed and the Prophet ℒﷺ got up, being afraid that it might be the Hour (i.e., Day of Judgement). He went to the mosque and offered the *Salāt* (prayer) with a long Qiyām (standing), bowing and prostration that I had ever seen him doing. Then (after the Salāt) he said, “These signs which Allāh sends do not occur because of the life (i.e., birth) or death of somebody, but Allāh frightens *‘Ibādhu* (His slaves or His worshippers) with them. So when you see anything thereof, proceed to remember Allāh, invoke Him and ask for His forgiveness.”

(15) CHAPTER. Invocation during the eclipse.

And this is narrated by Abū Mūsā and ʿĀishah ℒ from the Prophet ℒﷺ.

1060. Narrated Al-Mughīra bin Shu’ba: On the day of Ḳibrāhīm’s death, the sun eclipsed and the people said that the eclipse was due to the death of Ḳibrāhīm (the son of the Prophet ℒﷺ). Allāh’s Messenger ℒﷺ said, “The sun and the moon are two signs amongst the signs of Allāh. They do not eclipse because of someone’s death or life (i.e., birth). So when you see them, invoke
Allâh and offer *Salât* (prayer) till the eclipse has cleared.”

(16) CHAPTER. The saying of *Imâm Ammâ ba’du* (then after), during the *Khutba* (religious talk) of the eclipse.

1061. And this was narrated by Amma' who said, “Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ finished the eclipse prayer and by then the sun (eclipse) had cleared. Then he delivered the *Khutba* (religious talk) and praised Allâh as He deserved and then said *Ammâ ba’du*."

(17) CHAPTER. The prayer of the lunar eclipse:

1062. Narrated Abû Bakr: In the lifetime of Prophet ﷺ the sun eclipsed so he offered a two *Rak’a Salât* (prayer).

1063. Narrated Abû Bakr: In the lifetime of Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ the sun eclipsed and he went out dragging his clothes till he reached the mosque. The people gathered around him and he led them [in *Salât* (prayers)] and offered two *Rak’a*. When the sun (eclipse) cleared, he said, “The sun and the moon are two signs amongst the signs of Allâh; they do not eclipse because of the death of someone, and so when an eclipse occurs, offer *Salât* and invoke Allâh till the eclipse has cleared.” It happened that a son
of the Prophet ﷺ called Ibrāhīm died on that day and the people were talking about that (saying that the eclipse was caused by his death).

(18) CHAPTER. The first Rakʿā of the eclipse prayer is longer (than the second).

1064. Narrated 'Aīshah ﻣHEN: The Prophet ﷺ led us [in Salāt (prayer) and performed four bowings in two Rakʿā during the solar eclipse and the first Rakʿāt was longer (than the second).

(19) CHAPTER. To recite (the Qurʾān) aloud in the eclipse Salāt (prayer).

1065. Narrated 'Aīshah ﻣHEN: The Prophet ﷺ recited (the Qurʾān) aloud during the eclipse prayer and when he finished from his recitation he said Takbīr and bowed. When he stood straight from bowing he said “Samiʿ Allāhu liman ḥamidah, Rabbanā wa lakal-hamād.” Then again he started reciting. In the eclipse Salāt (prayer) there are four bowings and four prostrations in two Rakʿā.

1066. Narrated 'Urwa: 'Aīshah ﻣHEN said, “In the lifetime of Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ and his companions mentioned the story of the eclipse, the death of Ibrāhīm, the reason for it, and his long Rakʿāt.”
the sun eclipsed, and he made a person to announce: \textit{Aṣ-Ṣalātu Jāmi‘a [Ṣalāt (prayer) in congregation].}' He led the \textit{Ṣalāt} and performed four bowings and four prostrations in two \textit{Rak‘ā}.

Narrated Al-Walīd that ‘Abdur-Rahmān bin Namir had informed him that he had heard the same. Ibn Shihāb heard the same. Az-Zuhri said, “I asked (‘Urwa), ‘What did your brother ‘Abdullāh bin A-Zubair do? He offered two \textit{Rak‘ā} [of the eclipse \textit{Ṣalāt} (prayer)] like the morning \textit{Ṣalāt} (prayer), when he offered the (eclipse) \textit{Ṣalāt} in Al-Madina? ‘Urwa replied that he had missed (i.e., did not offer \textit{Ṣalāt} according to) the legal way of its offering.’” Sulaimān bin Kathīr and Sufyān bin Ḥusain narrated from Aṣ-Zuhri that the \textit{Ṣalāt} (prayer) for the eclipse used to be offered with loud recitation.
17 - THE BOOK OF PROSTRATION DURING THE RECITATION OF THE QUR'AN

(1) CHAPTER. What is said about the prostrations during the recitation of the Qur'an and its legal way.

1067. Narrated 'Abdullah (bin Mas'ūd)

The Prophet recited Sūrat An-Najm (No.53) at Makkah and prostrated while reciting it and those who were with him did the same except an old man who took a handful of small stones or earth and lifted it to his forehead and said, “This is sufficient for me.” Later on, I saw him killed as a disbeliever.

(2) CHAPTER. To prostrate during the recitation of Sūrat Tanzil – As-Sajda (No.32).

1068. Narrated Abū Hurairah

On Fridays the Prophet used to recite Alif Lām Mīm Tanzil-As-Sajda (in the first Rak'a) and Ḥal aā 'alāl-Insānī i.e., Sūrat-Ad-Dahr (No.76) (in the second Rak'a), in the Ṣalāt-ul-Fajr (Fajr prayer).

(3) CHAPTER. To prostrate while reciting Sūrat Sād (No.38).

1069. Narrated Ibn 'Abbās

The prostration of Sād is not a compulsory
one but I saw the Prophet prostrating while reciting it.

(4) CHAPTER. The prostration in An-Najm. (No.53).
Ibn `Abbās narrates this from the Prophet.

1070. Narrated `Abdullāh (bin Mas'ūd), 
The Prophet recited Sūrat-An-Najm (No.53) and prostrated while reciting it and all the people prostrated and a man amongst the people took a handful of stones or earth and raised it to his face and said, “This is sufficient for me.” Later on I saw him killed as a disbeliever.

(5) CHAPTER. The prostration of Muslims along with Al-Mushrikūn; and a Mushrik is Najasun (impure) and does not perform ablution.

Ibn `Umar used to prostrate without ablution.

(1) (Ch.5) Al-Mushrikūn: Polytheists, pagans, idolaters, and disbelievers in the Oneness of Allāh and in His Messenger Muhammad.
(2) (Ch.5) Their impurity is spiritual and physical: Spiritual, because they don't believe in Allāh's Oneness and in His Prophet Muhammad; and physical, because they lack personal hygiene (filthy as regards urine, stools, and blood etc.). And the word Najas is used only for those persons who have spiritual impurity e.g., Al-Mushrikūn. (See V.9:28 – The Qur'ān).
1071. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbás:
The Prophet prostrated while reciting An-Najm (No.53) and with him prostrated the Muslims, the Mushrikūn, the jinn, and the mankind.

(6) CHAPTER. Whoever recited the Verses of prostration and did not prostrate.

1072. Narrated ‘Ata’ bin Yasār: I asked Zaid bin Thābit about prostration on which he said that he had recited (Sūrat) An-Najm (No.53) before the Prophet, yet he (the Prophet) did not perform a prostration.

1073. Narrated Zaid bin Thābit: I recited (Sūrah) An-Najm (No.53) before the Prophet, yet he did not perform a prostration.

(7) CHAPTER. Prostration while reciting Idhās-Samā‘un-Shaqqat. (Sūrah No.84).

1074. Narrated Abū Salma: I saw Abū Hurairah reciting Idhās-Samā‘un-
Shaqqat and he prostrated during its recitation. I asked Abū Hurairah, “Didn’t I saw you prostrating?” Abū Hurairah said, “Had I not seen the Prophet prostrating, I would not have prostrated.”

(8) CHAPTER. Whoever prostrated with the prostration of the reciter (of the Qurʾān).

And Ibn Masʿūd asked Tamīm bin Hadhālam, while he was a boy, to recite Sūrah and said to him, “Prostrate as you are our Imām.”

1075. Narrated Ibn ʿUmar: Whenever the Prophet recited a Sūrah, in which there is a prostration, he would prostrate and we would do the same and some of us (because of overcrowding) would not find a place for prostration.

(9) CHAPTER. The overcrowding of the people when the Imām recites As-Sajda.

1076. Narrated Ibn ʿUmar: The Prophet used to recite (Sūrat) As-Sajda while we were with him, he would prostrate and we also would prostrate with him and some of us would not find a place for our foreheads to prostrate on, due to overcrowding.
10) CHAPTER. Whoever thinks that Allâh has not made prostration of recitation (i.e., during the recitation of the Qur'ân) compulsory.

And 'Imrân bin Hussain was asked if a man heard As-Sajda but was not sitting to listen to it (would the prostration be compulsory for him?) He said, “In my opinion prostration is not compulsory for him even if he were sitting to listen to it.”

And Salmân (who once heard Sûrat As-Sajda but did not prostrate) said, “I did not come with the intention of listening to it”, and ‘Uthmân said, “The prostration is compulsory for the person who listens to it.”

And Aṣ-Ṣâ‘ib bin Yazîd did not perform the prostrations of recitation while a story-teller or a preacher was reciting the Verses of prostration.

1077. Narrated Rabî‘a: ‘Umar bin Al-Khaṭṭâb recited Sûrat An-Nahl (16) on a Friday on the pulpit and when he reached the Verse of Sajda, he got down from the pulpit and prostrated and the people also prostrated. The next Friday ‘Umar bin Al-Khaṭṭâb recited the same Sûrah and when he reached the Verse of Sajda he said, “O people! When we recite the Verses of Sajda [during the Khutba (religious talk)] whoever prostrates does the right thing, yet there is no sin on the one who does not prostrate.” And ‘Umar did not prostrate (that day). Ibn ‘Umar added, “Allâh has not made the prostration of recitation compulsory but if we wish we can perform it.”
(11) CHAPTER. Whoever recited the Verse of Sajda during the Salât (prayer) and prostrated (while praying).

1078. Narrated Abû Râfi': I offered the 'Ishâ' prayer behind Abû Hurairah and he recited Idhâs-Samâ’un-Shaqqat (No.84), and prostrated. I said, “What is this?” Abû Hurairah said, “I prostrated behind Abûl-Qâsim and I will do the same till I meet him.”

(12) CHAPTER. Whoever does not find a place for prostration (with the Imâm) because of overcrowding.

1079. Narrated Ibn `Umar: Whenever the Prophet ﷺ recited the Sûrah in which there was a prostration he would prostrate and then, we, too, would prostrate and some of us used not to find a place for prostration.
(1) CHAPTER. What is said about the shortened prayers and for what period of stay one should offer shortened prayers.

1080.Narrated Ibn ‘Abbas: The Prophet once travelled and stayed for nineteen days and offered shortened prayers. So when we travelled (and stayed) for nineteen days, we used to shorten the prayer but if we travelled (and stayed) for a longer period we used to offer the full prayer.

1081. Narrated Yahyā bin Ishāq: I heard Anas saying, “We travelled with the Prophet from Al-Madīna to Makkah and he used to offer two Rak’a, two Rak’a (shortened prayers) till we returned to Al-Madīna.” I said, “Did you stay for some days in Makkah?” He replied, “We stayed in Makkah for ten days.”

(2) CHAPTER. As-Salāt (the prayers) at Mina (during Hajj).

1082. Narrated ‘Abdullāh (bin ‘Umar): I offered the Salāt with the Prophet, Abū Bakr and ‘Umar at Minā and it used to be two Rak’a (shortened Salāt). ‘Uthmān in the early days of his caliphate did the same, but later on he started offering the full Salāt (prayers).
1083. Narrated Ḥāritha bin Wahab رضي الله عنه: The Prophet ﷺ led us in the ʿṢalāt (salat) at Minā during the ʿHajj) and it was two Rakʿā (shortened prayer), while we were in a better security than before. (See H.No. 1656).

1084. Narrated ʿAbdur Raqīm bin Yazid at Minā Uthmān Ibn ʿAffān رضي الله عنه: At Minā Uthmān bin ʿAffān ﷺ led us in the ʿṢalāt (prayer) and offered four Rakʿā (the full prayer). ‘Abdullāh bin Maʿṣūd رضي الله عنه was informed about it. He said sadly, “Truly, to Allāh we belong and truly, to Him we shall return.” And added, “I offered two Rakʿā (shortened prayers) with Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ at Minā and similarly with Ābū Bakr and with ʿUmar (during their caliphates).” He further said, “May I be lucky enough to have two of the four Rakʿā accepted (by Allāh).”

(3) CHAPTER. How long did the Prophet ﷺ stay during his ʿHajj?  

1085. Narrated Ibn ʿAbbās رضي الله عنهما: The Prophet ﷺ ordered his Companions to assume the Ḥājrām
(for 'Umra instead of Hajj, except those who had Hadý (sacrifice) with them. (And the Prophet stayed for ten days during the Hajj — see H. No. 1081).

4) CHAPTER. What is the length of the journey that makes it permissible for one to offer a shortened Sàlat (prayer)?

The Prophet called a journey of one day and one night as travelling. Ibn 'Umar, Ibn 'Abbás, used to shorten the Salàt and stop fasting in a journey of four Burúd, i.e. sixteen Farsakh (distance of 3 miles equals one Farsakh).

1086. Narrated Ibn 'Umar: The Prophet said, “A woman should not travel for more than three days except with a Mahram [i.e. a male (with whom she cannot marry at all, e.g., her brother, father, grandfather, etc.) or her own husband.]”

1087. Narrated Ibn 'Umar: The Prophet said, “A woman should not travel for more than three days except with a Mahram.”

1088. Narrated Abú Hurairah: The Prophet said, “It is not permissible for a woman who believes in Allah and the
Last Day to travel for one day and night except with a Mahram.”

(5) CHAPTER. When a traveller leaves his original place, he can shorten his Salāt (prayers).

Once ‘Ali (bin Abī Ṭālib) left (Kūfa) and started shortening the Salāt (prayers) although the houses (of Kūfa) were in sight. On his return he was told, “This is Kūfa.” (So that he would no longer shorten the Salāt). He said, “No, [I will go on shortening the Salāt (prayers)] till we enter Kūfa.”

1089. Narrated Anas bin Mālik ʿAbdullāh bin ʿAbbās: I offered four Rak‘a of Zuhr prayer with the Prophet at Al-Madina and two Rak‘a at Dhul-Hulaifa. (i.e. shortened the ‘Asr prayers).

1090. Narrated ‘Aishah ʿAbdullāh bintur: “When the Salāt (prayer) were first enjoined they were two Rak‘at each. Later the Sala (prayer) in a journey was kept as it was but the Salāt (prayers) for non-travellers were made full (completed).” Az-Zuhri said, “I asked ‘Urwa what made ‘Aishah offer the full Salāt (in journey).” He replied,
“She did the same as ‘Uthmân did.”

(6) CHAPTER. To offer three Rak‘ā of *Maghrib* prayer during a journey.

1091. Narrated ‘Abdullâh bin ‘Umar رضي الله عنهما, “I saw Allah’s Messenger اللَّهُ سَلَّم delaying the *Maghrib* prayer till he offered it along with the *‘Ishâ* prayer whenever he was in a hurry during a journey.” Sâlim narrated, “Ibn ‘Umar used to do the same whenever he was in a hurry during a journey.”

1092. And Sâlim also said, “Ibn ‘Umar used to offer the *Maghrib* and *‘Ishâ* prayers together in Al-Muzdalîfa.” Sâlim further said, “Ibn ‘Umar (once) delayed the *Maghrib* prayer because at that time he heard the news of the death of his wife Safiyya bint Abî ‘Ubaid. I said to him, ‘As-Salah (the prayer) (is due).’ He said, ‘Go on.’ Again I said, ‘As-Salah (is due).’ He said, ‘Go on,’ till we covered two or three miles. Then he got down, offered *Salāt* and said, ‘I saw the Prophet سَلَّم offering *Salāt* in this way, whenever he was in a hurry during the journey.’” ‘Abdullâh (bin ‘Umar) added, “Whenever the Prophet سَلَّم was in a hurry, he used to delay the *Maghrib* prayers and then offer three Rak‘ā (of the *Maghrib*) and perform *Taslîm*, and after waiting for a
short while, *Iqāma* used to be pronounced for the ‘Iṣhā’ prayer when he would offer two *Rak‘āt* and perform *Taslīm*. He would never offer any optional ʿṢalāt till the middle of the night (when he used to offer the *Tahajjud*).”

(7) CHAPTER. To offer the optional non-obligatory ʿṢalāt (Nawāfil) on the back of animals (*Rāhīla*) in whatever direction the animal goes.

1093. Narrated ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Āmir that his father said: I saw the Prophet ﷺ offering the ʿṢalāt (prayer) on his mount (*Rāhīla*) in whatever direction it took.

1094. Narrated Jābir bin ‘Abdullāh رضي الله عنه: The Prophet ﷺ used to offer the Nawāfil, (optional — non obligatory prayers) while riding, facing a direction other than that of the Qiblah.

1095. Narrated Nāfi’ ibn ʿUmar رضي الله عنه (while on a journey) used to offer the Nawāfil and the *Witr* prayers on his *Rāhīla* (mount). He said that the Prophet ﷺ used to do so.

(8) CHAPTER. To offer the ʿṢalāt by signs (while riding) on an animal (*Rāhīla*).

1096. Narrated ‘Abdullāh bin Dīnār: On
travelling, ‘Abdullâh bin ‘Umar used to offer the (optional — non-obligatory) Salât (prayer) on his mount (Râhîla) by signs whatever direction it took. ‘Abdullâh said that the Prophet ﷺ used to do so.

(9) CHAPTER. To get down in order to offer the prescribed (compulsory) Salât (prayer).

1097. Narrated ‘Amîr bin Rab‘îa: I saw the Prophet ﷺ on his Râhîla (mount) offering Nawâfîl prayers by nodding his head, whatever direction he faced, but Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ never did the same in offering the prescribed (compulsory) Salât (prayer).

1098. Narrated Sâlim: At night, ‘Abdullâh bin ‘Umar used to offer the Salât (prayer) on the back of his animal during a journey and never cared about the direction he faced. Ibn ‘Umar said, “Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ used to offer the optional Salât (prayer) on the back of his Râhîla facing any direction and also used to offer the Witr on it but never offered the prescribed (compulsory) Salât (prayer) on it.”

1099. Narrated Jâbir bin ‘Abdullâh: The Prophet ﷺ used to offer (the Nawâfîl) prayers on his mount facing east,
and whenever he wanted to offer the compulsory *Salāt* (prayer), he used to dismount and face the *Qiblah*.

(10) CHAPTER. To offer the *Nawāfil* (optional — non-obligatory) while riding a donkey.

1100. Narrated Anas bin Sirīn: We went to receive Anas bin Mālik when he returned from ʿShām and met him at a place called ‘Ain-at-Tamr. I saw him offering *Salāt* (prayer) riding a donkey, with his face to this direction, i.e., to the left of the *Qiblah*. I said to him, “I have seen you offering the *Salāt* (prayer) in a direction other than that of the *Qiblah*.” He replied, “If I had not seen Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ doing it, I would not have done it.”

(11) CHAPTER. Whoever did not offer the *Nawāfil* (optional — non-obligatory) before and after the (compulsory) *Salāt* (prayer) during a journey.

1101. Narrated Ḥafṣ bin ʿĀṣim: Ibn ʿUmar ʿABBAS/////////////// when he went on a journey and said, “I accompanied the Prophet ﷺ and he did not offer the *Nawāfil* (optional — non-obligatory) during the journey, and
Allâh says:

“Indeed in the Messenger of Allah (Muhammad ﷺ) you have a good example to follow…” (V.33:21)

1102. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar رضي الله عنهم: I accompanied Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ and he never offered more than two Rak‘a prayer during a journey. Abû Bakr, ‘Umar and ‘Uthmân رضي الله عنهم used to do the same.

(12) CHAPTER. Whoever offered Nawâfil (optional — non-obligatory) prayers, not after the compulsory Sâlayt (prayer) but before it.

The Prophet ﷺ offered two Rak‘a before the Fajr prayers on a journey.

1103. Narrated Ibn Abî Lailâ : Only Umm Hânî told us that she had seen the Prophet ﷺ offering the Duhâ (forenoon prayers). She said, “On the day of the conquest of Makkah, the Prophet ﷺ took a bath in my house and offered eight Rak‘a. I never saw him offering such a light Sâlayt (prayer), but he performed perfect prostration and bowing.”

1104. Narrated ‘Abdullâh bin ‘Amir that his father had told him that he had seen the Prophet ﷺ offering Nawâfil (non-obligatory) prayers at night on the back of his Râhilû (mount) on a journey, facing whatever
direction it took.

1105. Narrated Sālim bin ‘AbdULLāH: Ibn ‘Umar narrated, “Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ used to offer the Nawāfil (non-obligatory) prayers on the back of his Rāhīla (mount) by signs, facing any direction.” Ibn ‘Umar used to do the same.

(13) CHAPTER. To offer the Maghrib and ‘Ishā’ prayers together on a journey.

1106. Narrated Sālim’s father: The Prophet ﷺ used to offer the Maghrib and ‘Ishā’ (prayers) together whenever he was in a hurry on a journey.

1107. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbās: Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ used to offer the Zuhr and ‘Asr (prayers) together on journeys, and also used to offer the Maghrib and ‘Ishā’ together.

1108. Narrated Anas bin Mālik: The Prophet ﷺ used to offer the Maghrib and the ‘Ishā’ Salāt (prayers) together on journeys.
1109. Narrated Az-Zuhri: Sâlim informed me that ‘Abdullãh bin ‘Umar said, “I saw Allãh’s Messenger delaying the Maghrib prayer till he offered it along with the ‘Ishã‘ prayer whenever he was in a hurry during a journey.” Sâlim said, “‘Abdullãh bin ‘Umar used to do the same whenever he was in a hurry during a journey. After making the call for Iqã‘ma for the Maghrib prayer he used to offer three Rak‘ã and then perform Taslim. He never offered any optional prayers in between the two Salãt (prayers) or after the Salãt (prayers) till he got up in the middle of the night (for Tahajjud).”

1110. Narrated Anas: Allãh’s Messenger used to offer these two Salãt (prayers) together on journeys i.e., the Maghrib and the ‘Ishã‘ (prayers).
18- THE BOOK OF ABRIDGED PRAYERS (AT-TAQṣĪR)

(15) CHAPTER. To delay the Ṣalāt-ul-Zuhr prayers till the ‘Aṣr prayers if one has set off before noon.

Ibn ‘Abbās narrated this on the authority of the Prophet ﷺ.

1111. Narrated Anas bin Mālik: Whenever the Prophet ﷺ started a journey before noon, he used to delay the Zuhr prayers till the time of ‘Aṣr and then offer them together; and if the sun declined (at noon) he used to offer the Zuhr prayer and then ride (for a journey).

(16) CHAPTER. Whenever a person travels after midday, he should offer the Zuhr prayers and then ride for a journey.

1112. Narrated Anas bin Mālik: Whenever the Prophet ﷺ started on a journey before noon, he used to delay the Zuhr prayers till the time for the ‘Aṣr prayer and then he would dismount and offer them together; and whenever the sun declined before he started on a journey he used to offer the Zuhr prayers and then ride (for journey).

(17) CHAPTER. To offer Ṣalāt (prayer) while sitting.

1113. Narrated ‘Aishah: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ offered Ṣalāt (prayer) in his house while sitting during his illness and the people offered Ṣalāt behind him standing and he pointed to them to sit down. When he had finished the Ṣalāt, he said, “The Imām is to be followed and so when he bows you should bow; and when he lifts his
head you should also do the same." [1) [The provision of this Hadith was abrogated by the last action of the Prophet ﷺ. See H. No.687].

1114. Narrated Anas bin Malik : Allah's Messenger ﷺ fell down from a horse and his right side was either injured or scratched, so we went to inquire about his health. The time for the Salāt (prayers) became due and he offered the Salāt while sitting and we offered Salāt while standing. He said, "The Imam is to be followed; so if he says Takbīr, you should also say Takbīr, and if he bows you should also bow; and when he lifts his head you should also do the same and if he says: Samī‘ Allahu liman ḥamida (Allah heard those who sent praises to Him) you should say: Rabbana wālakal-ḥamd (O our Lord! All the praises are for You.)." (See Hadīth No. 687 and 689, Vol.I).

1115. Narrated 'Imrān bin Ḥusāin رضي الله عنه who was suffering from piles: I asked Allah's Messenger ﷺ about the offering of Salāt (prayers) of a man while sitting. He said, "If he offers Salāt while standing it is better and he who offers Salāt while sitting gets half the reward of that who offers Salāt standing; and whoever offer Salāt while lying gets half the reward of that who offers Salāt while sitting."

---

1) (H.1113) See Hadīth 687,689 and 5658, for taking the final verdict.
(18) CHAPTER. To offer Salāt (prayers) by signs while sitting.

1116. Narrated ‘Abdullāh bin Buraida: ‘Imrān bin Ḥusain was suffering from piles. Once Abū Ma’mar narrated that ‘Imrān bin Ḥusain said, “I asked the Prophet ﷺ about the Salāt (prayers) of a person while sitting. He said, ‘It is better for one to offer Salāt (prayer) standing; and whoever offers Salāt (prayer) sitting gets half the reward of that who offers Salāt (prayer) while standing; and whoever offers Salāt (prayer) while lying gets half the reward of that who offers Salāt (prayer) while sitting.’”

(19) CHAPTER. Whoever cannot offer Salāt (prayer) while sitting, can offer Salāt while lying on his side.

‘Aṭā’ said, “If one is unable to turn towards the Qiblah then he can offer the Salāt (prayer) in whatever direction his face may be.”

1117. Narrated ‘Imrān bin Ḥusain: I had piles, so I asked the Prophet ﷺ about the Salāt (prayers). He said, “Offer Salāt (prayer) standing and if you cannot do that, offer Salāt (prayer) sitting, and if you cannot do even that, then offer Salāt (prayer) lying on your side.”
(20) CHAPTER. Whoever starts his Salah (prayer) sitting (because of ailment) and then during the Salah (prayer) feels better, can finish the rest while standing.

Al-Hasan said, “If the sick person wishes he can offer two Rak‘a while standing and two Rak‘a while sitting.”

1118. Narrated ‘Aishah, the Mother of the faithful believers: I never saw Allâh’s Messenger offering the night Salah (prayer) while sitting except in his old age and then he used to recite while sitting and whenever he wanted to bow he would stand up and recite thirty or forty Verses (while standing) and then bow.

1119. Narrated ‘Aishah, Mother of the faithful believers: Allâh’s Messenger (in his last days) used to offer (the night) Salah (prayer) sitting. He would recite while sitting, and when thirty or forty Verses remained from the recitation, he would stand up and recite them while standing and then he would bow and prostrate. He used to do the same in the second Rak‘a. After finishing the Salah (prayer) he used to look at me and if I was awake he would talk to me and if I was asleep, he would lie down.
19 – THE BOOK OF \textit{SALAT-UT-TAHAJJUD} (NIGHT PRAYER)

(1) CHAPTER. The \textit{Tahajjud} prayer at night [\textit{Tahajjud} means optional \textit{Salat} (prayer) to be offered from the middle to the last part of the night but before the compulsory morning \textit{Salat} (prayer)].

And the Statement of Allah:

"And in some parts of the night (also) offer the \textit{Salat} (prayer) with it (i.e., recite the Qur'an in the prayer), as an additional prayer (\textit{Tahajjud} optional prayer — \textit{Nawafil}) for you... (O Muhammad)" (V.17:79).

1120. Narrated Ibn 'Abbas:

Whenever the Prophet \(\text{SAW}\) got up at night to offer the \textit{Tahajjud} prayer, he used to say:

"\textit{Allahumma} lakal-hash. \textit{Anta} Qayimus-samawati wal-ard wa man fihinna. \textit{Wa} lakal-hashdu, lakal mulkus-samawati wal-ard wa man fihinna. \textit{Wa} lakal-hash, \textit{Anta} Nurus-samawati wal-ard. \textit{Antal-Haq} wa wa'dukal-haq, wa liq'uka haq, wa quahuka haq, wa jannatu haq wan-naru haq wannabiiyy-una haq, wa Muhammadun \(\text{SAW}\), haq, was-satu haq. \textit{Allahumma} laka aslamtu wabika anna, wa 'alaika tawakkaltu, wa ilaika haku, faghfr li ma qaddamtu wannu ahlku wamash ahlku wamash."

O Allah! All the praises are for You; You are the Sustainer and Protector of the heavens and the earth, and whatever is in them. All the praises are for You; You have the possession of the heavens and the earth and whatever is in them. All the praises are for You; You are the Light of the heavens and the earth; You are the King of the heavens and the earth and whatever is in...
them, and all the praises are for You; You are the Truth and Your Promise is the truth, and the Meeting with You is the truth, Your Words are the truth, and Paradise is the truth, and Hell is the truth and all the Prophets (peace be upon them) are the truth. And Muḥammad is the truth, and the Hour (Day of Resurrection) is the truth. O Allah! I surrender to You, I believe in You and depend on You, and repent to You, and with Your Help I argue (with my opponents, the disbelievers) and I take You as a Judge (to judge between us). Please forgive me my past and future sins; and whatever I concealed and whatever I revealed; and You are the One Who make (some people) forward and (some) backward. There is none who has the right to be worshipped but You or there is no other than You who has the right to be worshipped].

Sufyān said that ‘Abdul Karīm Abū Umaiyya added to the above, ‘Wala huwa la quwwata illã billah’ (There is neither might nor power except with Allah).

(2) CHAPTER. The superiority of Tahajjud prayer (i.e. the night prayer).

1121. Narrated Sālim’s father: In the lifetime of the Prophet ṣaw whosoever saw a dream would narrate it to Allāh’s Messenger ṣaw. I had a wish of seeing a dream to narrate it to Allah’s Messenger ṣaw. I was a grown up boy and used to sleep in the mosque in the lifetime of the Prophet ṣaw. I saw in the dream that two angels caught hold of me and took me to the fire which was built all round like a built well and had two poles in it and the people in it were known to me. I started saying, “I seek refuge with Allāh from the fire.” Then I met another angel who told me not to be afraid.
1122. I narrated the dream to Hafsa who told it to Allah’s Messenger. The Prophet said, “Abdullah is a good man. I wish he offered night prayer (Tahajjud).” After that Abdullah (i.e., Salim's father) used to sleep but a little at night.

(3) CHAPTER. To perform a long prostration in the Tahajjud (night prayer).

1123. Narrated 'Aishah: Allah’s Messenger used to offer eleven Rak’ah and that was his Salat (i.e., night prayer). He used to prolong the prostration to such an extent that one could recite fifty verses (of the Qur'an) before he would lift his head. He used to offer two Rak'ah (Sunna) before the Salat-ul-Fajr (early morning prayer) and then used to lie down on his right side till the call-maker came and informed him about the Salat (prayer).

(4) CHAPTER. Leaving the night prayer by a patient.

1124. Narrated Jundab: The Prophet said, “Highest is the prayer of the afflicted.”
Prophet became sick and did not get up (for Tahajjud prayer) for a night or two.

1125. Narrated Jundab bin ‘Abdulläh: JibrIl (Gabriel) did not come to the Prophet (for some time) and so one of the Quraisy women said, “His Satan has deserted him.” So came the Divine Revelation:

“By the forenoon (after sunrise). By the night when it darkens (and stands still). Your Lord (O Muhammad) has neither forsaken you nor hates you.” (V.93:1-3)

(5) CHAPTER. The Prophet’s exhorting (the people) to Tahajjud and Nawâfil without making them compulsory.

The Prophet went to ‘Ali and Fâtima at night and knocked their door to exhort them to perform Salât (i.e. night prayers).

1126. Narrated Umm Salama: One night the Prophet got up and said, “Subhân Allâh”(1) How many Al-Fitan (trials and afflictions) has been sent down tonight and how many treasures have been sent down (disclosed). Go and wake the sleeping lady occupants of these dwellings up [for Salât (prayers)], perhaps a well-dressed in this world may be naked in the Hereafter.”

(1) (H.1126) “Subhân Allâh” : See glossary.
1127.Narrated ‘Ali bin Abi Ṭālib that one night Allāh’s Messenger came to him and Fāṭima, the daughter of the Prophet and said: “Don’t you (both) offer the Tahajjud prayers (at night)?” I said, “O Allāh’s Messenger! Our souls are in the Hands of Allāh and if He wants us to get up He will make us get up.” When I said that, he left us without saying anything and I heard that he was hitting his thigh and saying, “...But, man is ever more quarrelsome than anything.” (V.18:54)

1128.Narrated ‘Āishah: Allāh’s Messenger used to give up a good deed, although he loved to do it, for fear that people might act on it and it might be made compulsory for them. The Prophet never offered the Duhã prayer, but I offer it.

1129.Narrated ‘Āishah, the Mother of the faithful believers: One night Allāh’s Messenger offered the Salãt (prayer) in the mosque and the people followed him. The next night he also offered the Salãt (prayer) and a great number of people followed him. On the third or the fourth night more and more people gathered, but Allāh’s Messenger
did not come out to them. In the morning he said, “I saw what you were doing and nothing stopped me from coming out to you, but the fear that it (i.e. the Salāt) might be enjoined on you.” And that happened in the month of Ramaḍān.

(6) CHAPTER. Standing of the Prophet ﷺ [for the Salāt (prayer)] at night.

‘Āishah رضي الله عنها narrated that the Prophet ﷺ used to offer Salāt (prayer) till his feet used to be swollen (oedematous).

1130. Narrated Al-Mughira رضي الله عنّه: The Prophet ﷺ used to stand [in the Salāt (prayer)] or offer Salāt (prayer) till both his feet or legs swelled. He was asked [why he offered such an unbearable Salāt (prayer)] and he said, “Should I not be a thankful slave.”

(7) CHAPTER. Sleeping in the last hours of the night.

1131. Narrated ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Amr bin Al-‘As رضي الله عنه: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ told me, “The most beloved Salāt (prayer) to Allah is that of Dā’ūd (David), and the most beloved Saum (fasts) to Allah are those of Dā’ūd. He used to sleep for half of the night and then offer Salāt (prayer) for one third of the night and again sleep for its sixth part and used to observe Saum (fasts) to alternate days.”
1132. Narrated Masrûq: I asked `Aishah رضي الله عنها which was the most beloved deed to the Prophet ﷺ. She said, “A deed done continuously.” I further asked, “When did he used to get up [in the night for the Salât (prayer)].” She said, “He used to get up on hearing the crowing of a cock.”

Narrated Al-Ash’ath ﷺ: He (the Prophet ﷺ) used to get up for the Salât (prayer) on hearing the crowing of a cock.

1133. Narrated `Aishah رضي الله عنها: In my house he (Prophet ﷺ) never passed the last hours of the night but sleeping.

(8) CHAPTER. Whoever took the Suhûr (the meal taken before dawn in the month of Ramaḍân) and did not sleep before offering Fajr prayers.

1134. Narrated Qatada: Anas bin Mâlik رضي الله عنه said, “The Prophet ﷺ and Zaid bin
Thābit took their Suḥūr together. When they finished it, the Prophet stood for the Salāt (i.e., the Fajr prayer) and offered it.” We asked Anas, “What was the interval between their finishing the Suḥūr and the starting of the Salāt?” Anas replied, “It was equal to the time taken by a person in reciting fifty Verses of the Qur’ān.”

(9) CHAPTER. To prolong the standing posture in the Tahajjud prayer.

1135. Narrated Abū Wā’il: ‘Abdullāh said, “One night I offered the Tahajjud prayer with the Prophet and he kept on standing till an ill-thought came to me.” We said, “What was the ill-thought?” He said, “It was to sit down and leave the Prophet (standing).”

1136. Narrated Ḥudhaifa: Whenever the Prophet got up for Tahajjud prayer he used to clean his mouth (and teeth) with Siwāk.

(10) CHAPTER. How was the Salāt (Tahajjud prayer) of the Prophet and how many Rak‘ā, he used to offer at night?
1137. Narrated ‘Abdullah bin ‘Umar: A man said, “O Allah’s Messenger! How is the Salât (prayers) of the night?” He said, “Two Rak’â followed by two Rak’â and so on, and when you apprehend the approaching dawn, offer one Rak’â as Witr.”

1138. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbas: The Salât (prayer) of the Prophet used to be of thirteen Rak’â, i.e., of the night (Tahajjud) prayer.

1139. Narrated Masrûq: I asked ‘Aishah about the night (Tahajjud) Salât (prayer) of Allah’s Messenger and she said, “It was seven, nine or eleven Rak’â besides the two Rak’â of the Fajr prayer (i.e. Sunna).”

1140. Narrated ‘Aishah: The Prophet used to offer thirteen Rak’â of the night (Tahajjud) prayer and that included the Witr and two Rak’â (Sunna) of the Fajr prayer.
19 - THE BOOK OF *SALĂT-UT-TAHĂJJUD*

(11) CHAPTER. The waking up of the Prophet ﷺ from his sleep for the night prayer and what (how much) was cancelled from the night prayer.

And the Statement of Allah ﷻ: "O you wrapped in garments (i.e. Prophet Muhammad ﷺ)! Stand (to pray) all night, except a little. Half of it, or a little less than that, or a little more; and recite the Qur’ân (aloud) in a slow (pleasant tone and) style. Verily, We shall send down to you a weighty Word (i.e. obligations, laws). Verily, the rising by night (for *Tahăjjud* prayer) is very hard and most potent and good for governing (oneself), and most suitable for (understanding) the Word (of Allah). Verily, there is for you by day prolonged occupation with ordinary duties.” (V.73:1-7)

And Allah’s Statement: “...He knows that you are unable to pray the whole night, so He has turned to you (in mercy). So, recite you of the Qur’ân as much as may be easy for you. He knows that there will be some among you sick, others travelling through the land, seeking of Allah’s Bounty, yet others fighting in Allah’s Cause. So recite as much of the Qur’ân as may be easy (for you), and perform *Aş-Şalât* (İqâmat-as-Şalât) and give Zakât, and lend to Allah, a goodly loan, and whatever good you send before you for yourselves, (i.e. *Nawafil* — non-obligatory acts of worship: prayers, charity, fasting, *Hajj* and *’Umra*, etc.), you will certainly find it with Allah, better and greater in reward...” (V.73:20)

1141. Narrated Anas bin Malik Z:

Sometimes Allah’s Messenger ﷺ would not observe *Saum* (fast) (for so many days) that we thought that he would not observe *Saum* (fast) that month and he sometimes used to observe *Saum* (fast) (for so many days) that...
we thought he would not leave observing Saum (fast) throughout that month and [as regards his Salāt (prayers) and sleep at night], if you wanted to see him offering Salāt (prayer) at night, you could see him offering Salāt (prayer) and if you wanted to see him sleeping, you could see him sleeping.

(12) CHAPTER. Satan's tying of knots at the back of the head if one does not offer the night prayer.

1142. Narrated Abū Hurairah: Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ said, “During your sleep, Satan knots three knots at the back of the head of each one of you. On every knot he reads and exhales the following words, ‘The night is long for you, so stay asleep.’ When that person wakes up and remembers Allāh, one knot is undone; and when he performs ablution, the second knot is undone, and when he offers Salāt (prayer) the third knot is undone and one gets up energetic in a good mode and with a good heart in the morning; otherwise he gets up in a bad mode, lazy (and with not a good heart).”

1143. Narrated Samura bin Jundab: The Prophet ﷺ said in his narration of a dream that he saw, “He whose head was being crushed with a stone was one who learnt the Qur’ān but never acted on it, and slept ignoring the prescribed compulsory Salāt (prayers).”
(13) CHAPTER. If one sleeps and does not offer the *Ṣalāt* (prayer), Satan urinates in his ears.

1144.Narrated 'Abdullãh b. 'Amr: A man was mentioned before the Prophet ﷺ and he was told that he kept on sleeping till morning and did not get up for *Aṣ-Ṣalāt* (i.e., *Fajr* prayer). The Prophet ﷺ said, “Satan urinated in his ears.”

(14) CHAPTER. Offering *Ṣalāt* (prayer) and invoking Allah in the last hours of the night.

And Allah says: “They used to sleep but little by night, [invoking their Lord (Allah) and praying with fear and hope]. And in the hours before dawn, they were (found) asking (Allah) for forgiveness.”

(V.51:17,18)

1145. Narrated Abû Hurairah: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ said, “Our Lord, the Blessed, the Superior, comes down every night on the nearest heaven to us during the last third of the night and He says, “(Is there anyone) who invokes Me, (demands anything from Me) so that I may respond to his invocation? (Is there anyone) who asks Me so that I may grant him his request? (Is there anyone) who seeks My Forgiveness, so that I may forgive him?”
(15) CHAPTER. Sleeping in the first part of the night and getting up in its last part.

Salmān asked Abī Ad-Dardā’ to sleep, and when it was the last part of the night, he told him to get up. (When this news reached the Prophet), he said, “Salmān said the truth.”

1146. Narrated Al-Aswad: I asked ‘Āishah about the Salāt (prayer) of the Prophet at night. She replied, “He used to sleep during the first part of night, and get up in its last part to offer Salāt (prayer), and then return to his bed. When the Mu’adh-dhin (the call-maker) pronounced the Adhān, he would get up. If he was in need of a bath he would take it; otherwise he would perform ablution and then go out [for the Salāt (prayer)].”

(16) CHAPTER. The Salāt (prayer) of the Prophet at night in Ramaḍān and (in) other months.

1147. Narrated Abū Salma bin ‘Abdur Rahmān: I asked ‘Āishah about the Salāt (prayer) of Allāh’s Messenger during the month of Ramaḍān.” She said, “Allāh’s Messenger never exceeded eleven Rak‘ā in Ramaḍān or in other months; he used to offer four Rak‘ā — do not ask me about their beauty and length, then four Rak‘ā, do not ask me about their beauty and length, and then three Rak‘ā.” ‘Āishah further said, “I said, ‘O Allāh’s Messenger! Do you sleep before offering the Witr prayers?’ He replied, ‘O ‘Āishah! My eyes sleep but my heart remains awake!’”
1148. Narrated ‘Aishah: I did not see the Prophet reciting (the Qur’an) in the night Salât (prayers) while sitting except when he became old; when he used to recite while sitting, and when thirty or forty Verses remained from the Sūrah, he would stand up and recite them and then bow.

(17) CHAPTER. The superiority of remaining with ablution during the day and night and the superiority of offering As-Salât (the prayers) after ablution during the day and night.

1149. Narrated Abū Hurairah: At the time of the Šalât-ul-Fajr (Fajr prayers) the Prophet asked Bilal, “Tell me of the best deed you did after embracing Islám, for I heard your footsteps in front of me in Paradise.” Bilal replied, “I did not do anything worth mentioning except that whenever I performed ablution during the day or night, I offered Šalât (prayer) after that ablution as much as was written for me.”
(18) CHAPTER. It is disliked to exaggerate extremely in matters of worship.

1150. Narrated Anas bin Mâlik L رضي الله عنهما:(1) Once the Prophet ن says entered (the mosque) and saw a rope hanging in between its two pillars. He said, “What is this rope?” The people said, “This rope is for Zainab who, when she feels tired, holds it [to keep standing in the Salât (prayer)].” The Prophet ن said, “Don’t use it. Remove the rope. You should offer Salât (prayer) as long as you feel active, and when you get tired, sit down.”

1151. Narrated ‘Aishah ز : A woman from the tribe of Banî Asad was sitting with me and Allah’s Messenger ن came to my house and said, “Who is this?” I said, “(She is) So-and-so. She does not sleep at night because she is engaged in Salât (prayer).” The Prophet ن said disapprovingly: “Do (good) deeds which are within your capacity as Allah never gets tired of giving rewards till you get tired of doing good deeds.”

(19) CHAPTER. It is disliked for a person to leave offering the night Salât after he has been used to (offering) it.

1152. Narrated ‘Abdullâh bin ‘Amr bin

---

(1) (H.1150) See Fath-al-Bârî, for details.
Al-'Ās: Allâh’s Messenger  said to me, “O ‘Abdullâh! Do not be like so-and-so who used to offer Salât (prayer) at night and then stopped the night Salât (prayer).”

(20) CHAPTER.

1153. Narrated ‘Abdullâh bin ‘Amr: Once Allâh’s Messenger  said to me, “I have been informed that you offer Salât (prayer) all the night and observe Saum (fast) during the day.” I said, “(Yes) I do so.” He said, “If you do so, your eye-sight will become weak and you will become weak. No doubt, your body has a right on you, and your family has a right on you, so observe Saum (for some days) and do not observe it (for some days), offer Salât (for some time) and then sleep.”
(21) CHAPTER. The superiority of one who wakes up at night and offers the Salāt with a loud voice.

1154. Narrated ‘Ubāda bin As-Šāmit: The Prophet said, “Whoever gets up at night and says:

‘Lā ilāha illallāhu Wahdahu lā sharīka lahū. Lahul-mulku, wa lahul-ḥamdu wa Huwa ’alā kulli shai’in Qadīr. Allhāmdu illāhī, wa subḥānallāhī, wa lā ilāha illallāhū, wallāhu akbar, wa lā hawla wa lā quwwata illā billāh.’

( None has the right to be worshipped but Allāh. He is the Only One Who has no partners. His is the kingdom and all the praises are for Him. He is Omnipotent. All the praises are for Allāh. All the glories are for Allāh. And none has the right to be worshipped but Allāh, and Allāh is the Most Great and there is neither might nor power except with Allāh).

And then says: ‘Allāhumma, ighfir lî’ (O Allāh! Forgive me).

Or invokes (Allāh), he will be responded to and if he performs ablution [and offer Salāt (prayer)], his Salāt will be accepted.”

1155. Abū Hurairah: in one of his narrations said that once Allāh’s Messenger said, “Your brother, i.e., ‘Abdullāh bin Rawāḥa, does not say obscene (referring to his poetic verses): Amongst us is Allāh’s Messenger, who recites His Book when it dawns.

He showed us the guidance, after we were blind. We believe that whatever he says is true.

And he spends his nights in such a way as his sides do not touch his bed. While the Musḥrikūn were deeply asleep.”
1156. Narrated Nâfi': Ibn 'Umar said, "In the lifetime of the Prophet I dreamt that a piece of silk cloth was in my hand and it flew with me to whichever part of Paradise I wanted. I also saw as if two persons (i.e., angels) came to me and wanted to take me to Fire. Then an angel met us and told me not to be afraid. He then told them to leave me.

1157. Hafsa narrated one of my dreams to the Prophet who said, 'Abdullâh is a good man. Would that he offer the night prayer (Salât-ut-Tahajjud)!

1158. So, after that day 'Abdullâh (bin 'Umar) started offering the night prayers. The Companions of the Prophet used to tell their dreams that [Laila-tul-Qadr (the Night of Power)] was on the 27th of the month of Ramadân. The Prophet said, "I see that your dreams agree on the last ten nights of Ramadân and so whoever is in search of it should seek it in the last ten nights of Ramadân."
(22) CHAPTER. Regularity of offering two Rak'ā (Sunna) of the Fajr.

1159. Narrated 'Aishah رضي الله عنها: Allah's Messenger ﷺ offered the Ish'ār prayer (and then got up at the Tahajjud time) and offered eight Rak'ā and then offered two Rak'ā while sitting. He then offered two Rak'ā in between the Adhān and Iqāma (of the Fajr prayer) and he never missed them.

(23) CHAPTER. To lie down on the right side after offering two Rak'ā (Sunna) of the Fajr prayer.

1160. Narrated 'Aishah رضي الله عنها: The Prophet ﷺ used to lie down on his right side, after offering two Rak'ā (Sunna) of the Fajr prayer.

(24) CHAPTER. Whoever talks after offering two Rak'ā (Sunna) (of the Fajr prayer) and does not lie down.

1161. Narrated 'Aishah رضي الله عنها: After offering the Sunna of the Fajr prayer, the Prophet ﷺ used to talk to me, if I happen to be awake; otherwise he would lie down till the Iqāma was proclaimed (for the Fajr prayer).
(25) CHAPTER. What is said about the Nawafil being offered as two Rak’a followed by two and so on.

And this has been narrated by ‘Ammār, Abū Dhar, Anas, Jābir bin Zaid, ‘Ikrima, and Aż-Zuhri.

Yaḥyā bin Sa‘īd Al-Anṣārī said, “I saw the religious learned men of our town (Al-Madīna) offering two Rak’a of Nawafil and finishing them with Taslim during the day”.

1162. Narrated Jābir bin ‘Abbūlāh: The Prophet used to teach us the way of doing Istikhāra in all matters as he taught us the Sūrahs of the Qur’ān. (Istikhāra means to ask Allāh to guide one to the right sort of action concerning any job or deed), He said, “If anyone of you decides to do any job, he should offer a two Rak’a Salāt (prayer) other than the compulsory ones and say (after the Salāt):


(O Allāh, I consult You as You are All-Knowing, and appeal to You to give me power as You are Omnipotent, and ask You...}

{لا يُؤَدَّى بالضلة. [راجع: 1118]}

(26) يَا بَابُ مَا جَاءَ فِي النَّطُوءِ مُحْمَّدٌ...
for Your Great Favour, for You have power, but I don't, and You have knowledge, but I don't have, and You know all hidden matters. O Allâh, if You know that this matter is good for me in my religion, my livelihood, and for my life in the Hereafter (or said: For my present, and future life), then do it for me; and if You know that this matter is evil (not good) for me in my religion, my livelihood, and for my life in the Hereafter (or said: For my present and future life), then keep it away from me and take me away from it, and choose what is good for me wherever it is, and please me with it.)

The Prophet ﷺ added that then the person should name (mention) his need (matter).

1163. Narrated Abû Qatâda bin Rabî’ Al-Anṣârî: The Prophet ﷺ said, “If anyone of you enters a mosque, he should not sit until he has offered a two Rak‘a prayer (Tahayyat-ul-Masjid).”

1164. Narrated Anas bin Malik: Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ led us and offered a two Rak‘a prayer and then went away.

1165. Narrated ‘Abdullâh bin ‘Umar: I offered with Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ two Rak‘a before the compulsory Zuhr prayer
and two Rak‘a after the Zuhr prayer, two Rak‘a after Jumu‘ah, Maghrib and ‘Ishā’ prayers.

1166. Narrated Jābir bin ‘Abdullāh رضی الله عنه: While delivering a Khutba (religious talk), Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ said, “If anyone of you comes (for Jumu‘ah prayer) while the Imam is delivering the Khutba or has come out for it, he should offer a two Rak‘a (prayer) (Tahayyat-ul-Masjid).

1167. Narrated Mujāhid: Somebody came to the house of Ibn ‘Umar رضی الله عنه and told him that Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ had entered the Ka‘bah. Ibn ‘Umar said, “I went in front of the Ka‘bah and found that Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ had come out of the Ka‘bah and I saw Bilāl standing by the side of the gate of the Ka‘bah. I said, ‘O Bilāl! Has Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ offered Salāt (prayer inside the Ka‘bah)?’ Bilāl replied in the affirmative. I said, ‘Where (did he offer Salāt)?’ He replied, ‘(He offered Salāt) between these two pillars and then he came out and offered a two Rak‘a prayer in front of the Ka‘bah.’”

Abū ‘Abdullāh said: Abū Hurairah رضی الله عنه said, “The Prophet ﷺ advised me to offer two Rak‘a Durūh prayer (prayer to be offered after sunrise and before midday.)”

‘Itbān (bin Mālik) said, “Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ and Abū Bakr رضی الله عنه advised me to offer two Rak‘a prayer.”
came to me after sunrise and we aligned behind the Prophet and offered two Rak'ā (prayer)."

(26) CHAPTER. To talk after offering two Rak'ā (Sunna of the Fajr prayer).

1168. Narrated 'Aishah: After offering the two Rak'ā (Sunna) the Prophet used to talk to me, if I happen to be awake; otherwise he would lie down.

(27) CHAPTER. To offer two Rak'āt (Sunna) before the Fajr prayer Fajr prayer and whoever called them Nawāfil.

1169. Narrated 'Aishah: The Prophet was never more regular and strict in offering any Nawāfil than the two Rak'āt (Sunna) of the Salāt-ul-Fajr prayer.

(28) CHAPTER. What is recited in the two Rak'ā (Sunna) of the Fajr prayer.

1170. Narrated 'Aishah: Allah's Messenger used to offer thirteen Rak'āt in the night prayer and on hearing the Adhān for the Fajr prayer, he used to offer two light Rak'ā.
1171. Narrated ‘Aishah ﷺ: The Prophet ﷺ used to offer the two Rak‘a (Sunna) before the Fajr prayer and make them so light that I would wonder whether he offered them (two Rak‘a) with Umm-ul-Kitāb (Sūrat Al-Fātiha) only?

1172. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar ﷺ: I offered with the Prophet ﷺ two Rak‘a before the Zuhr and two Rak‘a after the Zuhr prayer; two Rak‘a after Maghrib, ‘Ishā’ and the Jumu‘ah prayer. Those of the Maghrib and ‘Ishā’ were offered in his house.

1173. (Ibn Umar added:) My sister Ḥafṣa told me that the Prophet ﷺ used to offer two
light Rak‘a prayer (Sunna) after dawn (before the Iqāma of the Fajr prayer) and it was the time when I never went to the Prophet (See H. No. 618).

(30) CHAPTER. Whoever did not offer the Salah (prayer) after the prescribed compulsory (congregational) Salah.


(31) CHAPTER. To offer the Salah-ul-Duha (forenoon prayer) in journey.

1176. Narrated ‘Abdur Rahmān bin Abī Lailā: Only Umm Hãnī narrated to me that she had seen the Prophet offering the Duhā prayer. She said, “On the day of the conquest of Makkah, the Prophet entered my house, took a bath and offered eight Rak’a (of Duhā prayer). I had never seen the Prophet offering such a light Salāt (prayer) but he performed bowings and prostrations perfectly.

(32) CHAPTER. Whoever did not offer the Duhā prayer and thought it permissible (to offer it).


(33) CHAPTER. To offer the Salāt-ud-Duhā when one is not travelling.

‘Ibān bin Mālik narrated that on the authority of the Prophet.

1178. Narrated Abū Hurairah: My Khalil (friend etc.) (the Prophet) advised me to observe three things and I shall not leave them till I die: (1) To observe Saum (fast) three days every (lunar) month, (2) to offer the Duhā prayer; (3) and to offer Witr before sleeping. (See The Book of Fasting, H. No. 1981).
1179. Narrated Anas bin Sirin: I heard Anas bin Malik al-Ansari saying, “An Ansari man, who was very fat, said to the Prophet ﷺ, ‘I am unable to present myself for the *Salat* (prayer) with you.’ He prepared a meal for the Prophet ﷺ and invited him to his house. He washed one side of a mat with water and the Prophet ﷺ offered a two Rak’ah (prayer) on it.”

So-and-so, the son of so-and-so, the son of Al-Jarud asked Anas, “Did the Prophet ﷺ use to offer the *Duha* prayer?” Anas replied, “I never saw him offering (the *Duha* prayer) except on that day.”

(34) CHAPTER. To offer two Rak’ah before the Zuhr prayer.

1180. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar ﷺ: I memorized ten Rak’ah (Nawafil) from the Prophet ﷺ, two Rak’ah before the Zuhr prayer and two after it; two Rak’ah after Maghrib prayer in his house, and two Rak’ah after the Isha’ prayer in his house, and two Rak’ah before the Fajr prayer and at that time nobody would enter the house of the Prophet ﷺ.

1181. [Ibn ‘Umar ﷺ added:] Hafsa told me that the Prophet ﷺ used to offer two Rak’ah (Sunna of Fajr) after the callmaker had pronounced the *Adhan* and the dawn has come up. (See H. No. 1173).
1182. Narrated 'Aishah: The Prophet never missed four Rak'ā before the Zuhr prayer and two Rak'ā before the Fajr prayer.

(35) CHAPTER. The (optional) Salāt (prayer) before the (compulsory) Maghrib prayers.

1183. Narrated 'Abdullāh Al-Muzani: The Prophet said, “Perform (an optional) Salāt (prayer) before the (compulsory) Maghrib prayers.” He repeated it thrice and the third time, he said, “Whoever wants to offer it, can do so,” lest the people should take it as a Sunna.

1184. Narrated Marthad bin 'Abdullāh Al-Yazani: I went to 'Uqba bin 'Amir Al-Juhani and said, “Is it not surprising that Abu Tamīm offers two Rak'ā (prayer) before the Salāt-ul-Maghrib (Maghrib prayers)?” 'Uqba said, “We used to do so in the lifetime of Allāh’s Messenger.” I asked him, “What prevents you from offering it now?” He replied, “Business.”

(36) CHAPTER. To offer Nawāfil in congregation.

This is narrated by Anas and ‘Aishah.
1185. Narrated Maḥmūd bin Ar-Rabī' Al-Anṣārī, that he remembered Allāh's Messenger ﷺ and he also remembered a mouthful of water which he had thrown on his face, after taking it from a well that was in their house.

1186. Maḥmūd added that he had heard ‘Ībān bin Mālik who was present with Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ in the battle of Badr saying, “I used to lead my people at Bani Sālim in the Salāt (prayer) and there was a valley between me and those people. Whenever it rained it used to be difficult for me to cross it to go to their mosque. So I went to Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ and said, ‘I have weak eye-sight and the valley between me and my people floods during the rainy season and it becomes difficult for me to cross it; I wish you would come to my house and offer Salāt at a place so that I could take that place as (a Musalla place for offering Salāt).’ Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ said, ‘I will do so.’ So Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ and Abū Bakr came to my house the (next) morning after the sun had risen high. Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ asked my permission to let him in and I admitted him. He did not sit before saying, ‘Where do you want us to offer the Salāt (prayer) in your house?’ I pointed to the place where I wanted him to offer Salāt (prayer). So, Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ stood up for the Salāt (prayer) and started the Salāt (prayer) with Takbir and we aligned in rows behind him; and he offered two Rak‘ā (prayer), and finished them with Taslim, and we also performed Taslim with him. I detained him for a meal called Khazir which I had prepared for him. (Khazir is a special...
type of dish prepared from barley flour and meat soup). When the neighbours got the news that Allah's Messenger was in my house, they gathered till there were a great number of men in the house. One of them said, 'What is wrong with Malik, for I do not see him?' One of them replied, 'He is a hypocrite and does not love Allah and His Messenger.' On that Allah's Messenger said, 'Don't say this. Haven't you seen that he said Lâ ilâha illallah (none has the right to be worshipped but Allah) for Allah's Sake only.' The man replied, 'Allah and His Messenger know better; but by Allah, we never saw him but helping and talking with the hypocrites.' Allah's Messenger replied, 'No doubt, whoever says Lâ ilâha illallah seeking the pleasures of Allah, then Allah will save him from Hell-fire.'

Mabmud added, "I told the above narration to some people, one of whom was Abû Ayyûb, the Companion of Allah's Messenger in the battle in which he (Abû Ayyûb) died and Yazid bin Mu'awiyya was their leader in Roman Territory. Abû Ayyûb denounced the narration and said, 'I doubt that Allah's Messenger ever said what you have said.' I felt that too much, and I vowed to Allah that if I remained alive in that holy battle, I would (go to Al-Madîna and) ask 'Itbân bin Malik if he was still living in the mosque of his people. So when he returned, I assumed Ihram for Hajj or 'Umra and then I proceeded on till I reached Al-Madîna. I went to Banî Sâlim and 'Itbân bin Malik, who was by then an old blind man was leading his people in the Salât (prayer). When he finished the Salât (prayer), I greeted him and introduced myself to him and then asked him about that narration. He told that narration again in the
same manner as he had narrated it the first time.” [See Hadith No.425. Vol.I]

(37) CHAPTER. To offer the Nawāfil prayers at home.

1187. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ said, “Offer some of your Salāt (prayers) in your houses and do not make them graves.”
(1) CHAPTER. The superiority of offering As-Salāt (the prayer) in the Mosque of Makkah (Al-Masjid-al-Ḥarām), and Al-Madīnah (i.e. the Mosque of the Prophet ﷺ).

1188.Narrated Qaza’ā: I heard ʿAbdū Sa‘īd saying four words. He said, “I heard the Prophet ﷺ (saying — see Hadith No. 1197).” He participated in twelve holy battles with the Prophet ﷺ.

1189. Narrated Abū Hurairah: The Prophet ﷺ said, “Do not set out on a journey except for three mosques i.e. Al-Masjid-al-Ḥarām (at Makkah), Masjid Ar-Rasūl ﷺ (the Mosque of Allah’s Messenger ﷺ at Al-Madīnah), and Masjid Al-Aqṣā (Mosque of Jerusalem).”

1190. Narrated Abū Hurairah: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ said, “One Ṣalāt (prayer) in my mosque is better than one thousand Ṣalāt (prayer) in any other mosque except Al-Masjid-al-Ḥarām.”
(2) CHAPTER. The *Masjid Qubā‘* (the Mosque of Qubā’).

1191.Narrated Nāfi’: Ibn ‘Umar Ṭabi‘iṣṣiṣiṣṣi
(4) CHAPTER. To go to the Mosque of Qubā’, walking or riding.

1194. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar: The Prophet used to go to the Mosque of Qubā’ (sometimes) walking and sometimes riding. Added Nāfi’ (in another narration), “He then would offer two Rak‘at (prayer) (in the Mosque of Qubā’).”

(5) CHAPTER. The superiority of the place between the pulpit and the grave (of the Prophet ﷺ).

1195. Narrated ‘Abdullāh bin Zaid Al-Māzīnī: Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ said, “Between my house and my pulpit there is a garden from amongst the gardens of Paradise.”

1196. Narrated Abū Hurairah: The Prophet ﷺ said, “Between my house and my pulpit there is a garden from amongst the gardens of Paradise, and my pulpit is over my Haud, (i.e. Al-Kauthar).” (See Ḥadīth No.6588, Vol.8).
(6) CHAPTER. The mosque of Bait-ul-Maqdis (Jerusalem).

1197. Narrated Qaza'a (freed slave of) Ziyâd: I heard Abû Sa'id Al-Khudri narrating four things from the Prophet and I appreciated them very much. He said conveying the words of the Prophet:

“(1) No woman should travel on a journey of two days except with her husband or a Dhū-Mahram.

(2) No fasting is permissible on two days: (of) ‘Eid-al-Fitr and ‘Eid-al-Adha.

(3) No Salât (prayer) after two Salât, i.e., after the Fajr prayer till the sun rises and after the ‘Asr prayer till the sun sets.

(4) Not to travel (for visiting) except to three mosques, i.e. at Al-Masjid Al-Ḥarâm, the mosque of Aqṣâ (at Jerusalem) and my mosque (at Al-Madina).
(1) CHAPTER. To take the help of the hands while offering Salāt (prayer) on condition that the movement should be in line with the rules of the Salāt (prayer).

Ibn ‘Abbās ῶ. said, “A person can take the help of any portion of his body,” and Abū Ishaq took off and then put on his cap during the Salāt (prayer). And ‘Alī ῶ. used to place his right palm over the left wrist except when he wanted to scratch his skin or arrange his clothes (he would lift it then).

1198. Narrated Kuraib, the freed slave of Ibn ‘Abbās: ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Abbās ῶ. said that he stayed overnight in the house of Maimūna, the Mother of the faithful-believers ῶ. (who was his aunt). He said, “I was lying on the cushion transversally in its breadwidth direction, and Allāh’s Messenger ῶ. along with his wife lying in its lengthwise direction. Allāh’s Messenger ῶ. slept till midnight or slightly before or after it. Then Allāh’s Messenger ῶ. woke up, sat, and removed the traces of sleep by rubbing his hands over his face. Then he recited the last ten Verses of Sūrat Al-‘Imran (Sūrah No.3). Then he went towards a hanging leather water-container and performed a perfect ablution and then stood up for Salāt (prayer).” ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Abbās ῶ. added, “I got up and did the same as Allāh’s Messenger ῶ. had done and then went and stood by his (left) side. Allāh’s Messenger ῶ. then put his right hand over my head and twisted it (pulled me,
and made me stand by his right side). He offered two Rak'ā (prayer), then two Rak'ā (prayer), then two Rak'ā, then two Rak'ā (prayer), then two Rak'ā (prayer), then two Rak'ā (prayer) and then offered one Rak'ā Witr prayer. Then he lay down till the Mu'ādh-dhīn came and then he offered two light Rak'ā (Sunna of the Fajr prayer) and went out and offered the early morning Salāt (Fajr prayer)."

(2) CHAPTER. What speech is prohibited during the As-Salāt (the prayer).

1199. Narrated 'Abdullāh: We used to greet the Prophet  while he was offering As-Salāt (the prayer) and he used to answer our greetings. When we returned from An-Najāshī (the ruler of Ethiopia), we greeted him, but he did not answer us [during the Salāt (prayer)] and [after finishing the Salāt (prayer)] he said, “In Salāt (prayer) one is occupied (with a more serious matter).”
1200. Narrated Zaid bin Arqam: In the lifetime of the Prophet we used to speak while offering As-Salat (the prayer), and one of us would tell his needs to his companion, till the Verse, “Guard strictly the (five obligatory) As-Salawat (the prayers)” (V.2:238) was revealed. After that we were ordered to remain silent while offering Salat (prayer).

(3) CHAPTER. What is allowed for the men as regards the saying of Subhan Allah and Alhamdulillah during As-Salat (the prayer).

1201. Narrated Sahil bin Sa’d: The Prophet went out to affect a reconciliation between the tribes of Bani ‘Amr bin ‘Auf and the time for the Salat (prayer) became due; Bilal went to Abu Bakr and said, “The Prophet is detained. Will you lead the people in the Salat (prayer)?” Abu Bakr replied, “Yes, if you wish.” So, Bilal pronounced the Iqama and Abu Bakr led the Salat (prayer). In the meantime the Prophet came crossing the rows [of the people offering Salat (prayer)] till he stood in the first row and the people started clapping. Abu Bakr never looked hither and thither during the Salat (prayer), but when the people clapped too much, he looked back and saw the Prophet in the (first) row. The Prophet waved him to remain at his place, but Abu Bakr raised both his hands and said: Al-Hamdu-lillah (i.e. all the praises be to Allah) and then retreated and the Prophet went forward and led the Salat (prayer). (See Hadith No. 1203 & 1204).
(4) CHAPTER. Whoever named some people or greeted somebody during As-Salāt (the prayers) because of ignorance.

1202. Narrated ‘Abdullãh bin Mas‘ûd: We used to say the greeting, name and greet each other in As-Salāt (the prayer).

Allâh’s Messenger heard it and said:


[All the compliments are for Allâh and all the Salawât (prayers etc.) and all the good things (are for Allâh). Peace be on you, O Prophet, and Allâh’s Mercy and Blessings (be on you). And peace be on us and on the good (pious) slaves – worshippers of Allâh. I testify that none has the right to be worshipped but Allâh; and I also testify that Muḥammad is His slave and His Messenger].

So, when you have said this, then you have surely sent the greetings to every good (pious) slave – worshipper of Allâh, whether he be in the heavens or on the earth.”

(5) CHAPTER. Clapping [during the Salât (prayer)] is permissible only for women.

1203. Narrated Abû Hurairah: The Prophet said, “The saying Subhãn Allâh(1) is for men and clapping is for women.” [If something happens in the Salât (prayer), the men can invite the attention of the Imãm by saying Subhãn Allâh, and

(1) (H.1203) Subhãn Allâh: See glossary.
women, by clapping their hands].

1204. Narrated Sahl bin Sa‘d: The Prophet said, “The saying Subhān Allāh is for men and clapping is for women.”

(6) CHAPTER. Whoever came back or went forward during the Salāt (prayer) because of some urgent need.

This has been narrated by Sahl bin Sa‘d on the authority of the Prophet.

1205. Narrated Anas bin Malik: While Abū Bakr was leading the people in the Fajr prayer on a Monday, the Prophet surprised them suddenly having lifted the curtain of ‘Aishah’s house, and looked at them while they were standing in rows and smiled. Abū Bakr tried to retreat back thinking that Allah’s Messenger wanted to come out for the Salāt (prayer). The attention of the Muslims was diverted from the Salāt (prayer) because they were delighted to see the Prophet. The Prophet waved his hand to them to complete their Salāt (prayer), then he went back into the room and let down the curtain. The Prophet expired on that very day.

(7) CHAPTER. If a mother calls her son while he is offering As-Salāt (the prayer).

1206. Narrated Abū Hurairah: Allah’s Messenger said, “A woman called
her son while he was in his hermitage and said, ‘O Juraij!’ He said, ‘O Allah, my mother (is calling me) and (I am offering) my Salāt (prayer) (what shall I do)?’ She again said, ‘O Juraij!’ He said again, ‘O Allah! My mother (is calling me) and (I am offering) my Salāt (prayer) (what shall I do)?’ She again said, ‘O Juraij!’ He again said, ‘O Allah! My mother (is calling me) and (I am offering) my Salāt (prayer) (what shall I do)?’ She said, ‘O Allah! Don’t let Juraij die till he sees the faces of prostitutes.’ A shepherdess used to come by his hermitage for grazing her sheep and she gave birth to a child. She was asked whose child that was, and she replied that it was from Juraij and that he had come out from his hermitage. Juraij said, ‘Where is that woman who claims that her child is from me?’ (When she was brought to him along with the child), Juraij asked the child, ‘O Babūs(1), who is your father?’ The child replied, ‘The shepherd.’” (See Hadith No. 2482, Vol.3).

(8) CHAPTER. The levelling of small stones during As-Salāt (the prayer) (in front of the forehead).

1207. Narrated Mu‘āqīb: The Prophet said, “If you have to do so, then do it once.”

(9) CHAPTER. Spreading the clothes over the site of prostration while in As-Salāt (the prayer).

We used to offer Salāt (prayer) with the Prophet ﷺ in scorching heat, and if someone of us could not put his face on the earth (because of the heat) then he would spread his clothes and prostrate over them.

(10) CHAPTER. What kind of actions are permissible during As-Salāt.

1209. Narrated 'Āishah ﷺ: I used to stretch my legs towards the Qiblah of the Prophet ﷺ while he was offering Salāt (prayer); whenever he prostrated he touched me, and I would withdraw my legs, and whenever he stood up, I would restretch my legs.

1210. Narrated Abū Hurairah ﷺ: The Prophet ﷺ once offered the Salāt (prayer) and said, "Satan came in front of me and tried to interrupt my Salāt (prayer), but Allāh gave me an upper hand on him and I choked him. No doubt, I thought of tying him to one of the pillars of the mosque till you get up in the morning and see him. Then I remembered the statement of Prophet Sulāman (Solomon) ﷺ, 'My Lord! Forgive me, and bestow upon me a kingdom such as shall not belong to any other after me... (V.38:35).’ Then Allāh made him (Satan) return with his head down (humiliated)."
(11) CHAPTER. If an animal runs away while one is in As-Salāt (the prayer).

Qatada said, "If a thief takes away the clothes of a person in Salāt (prayer) then he can leave the Salāt (prayer) and follow the thief."

1211. Narrated Al-Azraq bin Qais: We were at Al-Ahwāz fighting the Al-Harūriya (tribe). While I was at the bank of a river a man was offering Salāt (prayer) and the reins of his animal were in his hands and the animal was struggling and he was following the animal. (Shu'ba, a subnarrator, said that the man was Abū Barza Al-Aslāmi). A man from the Khawārij said, "Oh Allah! Be harsh to this Sheikh." And when the Sheikh (Abū Barza) finished his Salāt (prayer), he said, "I heard your remark. No doubt, I participated with Allah's Messenger in six or seven or eight Ghazawāt (holy battles) and saw his leniency, and no doubt, I would rather retain my animal than let it return to its stable, as it would cause me much trouble."

1212. Narrated 'Āishah: Once the sun eclipsed and Allah's Messenger stood up for the Salāt (prayer) and recited a very long Sūrah and then bowed for a long while and then raised his head and started reciting another Sūrah. Then he prostrated (twice) and did the same in the second Rak'a.
and then said, “These (lunar and solar eclipses) are two signs from amongst the signs of Allâh; and if you see them, offer Salât till the eclipse has cleared. No doubt, while standing at this place I saw everything promised to me by Allâh and I saw (Paradise) and I wanted to pluck a bunch (of grapes) therefrom, at the time when you saw me stepping forward. No doubt, I saw Hell (with its different parts) destroying each other when you saw me retreating and in it I saw ‘Amr bin Luhaî who started the tradition of Aṣ-Sâwaib (she-camels let loose for free pastures in the name of idols, and other false deities).”

(12) CHAPTER. What is said about blowing and spitting while in Aṣ-Ṣalât (the prayer).

And ‘Abdullâh bin ‘Amr narrated that the Prophet ﷺ during the eclipse Salât (prayer), blew during his prostration.

1213. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar ﺞ: The Prophet ﷺ saw some sputum on the wall facing the Qiblah of the mosque and became furious with the people of the mosque and said, “During the Salât (prayer), Allâh is in front of everyone of you and so he should not spit (or said, ‘He should not expectorate’).” Then he got down and scratched the sputum with his hand. Ibn ‘Umar ﺞ said (after narrating), “If anyone of you has to spit during the Salât (prayer), he should spit to his left.”
1214. Narrated Anas: The Prophet said, "Whenever anyone of you is in Salat (prayer), he is speaking in private to his Lord (Allah) and so, he should neither spit in front of him nor on his right side but to his left side under his left foot."

(13) CHAPTER. If a man claps during the Salat (prayer) because of ignorance, then his Salat (prayer) will not be invalid (rejected).
(This has been narrated by Sahl bin Sa'd on the authority of the Prophet).

(14) CHAPTER. If a person in Salat (prayer) is asked to step forward, or is requested to wait and he waits, there will be no harm therein.

1215. Narrated Sahl bin Sa'd: The people used to offer the Salat (prayer) with the Prophet with their waist-sheets tied round their necks because of the shortness of the sheets and the women were ordered not to lift their heads till the men had sat straight.

(15) CHAPTER. One should not return greetings during the Salat (prayer).

1216. Narrated ‘Abdullah: I used to greet the Prophet while he was in Aş-Salat (the prayer) and he would return my greeting, but when we returned (from Ethiopia) I greeted the Prophet (while
he was offering ِِسَلَاتْ) but he did not return the greeting, and (after finishing the ِِسَلَاتْ) he said, “In ِِسَلَاتْ one is occupied (with a more serious matter).” (See H. No. 1199).

1217. Narrated Jābir bin ‘Abdullah: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ sent me for some job and when I had finished it, I returned and came to the Prophet ﷺ and greeted him but he did not return my greeting. So, I felt so sorry that only Allah knows it and I said to myself, ‘Perhaps Allah’s Messenger ﷺ is angry because I did not come quickly,’ then again I greeted him but he did not reply. I felt even more sorry than I did the first time. Again I greeted him and he returned the greeting and said, “The thing which prevented me from returning the greeting was that I was offering ِِسَلَاتْ (prayer).” And at that time he was on his ِِرَاحةٌ (mount) and his face was not towards the ِِقِبْلَةٌ.

(16) CHAPTER. To raise the hands in ِِسَلَاتْ (prayer) because of some necessity which one encounters during the ِِسَلَاتْ (prayer).

1218. Narrated Sahl bin Sa‘d: The news about the differences amongst the people of Bani ‘Amr bin ‘AM at Quba’ reached Allah’s Messenger ﷺ and so he went to them along with some of his Companions to effect a reconciliation. Allah’s Messenger ﷺ was delayed there and the time for the ِِسَلَاتْ (prayer) became due. Bilal came to
Abū Bakr mad, and said, “O Abū Bakr! Allah’s Messenger is detained (there) and the time for the Salāt (prayer) is due. Will you lead the people in Salāt (prayer)?” Abū Bakr replied, “Yes, if you wish.” So Bilāl pronounced the Iqāma and Abū Bakr went forward and said Takbīr for the people. In the meantime, Allah’s Messenger came passing through the rows till he stood in the (first) row and the people started clapping. Abū Bakr would never look hither and thither during the Salāt (prayer) but when the people clapped much, he looked back and (saw) Allah’s Messenger. The Prophet beckoned him to carry on. Abū Bakr raised both his hands, praised and thanked Allah and retreated till he stood in the (first) row. Allah’s Messenger went forward and led the people in the Salāt (prayer). When he had completed the Salāt (prayer), he faced the people and said, “O people! Why did you start clapping when something happened to you in the Salāt (prayer)? Clapping is for women. Whenever one is confronted with something unusual in the Salāt (prayer) one should say, ‘Subḥān Allāh.’” Then the Prophet looked towards Abū Bakr and asked, “What prevented you from leading the Salāt (prayer) when I beckoned you to carry on?” Abū Bakr replied, “It does not befit the son of Abī Quḥāfa to lead the Salāt (prayer) in the presence of Allāh’s Messenger.” (See H. No. 684 and 1234).
(17) CHAPTER. Keeping the hands on the hips during *As-Salāt* (the prayers).

1219. Narrated Abū Hurairah: It is forbidden to keep the hands on the hips during *As-Salāt* (the prayer). (This is narrated by Abū Hurairah on the authority of the Prophet ﷺ).

1220. Narrated Abū Hurairah: It is forbidden to offer *Ṣalāt* (prayer) with the hands over one’s hips.

(18) CHAPTER. Thinking of something during *As-Salāt* (the prayer).

‘Umar said, “I think of organizing my troops while I am in *Ṣalāt* (prayer).”

1221. Narrated ‘Uqba bin Al-Ḥarith: I offered the ‘Aṣr prayer with the Prophet ﷺ and after finishing the *Ṣalāt* (prayer) with *Taslim* he got up quickly and went to some of his wives and then came out. He ﷺ noticed the signs of astonishment on the faces of the people caused by his speed. He then said, “I remembered while I was in my *Ṣalāt* (prayer) that a piece of gold was lying in my house and I disliked that it should remain with us throughout the night, and so I have ordered it to be distributed.”
1222. Narrated Abū Hurairah: Allah’s Messenger said, “When the Adhān for the Šalāt (prayer) is pronounced, then Satan takes to his heels passing wind so that he may not hear the Adhān and when the Mu’adh-dhīn finishes (the Adhān); he comes back. And when the Iqāma is pronounced he again takes to his heels. And when it is finished, he again comes back and continues reminding the person offering Šalāt (prayer) of things that he used not to remember when not in Šalāt (prayer), till he forgets how many Rak’a he has offered.”

Abū Salama bin ‘Abdur-Rahmān said, “If anyone of you encounters such a thing (forgetting the number of Rak’a he has offered), he should perform two prostrations (of Sahw i.e. forgetfulness) while sitting.” Abū Salama narrates this on the authority of Abū Hurairah.

1223. Narrated Abū Hurairah: People say that I narrate too many narrations of the Prophet; once I met a man (during the lifetime of the Prophet) and asked him, “Which Sūrah did Allah’s Messenger recite yesterday in the Išā (prayer)?” He said, “I do not know.” I said, “Did you not attend the Šalāt (prayer)?” He said, “Yes, (I did).” I said, “I know. He recited such and such Sūrah.”
“Sahw”: Forgetting (here it means forgetting how many Rak‘ā a person has prayed, in which case he should perform two prostrations of Sahw).

(1) CHAPTER. What is said regarding the Sahw. If someone gets up (for the third Rak‘ā without sitting) after the second Rak‘ā of a compulsory Salāt (prayer).

1224. Narrated ‘Abdullāh bin Buhaina Allah’s Messenger once led us in a Salāt (prayer) and offered two Rak‘ā and got up (for the third Rak‘ā) without sitting (after the second Rak‘ā). The people also got up with him, and when he was about to finish his Salāt (prayer), we waited for him to finish the Salāt (prayer) with Talsim but he said Takbīr before Taslim and performed two prostrations (of Sahw while sitting and then finished the Salāt (prayer) with Taslim.

1225. Narrated ‘Abdullāh bin Buhaina Allah’s Messenger got up after the second Rak‘ā of the Zuhr prayer without sitting in between (the second and the third Rak‘ā). When he finished the Salāt (prayer) he performed two prostrations (of Sahw) and then finished the Salāt (prayer) with Taslim.

(2) CHAPTER. If one offers five Rak‘ā (instead of four).

1226. Narrated ‘Abdullāh...
Once Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ offered five Rak’â in the Zuhr prayer, and somebody asked him whether there was some increase in As-Salât (the prayer). Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ said, “What is that?” He said, “You have offered five Rak’â.” So, Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ performed two prostrations (of Sahw) after Taslîm.

(3) CHAPTER. If one finishes his Salât (prayer) with Taslîm after offering two or three Rak’â (by mistake), then he should perform two prostrations (of Sahw) like ordinary prostrations of the Salât (prayer), or longer.

1227. Narrated Abû Hurairah رضي الله عنه: The Prophet ﷺ led us in the ‘Asr prayer or the Zuhr prayer and finished it with Taslîm. Dhul-Yadain said to him, “O Allâh’s Messenger! Has the Salât (prayer) been reduced?” The Prophet ﷺ asked his Companions, “Has he spoken the truth?” They replied in the affirmative. So, Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ offered two more Rak’â and then performed two prostrations (of Sahw).

Sa’d said, “I saw that ‘Urwa bin Az-Zubair had offered two Rak’â in the Maghrib prayer and finished it with Taslîm. He then talked (and when he was informed about it) he completed the rest of his Salât (prayer) and performed two prostrations (of Sahw), and said, ‘The Prophet ﷺ offered Salât (prayer) like this.’”

(4) CHAPTER. Whoever did not recite Taşhah-hud (At-Tahiyyat) after the two prostrations of Sahw.

And Anas and Al-Hasan did not recite it. And Qatada said that Taşhah-hud should not be recited (after the prostrations of Sahw).
1228. Narrated Abū Hurairah

Once Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ offered two Rakʿā and finished his ʿSalāt (prayer). So Dhul-Yadain asked him, “Has the ʿSalāt (prayer) been reduced or have you forgotten?” Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ said, “Has Dhul-Yadain spoken the truth?” The people replied in the affirmative. Then Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ stood up and offered the remaining two Rakʿā and performed Taslim, and then said Takbir and performed two prostrations like his usual prostrations, or a bit longer, and then raised (his head) up [and finished his Salāt (prayer) with Taslim].

Narraed Salama bin ‘Alqama: I asked Muḥammad (bin Sirin) whether Tashah-hud should be recited after the two prostrations of Sahw. He replied, “It is not (mentioned) in Abū Hurairah’s narration.”

(5) CHAPTER. To say Takbir in the prostrations of Sahw.

1229. Narrated Abū Hurairah

The Prophet ﷺ offered one of the evening ʿSalāt (prayer) (the subnarrator Muḥammad said, “I think that it was most probably the ‘Aṣr prayer”) and he finished it after offering two Rakʿā only. He then stood near a piece of wood in front of the mosque and put his hand over it. Abū Bakr and ‘Umar were amongst those who were present, but they dared not talk to him about that (because of excessive respect for him), and those who were in a hurry went out. They said, “Has the ʿSalāt (prayer) been reduced?” A man who was called Dhul-Yadain by the
Prophet ﷺ said (to the Prophet ﷺ), “Has the ʿĀdāt (prayer) been reduced or have you forgotten?” He said, “Neither have I forgotten, nor has the ʿĀdāt (prayer) been reduced.” He said, “Certainly you have forgotten.” So, the Prophet ﷺ offered two more Rakʿā and performed Taslim, and then said Takbir and performed a prostration (of Sahw), like his ordinary prostration or a bit longer and then raised his head and said Takbir and then put his head down and performed a (second) prostration (of Sahw) like his ordinary prostration or a bit longer, and then raised his head up and said Takbir (and then Taslim).

1230. Narrated ʿAbdullāh bin Buhaina Al-Asdi, the ally of Bani ʿAbdul-Muttalib: Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ stood up for the Zuhr prayer and he should have sat (after the second Rakʿā but he stood up for the third Rakʿā without sitting for Tashah-hud) and when he finished the Salāt (prayer) he performed two prostrations (of Sahw) and said Takbir on each prostration while sitting, before ending (the Salāt) with Taslim; and the people too performed the two prostrations with him for that sitting which he forgot.

(6) CHAPTER. When a person forgets whether he has offered three or four Rakʿā (then he should) perform two prostrations while sitting in his last Rakʿā.

1231. Narrated Abū Hurairah ﷺ: Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ said, “When the call for Salāt (prayer) is made, Satan takes to his heels passing wind so that he may not hear the Adhān. And when the call is finished he comes back, and when the Iqāma is
pronounced, Satan again takes to his heels; and when the *Iqâma* is finished he comes back again and tries to interfere with the person and his thoughts and say, ‘Remember this and that (which he has not thought of before the *Salât*),’ till the person offering *Salât* (prayer) forgets how much (*Rak'â*) he has offered. If anyone of you does not remember whether he has offered three or four *Rak'â* then he should perform two prostrations (of *Sahw*) while sitting.

\[\text{(7) CHAPTER. *Sahw* (i.e. forgetfulness) in compulsory *Salât* (prayers) and *Nawâfil*.}\]

Ibn `Abbâs narrated: `Allâh's Messenger ﷺ performed two prostrations (of *Sahw*) after the *Witr* prayer.

1232. Narrated Abû Hurairah: Allah's Messenger ﷺ said, "When anyone of you stands for the *Salât* (prayer), Satan comes and puts him in doubts till he forgets how many *Rak'â* he has offered. So, if this happens to anyone of you, he should perform two prostrations (of *Sahw*) while sitting.

\[\text{(8) CHAPTER. If a person speaks to a person offering *Salât* (prayer), and the latter beckons with his hand and listens.}\]

1233. Narrated Kuraib: I was sent to 'Aîshah by Ibn `Abbâs, Al-Miswar bin Makhrama and ‘Abdur-Rahmân bin Azhar...
They told me to greet her on their behalf and to ask her about the offering of the two Rak‘ā after the ‘Aṣr and to say to her, “We were informed that you offer those two Rak‘ā and we were told that the Prophet had forbidden offering them.” Ibn ‘Abbas said, “I along with ‘Umar bin Al-Khattab used to beat the people whenever they offered them.”

Kuraib further said: I went to ‘Aishah and conveyed her that message. ‘Aishah said, “Go and ask Umm Salama about them.” So I returned and informed them about her statement. They then told me to go to Umm Salama with the same question with which they had sent me to ‘Aishah. Umm Salama replied, “I heard the Prophet forbidding them. Later I saw him offering them immediately after he had offered the ‘Aṣr. He then entered my house at a time when some of the Anṣārī women from the tribe of Bani Ḥārām were sitting with me, so I sent my slave-girl to him having said to her, ‘Stand beside him and tell him that Umm Salama says to you: ‘O Allah’s Messenger! I have heard you forbidding the offering of these (two Rak‘ā after the ‘Aṣr prayer) but I have seen you offering them. If he waves his hand then wait for him.’ The slave-girl did that. The Prophet beckoned her with his hand and she waited for him. When he had finished the Salāt (prayer) he said, ‘O daughter of Abi Umaiyya! You have asked me about the two Rak‘ā after the ‘Aṣr prayer. The people of the tribe of ‘Abdul-Qais came to me and made me busy and I could not offer the two Rak‘āt after the Zuhr prayer. These (two Rak‘ā that I have just offered) are for those (missed) ones.”’
(9) CHAPTER. Beckoning during the \textit{Salát} (prayer) [by a person in \textit{Salát}].

\begin{itemize}
\item Narrated Kuraib: “Umm Salama said as above on the authority of the Prophet ﷺ.
\end{itemize}

\begin{itemize}
\item 1234. Narrated Sahl bin Sa’d As-Sa’idi رضي الله عنه: The news about the differences amongst the people of Bani ‘Amr bin ‘Auf reached Allah’s Messenger ﷺ and, so, he went to them along with some of his Companions to effect a reconciliation between them. Allah’s Messenger ﷺ was delayed there, and the time for the \textit{Salát} (prayer) became due. Bilāl went to Abū Bakr رضي الله عنه and said to him, “Allah’s Messenger ﷺ has been delayed (there) and the time of \textit{Salát} (prayer) is due. So, will you lead the people in \textit{Salát} (prayer)?” Abū Bakr said, “Yes, if you wish.” Bilāl pronounced the \textit{Iqama} and Abū Bakr رضي الله عنه went forward and said \textit{Takbir} for the people. In the meantime Allah’s Messenger ﷺ came passing through the rows (of the people offering \textit{Salát}) and stood in the (first) row and the people started clapping. Abū Bakr رضي الله عنه would never look hither and thither during his \textit{Salát} (prayer) but when the people clapped much, he looked back and (saw) Allah’s Messenger ﷺ. The Prophet ﷺ beckoned him to carry on. Abū Bakr رضي الله عنه raised both his hands, praised and thanked Allah, and retreated till he stood in the (first) row. Allah’s Messenger ﷺ went forward and led the people in the \textit{Salát} (prayer). When he completed the \textit{Salát} (prayer) he faced the people and said, “O people! Why did you start clapping when
something unusual happened to you in the *Salāt* (prayer)? Clapping is only for women. So whenever one is confronted with something unusual in the *Salāt* (prayer) one should say, 'Subḥān-Allāh', for there is none who will not turn round on hearing him saying *Subḥān-Allāh*. (Then turning towards Abū Bakr, he said) O Abū Bakr! What prevented you from leading the people in the *Salāt* (prayer) when I beckoned you to do so?” Abū Bakr replied, “How dare the son of Abū Qubāfa lead the *Salāt* (prayer) in front of Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ?” (See H. No. 684 and 1218).

1235. Narrated Asmā’: I went to ‘Āishah رضي الله عنها and she was offering *Salāt* (prayer) while standing and the people, too, were standing (offering *Salāt*). So I said, “What is the matter with the people?” She beckoned with her head towards the sky. I said, “(Is there) a sign?” She nodded intending to say, “Yes.”

1236. Narrated ‘Āishah رضي الله عنها the wife of the Prophet ﷺ: Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ during his illness offered *Salāt* (prayer) in his house sitting, whereas some people followed him standing, but the Prophet ﷺ beckoned them to sit down. On completion of the *Salāt* (prayer) he said, “The *Imām* is to be followed. So, bow when he bows, and raise
your head, when he raises his head." (See Hadith No. 689, Vol. 1 for taking the verdict).
(1) CHAPTER. What is said about funerals, and those whose last words were: *Lā ilāha illallāh* (none has the right to be worshipped but Allāh).

Wahab bin Munabbih was asked, “Isn’t the saying: *Lā ilāha illallāh* (none has the right to be worshipped but Allāh), the key of Paradise?” He replied in the affirmative, and said, “There is no key without teeth, and if you have the key which has teeth, it will open it for you, and if it is without teeth, then it will not open it for you.”

1237. Narrated Abū Dhar: Allāh’s Messenger said, “Someone came to me from my Lord (Allah) and gave me the good tidings that whosoever of my followers dies worshipping none (in any way) along with Allāh, he will enter Paradise.” I asked, “Even if he committed illegal sexual intercourse (adultery) and theft?” He replied, “Even if he committed illegal sexual intercourse (adultery) and theft.”

1238. Narrated ‘Abdullāh: Allāh’s Messenger said, “Whosoever dies worshipping others along with Allāh will definitely enter the Fire.” I said, “Whosoever dies worshipping none along with Allāh will definitely enter Paradise.”
(2) CHAPTER. The order of following the funeral procession.

1239. Narrated Al-Bara' bin 'Azib: Allah's Messenger ordered us to do seven things and forbade us from doing other seven things. He ordered us:
1. to follow the funeral procession,
2. to visit the sick,
3. to accept invitations,
4. to help the oppressed,
5. to return the greetings, and
6. to reply to the sneezer: [saying “Yarhamu-ka-Allah (may Allah be Merciful to you),” provided the sneezer says, “Alhamdu-lillah”].

He forbade us to use silver utensils (and dishes) and to wear golden rings, silk (clothes), Dibaj (pure silk cloth), Qussi and Istabraq (two kinds of silk cloths).

1240. Narrated Abu Hurairah: I heard Allah's Messenger saying, "The rights of a Muslim on a Muslim are five:
1. To return the greetings,
2. to visit the sick,
3. to follow the funeral processions,
4. to accept invitation and
5. to reply to the sneezer. (See Hadith No.1239)."
(3) CHAPTER. Visiting the deceased person after he has been put in his shroud.

1241, 1242. Narrated 'Aishah: Abū Bakr came riding his horse from his dwelling place in Aṣ-Ṣunḥ. He got down from it, entered the mosque and did not speak with anybody till he came to me and went directly to the Prophet, who was covered with a blanket with markings on it. Abū Bakr uncovered his face. He knelt down and kissed him and then started weeping and said, “Let my father and my mother be sacrificed for you, O Allah’s Prophet! Allah will not combine two deaths on you. You have died the death which was written for you.”

Narrated Abū Salama: Ibn ‘Abbās said, “Abū Bakr came out and ‘Umar was addressing the people, and Abū Bakr told him to sit down but ‘Umar refused. Abū Bakr again told him to sit down but ‘Umar again refused. Then Abū Bakr recited the Tashah-hud (i.e. none has the right to be worshipped but Allah and Muhammad is Allah’s Messenger) and the people attended to Abū Bakr and left ‘Umar. Abū Bakr said, “Ammā ba’du, whoever amongst you worshipped Muhammad, then Muhammad is dead, but whoever worshipped Allah, Allah is Alive and will never die. Allah said: Muhammad is no more than a Messenger and indeed (many) Messengers have passed away before him. If he dies or is killed, will you then turn back on your heels (as disbelievers)?… (up to) are grateful.’” (V.3:144) (The narrator added, “By Allah, it was as if the people never knew that Allah had revealed this Verse before till Abū Bakr recited it and then whoever heard it, started reciting it.”)
1243. Narrated Khārija bin Zaid bin Thabit: Umm Al-‘Ala’, an Anṣārī woman who gave the Bai‘āh (pledge) to the Prophetﷺ, said to me, “The emigrants were distributed amongst us by drawing lots and we got in our share ‘Uthmān bin Ma‘ūn. We made him stay with us in our house. Then he suffered from a disease which proved fatal. When he died and was given a bath and was shrouded in his clothes, Allah’s Messengerﷺ came, I said, ‘May Allah be Merciful to you, O Abu As-Sa‘ib! I testify that Allah has honoured you’. The Prophetﷺ said, ‘How do you know that Allah has honoured him?’ I replied, ‘O Allah’s Messenger! Let my father be sacrificed for you! On whom else shall Allah bestow His Honour?’ The Prophetﷺ said, ‘No doubt, death came to him. By Allah, I too wish him good, but by Allah, I do not know what Allah will do with me though I am Allah’s Messenger’. She said, “By Allah, I will never attest the piety of anyone after that.”
1244. Narrated Jābir bin ‘Abdullāh: When my father was martyred, I lifted the sheet from his face and wept and the people forbade me to do so but the Prophet did not forbid me. Then my aunt Fāṭima began weeping and the Prophet said, “It is all the same whether you weep or not. The angels were shading him continuously with their wings till you shifted him (from the field).”

(4) CHAPTER. A man who informs the relatives of the deceased person (of his death) by himself.

1245. Narrated Abū Hurairah: Allāh’s Messenger informed (the people) about the death of An-Najāshī on the very day he died. He went towards the Musāllā [place for offering Salāt (prayer)] and the people stood behind him in rows. He said four Takbir\(^{(1)}\) (i.e., offered the funeral Salāt).

---

\(^{(1)}\) See the footnote of chapter 64 and Hadith No. 1333.
1246. Narrated Anas bin Malik: The Prophet said, “Zaid took over the flag and was martyred. Then it was taken by Ja’far who was martyred as well. Then ‘Abdullah bin Rawâha took the flag but he too was martyred — and at that time the eyes of Allâh’s Messenger were overflowing with tears. Then Khâlid bin Al-Walid took the flag without being nominated as a chief (beforehand) and was blessed with victory.”

(5) CHAPTER. What is said regarding conveying the news of the funeral (procession).

Narrated Abu Hurairah: Once the Prophet said (regarding a deceased person), “Why did you not inform me (about her or his death)?”

1247. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbâs: A person died and Allâh’s Messenger used to visit him. He died at night and (the people) buried him at night. In the morning they informed the Prophet about his death. He said, “What prevented you from informing me?” They replied, “It was night and it was a dark night and so we disliked to trouble you.” The Prophet went to his grave and offered the (funeral) prayer.
23. The superiority of the person whose child dies and he faces the event with patience hoping for Allah’s reward.

And the Statement of Allah ﷺ:

...Give glad tidings to As-Sâbirûn (the patient). (V.2:155)

1248. Narrated Anas ﭽ: The Prophet ﷺ said, “A Muslim whose three children die before the age of puberty will be granted Paradise by Allah due to His Mercy for them.”

1249. Narrated Abû Sa‘îd Z: The women requested the Prophet ﷺ, “Please fix a day for us (to preach).” So the Prophet ﷺ preached them and said, “A woman whose three children died would be screened from the (Hell) Fire by them,” Hearing that, a woman asked, “If two died?” The Prophet ﷺ replied, “Even two would screen her from the (Hell) Fire.”

1250. And Abû Hurairah added, “Those children should be below the age of puberty.”

1251. Narrated Abû Hurairah ﭽ: The Prophet ﷺ said, “No Muslim whose three children died will go to the (Hell) Fire except for Allah’s Oath (i.e. everyone has to pass over the bridge on the Hell-fire).”
And Abū Abdullāh said: There is not one of you but will pass over it (Hell) . . .” (V.19:71)

(7) CHAPTER. The saying of a man to a woman at the grave, “Be patient.”

1252. Narrated Anas bin Mālik Z: The Prophet ﷺ passed by a woman who was sitting and weeping beside a grave and said to her, “Fear Allāh and be patient.”

(8) CHAPTER. The bath of a dead (Muslim) and his ablution with water and Sidr (lote-tree leaves).

And Iblān ‘Umar applied Ḥanāfī (a kind of scent) to the dead body of the son of Sa’īd bin Zaid and carried it and then offered the funeral prayers, but he did not perform ablution. Ibn ‘Abbās said, “A Muslim never becomes Najās (impure) whether dead or alive.” And Sa’d said, “If he had been impure then I would not have touched him.” And the Prophet ﷺ said, “A faithful believer never becomes Najās (impure).”

1253. Narrated Umm ‘Aṭiyya Al-Anṣāriya: Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ came to us when his daughter died and said, “Wash her, three, or five times or more, if you see it necessary, with water and Sidr (lote-tree leaves) and then apply camphor, or some camphor at the end; and when you finish, notify me.” So when we finished it, we informed him and he gave us his waist-sheet and told us to shroud the dead body in it.
(9) CHAPTER. It is desirable to wash (the dead body) for an odd number of times.

1254. Narrated Umm 'Atiyya: Allâh's Messenger ﷺ came to us and we were giving a bath to his (dead) daughter and said, "Wash her three, five or more times with water and Sidr (Nabiq - lote-tree leaves) and sprinkle camphor on her at the end; and when you finish, notify me." So when we finished, we informed him and he gave us his waist-sheet and told us to shroud her in it.

Ayyûb said that Hafsa narrated to him a narration similar to that of Muhammad in which it was said that the bath was to be given for an odd number of times, and the numbers 3, 5 or 7 were mentioned. It was also said that they were to start with the right side and with the parts which were washed in ablution, and that Umm 'Atiyya also mentioned, "We combed her hair and divided them in three braids."

(10) CHAPTER. To start from the right side while giving a bath to a dead body.

1255. Narrated Umm 'Atiyya: Allâh's Messenger ﷺ, concerning his (dead) daughter's bath, said, "Start with the right side of the body and wash it in ablution, and then wash the rest of the body."
side, and the parts which are washed in ablution.”

(11) CHAPTER. (To start with) the parts of the dead body which are washed in ablution.

1256. Narrated Umm ‘Atiyya

When we washed the deceased daughter of the Prophet ﷺ, he said to us, while we were washing her, “Start the bath from the right side and from the parts which are washed in ablution.”

(12) CHAPTER. Can a woman be shrouded in the waist-sheet of a man?

1257. Narrated Umm ‘Atiyya

The daughter of the Prophet ﷺ expired, and he said to us, “Wash her three, or five times, or more if you see it necessary, and when you finish, notify me.” So, (when we finished) we informed him and he unfastened his waist-sheet and told us to shroud her in it.

(13) CHAPTER. To sprinkle camphor on the dead body as the last thing (before shrouding).

1258. Narrated Muḥammad: Umm ‘Atiyya ﷺ said, “One of the daughters of the Prophet ﷺ died and he
came out and said, ‘Wash her three, or five times or more, if you think it necessary, with water and Sidr (Nabiq — lot tree leaves), and last of all sprinkle camphor (or some camphor over her before shrouding) and when you finish, inform me.’’ Umm ‘Atiyya added, “When we finished we informed him and he gave us his waist-sheet and said, ‘Shroud her in it.’”

1259. Umm ‘Atiyya (in another narration) added, “The Prophet ﷺ said, ‘Wash her three, five or seven times or more, if you think it necessary.’” Hafsa said that Umm ‘Atiyya had also said, “We entwined her head-hair into three braids.”

(14) CHAPTER. To undo the hair of a (dead) female.

And Ibn Sirīn said, “There is no harm in undoing the hair of a (dead) female.”

1260. Narrated Hafsa bint Sirīn: Umm ‘Atiyya said that they had entwined the head-hair of the daughter of Allah’s Messenger ﷺ in three braids. They first undid her hair, washed and then entwined it in three braids.”

(15) CHAPTER. How to shroud a dead body.

And Al-Ḥasan said, “The fifth piece of cloth is for tying the thighs and hips and it...
should be outside the shroud.

1261. Narrated Ibn Sirin: Umm 'Atiyā [an Anṣārī woman who gave the Bai'ah (pledge) to the Prophet ﷺ] came to Baṣrah to visit her son, but she could not find him. She narrated to us, “The Prophet ﷺ came to us while we were giving bath to his (dead) daughter, he said, ‘Wash her three times, five times or more, if you think it necessary, with water and Sīdr (Nabīq - lote-tree leaves), and last of all put camphor, and when you finish, notify me.’” Umm 'Atiyā added, “After finishing, we informed him and he gave us his waist-sheet and told us to shroud her in it and did not say more than that.”

1262. Narrated Umm 'Atiyā: We entwined the head-hair of the dead daughter of the Prophet ﷺ into three braids. Waki' said that Sufyān said, “One braid was entwined in front and the other two were entwined on the sides of the head.”
(17) CHAPTER. To make the hair of a (dead) woman fall at her back.

1263. Narrated Umm 'Atiyah: One of the daughters of the Prophet expired and he came to us and said, "Wash her with (water and) Sidr (Nabiq — lote-tree leaves) for odd number of times, i.e., three, five or more, if you think it necessary, and in the last, put camphor or (some camphor on her), and when you finish, notify me." So when we finished we informed him. He gave his waist-sheet to us (to shroud her). We entwined the head-hair (of the deceased girl) in three braids and made them fall at her back.

(18) CHAPTER. White cloth for the shroud.

1264. Narrated 'Aishah: "Allah's Messenger was shrouded in three Yemenite white Sahuliyya (pieces of cloth) of cotton, and in them there was neither a shirt nor a turban."

(19) CHAPTER. Shrouding in two pieces of cloth.

1265. Narrated Ibn 'Abbas: While a man was riding (his mount) at 'Arafat, he fell down from it (his mount) and broke his neck or his neck was crushed by it (and died). The Prophet said, "Wash him with water and Sidr (Nabiq — lote-tree..."
leaves), and shroud him in two pieces of cloth, and neither perfume him, nor cover his head, for he will be resurrected on the Day of Resurrection saying, ‘Labbaik,’ (i.e. like a pilgrim).”

(20) CHAPTER. The perfuming of a dead body with Hanût (a kind of perfume).

1266. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbas: While a man was at ‘Arafat (for Hajj) with Allah’s Messenger, he fell down from his mount and broke his neck or his neck was crushed by it (and he died). So Allah’s Messenger said, “Wash him with water and Sidr (Nabiq — lote-tree leaves) and shroud him in two pieces of cloth and neither perfume him, nor cover his head, for Allah will resurrect him on the Day of Resurrection and he will be saying Labbaik.”

(21) CHAPTER. How to shroud a Muhrim (one assuming the Ihram state for Hajj or ‘Umra).

1267. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbas: A man was killed by his camel while we were with the Prophet and he was a Muhrim. So the Prophet said, “Wash him with water and Sidr, and shroud him in two pieces of cloth; and neither perfume him nor cover his head, for Allah will resurrect him on the Day of Resurrection and he will be saying Labbaik.”
1268. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbãs : A man fell from his mount (and died) while he was with the Prophet at ‘Arafât. The Prophet said, “Wash him with water and Sidr and shroud him in two pieces of cloth and neither perfume him nor cover his head, for he will be resurrected on the Day of Resurrection saying Labbaik.”

1269. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar : When ‘Abdulläh bin Ubaï (the chief of hypocrites) died, his son came to the Prophet and said, “O Allâh’s Messenger! Please give me your shirt to shroud him in it, offer his funeral prayer and ask for Allâh’s forgiveness for him.” So, Allâh’s Messenger gave his shirt to him and said, “Inform me (when the funeral is ready) so that I may offer the funeral prayer.” So, he informed him and when the Prophet intended to offer the funeral prayer, ‘Umar took hold of his hand and said, “Has Allâh not forbidden you to offer the funeral prayer for the hypocrites?” The Prophet said, “I have been given the choice, for Allâh says: ‘Whether you (O Muhammad) ask forgiveness for them (hypocrites) or ask not for forgiveness for...”
them — (and even) if you ask seventy times for their forgiveness — Allah will not forgive them…” (V.9:80) So the Prophet ﷺ offered the funeral prayer and on that the revelation came: “And never (O Muhammad ﷺ) pray (funeral prayer) for any of them (i.e. hypocrites) who dies…” (V.9:84).

1270. Narrated Jābir: The Prophet ﷺ came to (the grave of) ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Ubābah after his body was buried. The body was brought out and then the Prophet ﷺ put his saliva over the body and clothed it in his shirt.

(23) CHAPTER. To shroud (a dead) body without using a shirt.

1271. Narrated ‘Aishah: The Prophet ﷺ was shrouded in three pieces of cloth which were made of Suhūl (a type of cotton), and neither a shirt nor a turban were used.

1272. Narrated ‘Aishah: Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ was shrouded in three pieces of cloth and neither a shirt nor a turban were used.

(24) CHAPTER. Using no turban in shrouding.

1273. Narrated ‘Aishah:
Allâh’s Messenger  was shrouded in three pieces of cloth which were made of white Suhûl and neither a shirt nor a turban were used.

(25) CHAPTER. To shroud one with (the price of) all of one’s property.

And this is said by 'Âtâ, 'Az-Zuhri, and 'Amr bin Dinâr and Qatâda. 'Amr bin Dinâr added, “Also Hanût is to be taken from his property.” And İbrâhîm said, “Start with the shroud first then pay his debts, then follow his will.” And Sufyân said, “The payment for the grave (digging etc.), and for washing the body is also included in the shroud expenses.”

1274. Narrated Sa’d that his father said, “Once the meal of ‘Abdur-Rahmân bin 'Âuf was brought in front of him, and he said, ‘Mus’âb bin 'Umair was martyred and he was better than I, and he had nothing except his Burda (a black square narrow dress) to be shrouded in. Hamza or another person was martyred and he was also better than I and he had nothing to be shrouded in except his Burda. No doubt, I fear that the rewards of my deeds might have been given early in this world.” Then he started weeping.

(26) CHAPTER. If there is nothing except one piece of cloth (for shrouding).

1275. Narrated İbrâhîm: Once a meal was brought to ‘Abdur-Rahmân bin
and he was fasting. He said, "Muṣ'ab bin 'Umair was martyred and he was better than I and was shrouded in his Burda and when his head was covered with it, his legs became bare, and when his legs were covered his head got uncovered. Ḥamza was martyred and was better than I. Now the worldly wealths have been bestowed upon us (or said a similar thing). No doubt, I fear that the rewards of my deeds might have been given earlier in this world." Then he started weeping and left his food.
(28) CHAPTER. (If) somebody prepared his shroud (before his death) (in the lifetime of the Prophet ﷺ and the Prophet ﷺ did not object to that).

1277. Narrated Sahl: A woman brought a woven Burda (sheet) having frilled border to the Prophet ﷺ. Then Sahl asked them whether they knew what is Burda, they said that Burda is a cloak and Sahil confirmed their reply. Then the woman said, “I have woven it with my own hands and I have brought it so that you may wear it.” The Prophet ﷺ accepted it, and at that time he was in need of it. So he (ﷺ) came out wearing it as his waist-sheet. A man praised it and said, “Will you give it to me? How nice it is!” The other people said, “You have not done the right thing as the Prophet ﷺ is in need of it and you have asked for it when you know that he never turns down anybody’s request.” The man replied, “By Allah, I have not asked for it to wear it but to make it my shroud.” Later he was shrouded in it.

(29) CHAPTER. (Is it permissible for)

women to accompany the funeral procession?

1278. Narrated Umm ‘Atiyah: We were forbidden to accompany funeral processions but not strictly.
(30) CHAPTER. The mourning of a woman for a dead person other than her husband.

1279. Narrated Muhammad bin Sirin: One of the sons of Umm 'Atiyya died, and when it was the third day, she asked for a yellow perfume and put it over her body, and said, "We were forbidden to mourn for more than three days except for our husbands."

1280. Narrated Zainab bint An Salama: When the news of the death of Abū Sufyān reached from Sham, Umm Ḥabība on the third day, asked for a yellow perfume and scented her cheeks and forearms and said, "No doubt, I would not have been in need of this, had I not heard the Prophet saying: 'It is not legal for a woman who believes in Allāh and the Last Day to mourn for more than three days for any dead person except her husband, for whom she should mourn for four months and ten days.'"

1281. Narrated Zainab bint Abī Salama: I went to Umm Habība, the wife of Prophet, who said, "I heard the Prophet saying, 'It is not legal for a woman who believes in Allāh and the Last Day to mourn for any dead person for more than three days"
except for her husband, (for whom she should mourn) for four months and ten days.’”

1282. Later I went to Zainab bint Jahsh when her brother died; she asked for some scent, and after using it she said, “I am not in need of scent, but I heard Allah’s Messenger ﷺ saying, ‘It is not legal for a woman who believes in Allah and the Last Day to mourn for more than three days for any dead person except her husband, (for whom she should mourn) for four months and ten days.’”

(31) CHAPTER. Visiting the graves.

1283. Narrated Anas bin Mālik ﷺ: The Prophet ﷺ passed by a woman who was weeping beside a grave. He told her to fear Allah and be patient. She said to him, “Go away, for you have not been afflicted with a calamity like mine.” And she did not recognize him. Then she was informed that he was the Prophet ﷺ. So she went to the house of the Prophet ﷺ and there she did not find any guard. Then she said to him, “I did not recognize you.” He ﷺ said, “Verily, the patience is at the first stroke of a calamity.”

(32) CHAPTER. The statement of the Prophet ﷺ: “The deceased is punished because of the weeping (with wailing) of
some of his relatives, if wailing was the
custom of that dead person.”

This is in agreement with the Statement of
Allāh (swt) “. . . .Ward off yourself and your
families against a Fire (Hell) whose fuel is
men and stones…” (V.66:6). And the
Prophet ﷺ said, “All of you are guardians
and responsible for your wards.” If that
(wailing) was not his custom, as ‘Āishah
r.a. (quoting the Qur’an) said: “And no
bearer of burdens shall bear the burden of
another.” (V.6:164) “And if one heavily
laden calls another to (bear) his load,
nothing of it will be lifted…” (V.35:18).
And what is said regarding the permission
of weeping without wailing, and the Prophet ﷺ
said, “Not a person is murdered unjustly but
the first son of Ādam (who did this crime first
of all) will have a share of the crime of his
murdering because he was the first to start
the tradition of murdering.”

1284. Narrated Usāma bin Zaid
رَضِيَ اللَّهُ عَنْهُما: The daughter of the Prophet ﷺ sent (a
messenger) to the Prophet ﷺ requesting him
to come as her child was dying (or was
gasping), but the Prophet ﷺ returned the
messenger and told him to convey his
greeting to her and say: “Whatever Allāh
takes is for Him and whatever He gives, is for
Him, and everything with Him has a limited
fixed term (in this world) and so she should
be patient and hope for Allāh’s Reward.”
She again sent for him, swearing that he
should come. The Prophet ﷺ got up, and so
did Sa’d bin ‘Ubdāda, Mu‘ādh bin Jabal, Ubaï
bin Ka‘b, Zaid bin Thābit رضي الله عنه and
some other men. The child was brought to
Allah’s Messenger ﷺ while his breath was
disturbed in his chest (the sub-narrator thinks
that Usāma added:) as if it was a leather
water-skin. On that the eyes of the Prophet
ﷺ started shedding tears. Sa’d said, “O
Allâh’s Messenger! What is this?” He replied, “It is mercy which Allâh has lodged in the hearts of His slaves, and Allâh is merciful only to those of His slaves who are merciful (to others).”

1285. Narrated Anas bin Mâlik:
We were (in the funeral procession) of one of the daughters of the Prophet and he was sitting by the side of the grave. I saw his eyes shedding tears. He said, “Is there anyone among you who did not have sexual relation with his wife last night?” Abû Talha replied in the affirmative. And so the Prophet told him to get down in the grave. And so he got down in her grave.

1286. Narrated ’Abdullâh bin ’Ubaidullâh bin Abî Mulaika:
One of the daughters of ’Uthman died at Makkah. We went to attend her funeral procession. Ibn ’Umar and Ibn ’Abbâs were also present. I sat in between them (or said, I sat beside one of them. Then a man came and sat beside me). ’Abdullâh bin ’Umar said to ’Amr bin ’Uthmân, “Will you not prohibit crying as Allâh’s Messenger has said, ‘The dead person is tortured by the crying of his relatives.’?”
1287. Ibn ‘Abbâs  said, “‘Umar  used to say so.” Then he added narrating, “I accompanied ‘Umar  on a journey from Makkah till we reached Al-Baida’. There, he saw some travellers in the shade of a *Samura* (a kind of forest tree). He said (to me), ‘Go and see who those travellers are.’ So I went and saw that one of them was Šuhaib. I informed ‘Umar about that, who then asked me to call him. So I went back to Šuhaib and said to him, ‘Depart and proceed to the chief of the faithful believers.’ Later, when ‘Umar was stabbed, Šuhaib came weeping and saying, ‘O my brother, O my friend!’ On this ‘Umar  said to him: ‘O Suhaib! Are you weeping for me while the Prophet  said, ‘The deceased is punished because of the weeping (with loud wailing) of some of his relatives?’”

1288. Ibn ‘Abbâs  added, “When ‘Umar died I told that to ‘Aishah and she said, ‘May Allah be Merciful to ‘Umar. By Allah, Allah’s Messenger  did not say that a believer is punished by the weeping (crying aloud) of his relatives. But he said, ‘Allah increases the punishment of a disbeliever because of the weeping (crying aloud) of his relatives.’” ‘Aishah further added, “The Qur’an is sufficient for you (to clear up this point) as Allah has stated: ‘...No bearer of burdens shall bear the burden of another...’” (V.6:164). Ibn ‘Abbâs  then said, “Only Allah makes to whom He wills laugh and makes (to
whom He wills) weep." Ibn ‘Umar did not say anything after that.

1289. Narrated ‘Aishah, the wife of the Prophet ﷺ: Once, Allah’s Messenger ﷺ passed by (the grave of) a Jewess whose relatives were weeping over her. He said, ‘They are weeping (crying aloud) over her and she is being tortured in her grave’.

1290. Narrated Abü Burda that his father said: When ‘Umar was stabbed, Šuhaib started crying: ‘O my brother!’ ‘Umar said, ‘Don’t you know that the Prophet ﷺ said, ‘The deceased is tortured for the weeping (with wailing) of the living’?’

(33) CHAPTER. What (sort of) wailing over a deceased is disliked.

‘Umar said, ‘Let them weep for Abü Sulaimân (Khãlid bin Al-Wãlid) provided that they do not throw dust on their heads or cry loudly’.

1291. Narrated Al-Mughîra: I heard the Prophet ﷺ saying, “Ascribing false
things to me is not like ascribing false things to anyone else. Whosoever tells a lie against me intentionally then surely let him occupy his seat in Hell-fire." Al-Mughîrah added: I heard the Prophet ﷺ saying, "The deceased who is wailed over is tortured for that wailing."

1292. Narrated ‘Umar ьев: The Prophet ﷺ said, "The deceased is tortured in his grave for the wailing done over him."

Narrated Shu’ba ьев: The deceased is tortured for the wailing of the living ones over him.

(34) CHAPTER.

1293. Narrated Jâbir bin ‘Abdullâh رضي الله عنهما: On the day of the battle of Uhud, my father was brought and he had been mutilated and was placed in front of Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ, and a sheet was over him. I went (forward) intending to uncover my father but my people forbade me; again I wanted to uncover him but my people forbade me. Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ gave his order and he was shifted away. At that time he (ﷺ) heard the voice of a crying woman and asked, "Who is that?" They said, "It is the daughter or the sister of ‘Amr." He said, "Why does she weep? (or said: "Don’t weep"), for the angels had been shading
him with their wings till he (i.e. the body of the martyr) was shifted away.”

(35) CHAPTER. He who tears off his clothes (when afflicted with a calamity) is not from us.

1294. Narrated 'Abdulläh رضي الله عنه: The Prophet ﷺ said, “He who slaps (his) cheeks, tears (his) clothes and calls to (or follows) the ways and traditions of the Days of Ignorance is not one of us.” (See H. No. 1297).

(36) CHAPTER. The sorrow of the Prophet ﷺ for Sa'd bin Khawla.

1295. Narrated Sa’d bin Abi Waqqas رضي الله عنه: In the year of the last Ḥajj of the Prophet ﷺ I became seriously ill and the Prophet ﷺ visited me enquiring about my health. I told him, “I am reduced to this state because of illness and I am wealthy and have no inheritors except a daughter. Should I give two-third of my property in charity?” He said, “No.” I asked, “Half?” He said, “No.” then he added, “One-third, and even one third is much. You’d better leave your inheritors wealthy rather than leaving them poor, begging others. You will get a reward for whatever you spend for Allah’s sake, even for what you put in your wife’s mouth.” I said, “O Allah’s Messenger! Will I be left alone after my companions have gone?” He said, “If you are left behind, whatever good deeds you will do will up-grade you and raise you high. And perhaps you will have a long
life, so that some people will be benefitted by you while others will be harmed by you. O Allah! Complete the emigration of my Companions and do not turn them renegades." But, Allah's Messenger ﷺ felt sorry for poor Sa'd bin Khaula as he died in Makkah.” (But Sa'd bin Abi Waqqas lived long after the Prophet ﷺ).

(37) CHAPTER. Shaving the head on the falling of a calamity is forbidden.

1296. Narrated Abu Burda bin Musa: Abû Musâ got seriously ill, fainted and could not reply to his wife while he was lying with his head in her lap. When he came to his senses, he said, “I am innocent of those, of whom Allah's Messenger ﷺ was innocent. Allah's Messenger ﷺ is innocent of a woman who cries aloud (or slaps her face) who shaves her head and who tears off her clothes (on the falling of a calamity).”

(38) CHAPTER. He who slaps his cheeks is not from us.

1297. Narrated 'Abdullâh: The Prophet ﷺ said, “He who slaps (his) cheeks, tears (his) clothes and calls to (or follows) the
tradition of the Days of Ignorance is not from us.”

(39) CHAPTER. Prohibition of wailing and following the traditions of the Days of Ignorance when afflicted with a calamity.

1298. Narrated 'Abdullãh Z: The Prophet  said, “He who slaps cheeks, tears (his) clothes and calls to or follows the traditions of the Days of Ignorance is not from us.”

(40) CHAPTER. Whoever sat down and looked sad when afflicted with a calamity.

1299. Narrated 'Aishah: When the Prophet  got the news of the death of (Zaid) Ibn Ḥarīthah, Ja'far and Ibn Rawāha, he sat down and looked sad and I was looking at him through the chink of the door. A man came and told him about the crying of the women of Ja'far. The Prophet  ordered him to forbid them. The man went and told them about the crying of the women of Ja'far. The Prophet  said, “Forbid them.” So, again he went and came back for the third time and said, “O Allâh’s Messenger! By Allâh, they did not listen to us at all.” ('Aishah added): Allâh’s Messenger  ordered him to go and put dust in their mouths. I said (to that man), “May Allâh stick your nose in the dust (i.e. humiliate
you! You could neither (persuade the women to) fulfil the order of Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ nor did you relieve Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ from (his) distress.”

1300. Narrated Anas : Ṭabāṭaba’ee: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ said: “When Al-Qurra’ [the reciters of the Qur’ān (by heart)] were martyred, Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ recited Qunūt for one month, and I never saw him (i.e. Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ) so sad as he was on that day.

(41) CHAPTER. Whoever shows no signs of grief and sorrow on the falling of a calamity.

And Muḥammad bin Ka’b Al-Qurazi said, “Impatience means a bad saying or a bad thought,” and Prophet Ya’qūb (Jacob) صلى الله عليه وسلم said, “I only complain of my grief and sorrow to Allāh…” (V.12:86)

1301. Narrated Anas bin Mālik: Ṭabāṭaba’ee: One of the sons of Abū Ṭalḥa (became sick and) died and Abū Ṭalḥa at that time was not at home. When his wife saw that he was dead, she prepared him (washed and shrouded him) and placed him somewhere in the house. When Abū Ṭalḥa came, he asked, “How is the boy?” She said, “The child is quiet and I hope he is in peace.” Abū Ṭalḥa thought that she had spoken the truth. Abū Ṭalḥa passed the night and in the
morning took a bath and when he intended to
go out, she told him that his son had died.
Abū Ṭalḥa offered the (morning) Ṣalāt
(prayer) with the Prophet ﷺ and informed
the Prophet ﷺ of what had happened to
them. ʿAlāʾ’s Messenger ﷺ said, “May
Allāh bless you both concerning your
night.” (That is, may Allāh bless you with
good offsprings). ʿUmar ﷺ said, “How good
the two
equals are and how good the reward is for
those who when afflicted with calamity, say:
Innā lil-lāhi wa inna ilaihi rājiʿūn (...Truly!
To Allāh we belong and truly, to Him we
shall return). They are those on whom are
the Ṣalawāt (i.e. who are blessed and will
be forgiven) from their Lord and (they are those
who) receive His Mercy, and it is they who
are the guided-ones.” (V.2:156,157). And
the Statement of Allāh ﷺ: “And seek help
in patience and Ṣalāt (the prayer) and
truly, it is extremely heavy and hard except
for the Al-Khashiʿūn, [i.e. true believers in
Allāh – those who obey Allāh with full
submission, fear much from His
Punishment and believe in His promise
(Paradise) and in His Warning (Hell)]
(V.2:45).
1302. Narrated Anas bin Mālik: The Prophet ﷺ said, “The real patience is at the first stroke of a calamity.”

1303. Narrated Anas bin Mālik: We went with Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ to the blacksmith Abū Saif, and he was the husband of the wet-nurse of Ibrāhîm (the son of the Prophet ﷺ). Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ took Ibrâhîm and kissed him and smelled him. Later we entered Abū Saif’s house and at that time Ibrâhîm was in his last breaths, and the eyes of Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ started shedding tears. ‘Abdur Raḥmān bin ‘Auf said, “O Allâh’s Messenger, even you are weeping!” He said, “O Ibn ‘Auf, this is mercy.” Then he wept more and said, “The eyes are shedding tears and the heart is grieved, and we will not say except what pleases our Lord (Allah), O Ibrâhîm! Indeed we are grieved by your separation.”
1304. Narrated 'Abdullâh bin 'Umar: Sa'd bin Ubâda became sick and the Prophet along with 'Abdur Raḥmân bin 'Auf, Sa'd bin Abi Waqqâs and Abdullâh bin Mas'ûd visited him to enquire about his health. When he came to him, he found him surrounded by his household and he asked, "Has he died?" They said, "No, O Allah's Messenger." The Prophet wept and when the people saw the weeping of Allah's Messenger they all wept. He said, "Will you listen? Allah does not punish or bestows His Mercy for shedding tears, nor for the grief of the heart, but He punishes because of this," and he pointed to his tongue and added, "The deceased is punished for the wailing of his relatives over him." 'Umar used to beat with a stick and throw stones and put dust over the faces (of those who used to wail over the dead).

1305. Narrated 'Aishah: When the news of the martyrdom of Za'id bin Harîtha, Ja'far and 'Abdullâh bin Rawâha came, the Prophet sat down looking sad, and I was looking through the chink of the door. A man came and said, 'O Allah's...
Messenger! The women of Ja’far,” and then he mentioned their crying. The Prophet ordered him to stop them from crying. The man went and came back and said, “I tried to stop them but they disobeyed”. The Prophet ordered him for the second time to forbid them. He went again and came back and said, “They did not listen to me (or “us”, the sub-narrator Muhammad bin Haushab is in doubt as to which is right).” ‘Aishah added: The Prophet said, “Put dust in their mouths.” I said (to that man), “May Allāh stick your nose in the dust (i.e., humiliate you). By Allāh, you could neither (stop the women from crying) fulfil the order, nor did you relieve Allāh’s Messenger from (his) distress.”

1306. Narrated Umm ‘Atiyya:
At the time of giving the Bai’ah (pledge) to the Prophet one of the conditions was that we would not wail, but it was not fulfilled except by five women, and they were, Umm Sulaim, Umm Al-‘Ala’ – the daughter of Abī Sabra, the wife of Mu‘ādhdh, and two other women; or the daughter of Abī Sabra and the wife of Mu‘ādhdh and another woman.

(46) CHAPTER. Standing for the funeral procession.
1307. Narrated ‘Āmir bin Rab’ā
The Prophet ﷺ said, “Whenever you see a funeral procession, stand up till the procession goes ahead of you.” Al-Humaidi added, “Till the coffin leaves you behind or is put down.”

(47) CHAPTER. When should one sit after standing for the funeral procession?

1308. Narrated ‘Amir bin Rabî’a: The Prophet ﷺ said, “If anyone of you see a funeral procession and he is not going along with it, then he should stand and remain standing till he gets behind it, or it leaves him behind, or the coffin is put down before it goes ahead of him.”

1309. Narrated Sa’id Al-Maqburi that his father said, “While we were accompanying a funeral procession, Abû Hurairah caught hold of the hand of Marwân and they sat down before the coffin was put down. Then Abû Sa’id came and took hold of Marwân’s hand and said, ‘Get up. By Allâh, no doubt this (i.e., Abû Hurairah) knows that the Prophet ﷺ forbade us to do that.’ Abû Hurairah said, ‘He (Abû Sa’id) has spoken the truth.’

(48) CHAPTER. Whoever accompanies a funeral procession should not sit till the
coffin is put down from the shoulders of men, and if someone sits before this, then he is to be ordered to stand up.

1310. Narrated Abū Sa‘īd Al-Khudrī: The Prophet ﷺ said, “When you see a funeral procession, you should stand up, and whoever accompanies it should not sit till the coffin is put down.”

1311. Narrated Jābir bin ‘Abdullāh: A funeral procession passed in front of us and the Prophet ﷺ stood up and we too stood up. We said, “O Allah’s Messenger! This is the funeral procession of a Jew.” He said, “Whenever you see a funeral procession, you should stand up.”

1312. Narrated ‘Abdur Raḥmān bin Abī Lailā: Sahl bin Ḥunaif and Qais bin Sa‘d were sitting in the city of Al-Qadisiya. A funeral procession passed in front of them and they stood up. They were told that that funeral procession was of one of the inhabitants of the land, i.e., of a disbeliever, under the protection of Muslims. They said, “A funeral procession passed in front of the Prophet ﷺ and he stood up. When he was told that it was the coffin of a Jew, he said, “Is it not a human being?” [See the footnote of H. No.1311].

(49) CHAPTER. Standing for the funeral procession of a Jew.

(1) (H.1311) This order was cancelled by last action according to the Ḥadīth narrated by ‘Ali in Ṣaḥīḥ Muslim. See Fath Al-Bārī.
1313. As above.

1314. Narrated Abū Saʿīd Al-Khudrī: Allah's Messenger said, "When the funeral is ready and the men carry it on their shoulders, if the deceased was righteous it will say, 'Present me (hurriedly)', and if he was not righteous, it will say, 'Woe to it (me)! Where are they taking it (me)!' Its voice is heard by everything except mankind, and if he heard it he would fall unconscious.”

(50) CHAPTER. Men, and not women, are to carry the coffin.

(51) CHAPTER. Hurrying up with the coffin.

And Anas said, “Whenever you accompany a funeral procession, you should go in front, behind, to the right and to the left of the coffin.” Someone else also (said the same and) added, “Close to it.”

1315. Narrated Abū Hurairah: The Prophet said, “Hurry up with the
dead body for if it was righteous, you are forwarding it to a good thing and if it was otherwise (not righteous), then you are putting off an evil thing down your necks.”

(52) CHAPTER. The saying of the deceased while he is being carried on the bier, “Take me quickly.”

1316. Narrated Abü Sa‘īd Al-Khudrī رضي الله عنه: The Prophet said, “When a funeral is ready and the men carry it (the deceased) on their shoulders, if it was pious then it will say, ‘Present me quickly (or take me ahead)’, and if it was not pious, then it will say, ‘Woe to it (me), where are they taking it (me)?’ And its voice is audible to everything except a human being and if he heard it he would fall unconscious.”

(53) CHAPTER. Whoever aligned in two or three rows behind the Imām for a funeral Salāt (prayer).

1317. Narrated Jābir bin ‘Abdullāh رضي الله عنهما: Allāh’s Messenger offered the funeral prayer for An-Najāshī and I was in the second or third row.
(54) CHAPTER. The rows for funeral prayer.

1318. Narrated Abü Hurairah: The Prophet informed his Companions about the death of An-Najãših and then he went ahead (to lead the funeral prayer) and the people lined up behind him in rows and he said four Takbîr.

1319. Narrated Ash-Šaibânî: Ash-Ša’bî said, “I was informed by a man who saw the Prophet coming to a grave that was separate from the other graves. He aligned the people in rows and said four Takbîr.” I said, “O Abû ‘Amr! Who narrated (that) to you?” He said, “Ibn ‘Abbâs.”

1320. Narrated Jâbir bin ‘Abdullâh: The Prophet said, “Today a pious man from Ethiopia (i.e. An-Najãši) has expired, come on to offer the funeral prayer.” (Jâbir said): We lined up in rows and the Prophet offered the funeral prayer for him, and we were in rows. Jâbir added, “I was in the second row.”

(55) CHAPTER. The lining up of boys in rows with men in the funeral prayer.

1321. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbâs: Allâh’s Messenger passed by a grave of a deceased who had been buried at night. He asked, “When was this (deceased) buried?” The people said, “Yesterday.” He said,
“Why did you not inform me?” They said, “We buried him when it was dark and so we disliked to wake you up.” He (ﷺ) stood up and we lined up behind him. (Ibn ‘Abbas said): I was one of them, and the Prophet ﷺ offered the funeral prayer.

(56) CHAPTER. The legal way of offering the funeral prayer.

And the Prophet ﷺ said, “Whoever offered the funeral prayer,” and also said, “Offer the funeral prayer for your friend.” And also said, “Offer the funeral prayer for An-Najäshi.” He called it a әләәl (prayer) although there is neither bowing, prostration, nor loud recitation in it, and there are Takbîr and Taslim. Ibn ‘Umar رضي الله عنه never offered the (funeral) Salât (prayer) without ablution, nor at sunrise or at sunset and used to raise both his hands (at the time of saying Takbîr). Al-Ḥasan (Al-Basri) said, “I noticed the people (i.e. the Prophet’s Companions) regarding as the most deserving man to lead the funeral alat (prayer) the one whom they were satisfied with to lead them in compulsory alat (prayer). If a person has Ijathuh on the ‘Eid Day (during the ‘Eid prayer), or during the funeral prayer, he should look for water (to do ablution) and should not perform Tayammum. If anyone happens to pass by a funeral and the people are offering the (funeral) prayer, then it is advisable for him to join them by saying Takbîr. Ibn Al-Musajyab said, “(In funeral prayers) there are four Takbîr, whether the Salât (prayer) is offered at night or by day, in journey or at home.” Anas said, “One Takbîr for starting
the *Salāt* (prayer),” and quoting Qur‘ān he said, “And never (O Muḥammad ﷺ) pray (funeral prayer) anyone of them (hypocrites) who dies, (V.9:84)....” And in the funeral prayer there are rows and *Imām*.

1322. Narrated Ash-Shaibānī: Ash-Sha‘bī said, “Somebody who passed along with your Prophet ﷺ by a grave that was separate from the other graves informed me (saying), “The Prophet ﷺ led us (in the funeral prayer) and we aligned behind him.” We said, “O Abū ‘Amr! who told you this narration?” He replied, “Ibn ‘Abbās رضي الله عنهما.”

(57) CHAPTER. Superiority of accompanying funeral processions;

And Zaid bin Thābit رضي الله عنه said, “If you have offered (the funeral prayer) then you have paid what was due on you.” Humaid bin Hilāl said, “We do not think that it is necessary to take the permission of the relatives of the deceased to return from the funeral procession. But whoever returns after the funeral prayer will have a reward equal to one *Qirāt* (it is a great reward).”

1323. Narrated Nāfi’: Ibn ‘Umar was told that Abū Ḥurairah رضي الله عنه said, “Whoever accompanies the funeral procession will have a reward equal to one *Qirāt*.” Ibn ‘Umar said, “Abū Ḥurairah talks of an enormous reward.”

1324. ‘Aishah (رضي الله عنها) attested Abū Hurairah’s narration and said, “I heard Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ saying like that.” Ibn ‘Umar رضي الله عنه said, “Indeed we have lost numerous *Qirāt*.”
(58) CHAPTER. Whoever waits till the deceased is buried.

1325. Narrated Abū Hurairah that Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ said, “Whoever attends the funeral procession till he offers the funeral prayer for it, will get a reward equal to one Qirāt, and whoever accompanies it till burial, will get a reward equal to two Qirāt.” It was asked, “What are two Qirāt?” He replied, “Like two huge mountains.”

(59) CHAPTER. The offering of the funeral Salāt (prayer) by boys along with the men.

1326. Narrated ‘Āmir : Ibn ‘Abbās رضي الله عنهما (who was at that time a boy) said, “Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ came to a grave and the people said, ‘He or she was buried yesterday.’” Ibn ‘Abbās added, “We aligned behind the Prophet ﷺ and he offered the funeral prayer for the deceased.”
(60) CHAPTER. To offer the funeral Salāt (prayer) at a Musallā and in the mosque.

1327. Narrated Abū Hurairah: Allah's Messenger informed about the news of the death of An-Nagāsh (King of Ethiopia) on the day he expired. He said, "Ask Allāh's forgiveness for your brother."

1328. Narrated Abū Hurairah: The Prophet made them align in rows at the Musallā and said four Takbīr (offered the funeral prayer for him).

1329. Narrated 'Abdullāh bin 'Umar: The Jews brought to the Prophet a man and a woman from amongst them who have committed illegal sexual intercourse (adultery). He ordered both of them to be stoned (to death), near the place of offering the funeral prayer beside the mosque."

(61) CHAPTER. What is disliked of establishing places for worship (mosques) over the graves.
When Al-Hasan bin Al-Hasan bin ‘Ali expired, his wife pitched a tent on his grave and it remained there for one year and then was demolished. They heard a voice saying, “Have they found what they lost?” A second voice replied, “No, they returned in despair.”

1330. Narrated ‘Urwa: ‘Aishah said, “The Prophet in his fatal illness said, ‘Allah cursed the Jews and the Christians because they took the graves of their Prophets as places for worship (mosques).’” ‘Aishah added, “Had it not been for that the grave of the Prophet would have been made prominent, but I am afraid it might be taken (as a) place for worship (mosque).”

(62) CHAPTER. The offering of the funeral Salât of a woman who died during the delivery (of a child).

1331. Narrated Samura bin Jundab L: I offered the funeral Salât (prayer) behind the Prophet for a woman who had died during childbirth and he stood up by the middle of the coffin.

(63) CHAPTER. Where should the Imam stand while leading the funeral prayer of a female or a male?

1332. Narrated Samura bin Jundab L: (1) (Ch.63) For a male, Imam should stand by the head of the deceased’s coffin, and for a female Imam should stand by the middle of the coffin.
I offered the funeral prayer behind the Prophet ﷺ for a woman who had died during childbirth, and he stood up by the middle of the coffin.

(64) CHAPTER. There are four Takbir(1) in the funeral prayers.

Humaid said: “Anas led a funeral prayer and said three Takbir and then performed Taslim. When he was told about it he faced the Qiblah and said the fourth Takbir and performed Taslim (again).”

1333. Narrated Abū Hurairah: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ informed about the news of the death of An-Najashi on the day he died. He went out with us to the Musalla and we aligned in rows and he said four Takbir(1) for An-Najashi’s funeral prayer.

1334. Narrated Jābir: The Prophet ﷺ offered the funeral prayer for Ašhama An-Najashi and said four Takbir(1).

(1) (H.No.1333 and Chap.64).
   a) After the first Takbir one should recite Sūrat Al-Fatīha (سورة الفاتحة).
   b) After the second Takbir one should recite Ṣalāt upon the Prophet ﷺ. See H. No.3370.
   c) After the third Takbir one should invoke Allāh for the dead.
   d) After the fourth Takbir one should invoke Allāh for himself and other Muslims.
(65) CHAPTER. The recitation of Sūrat-al-Fātiha in the funeral Salah.

Al-Hasan said, “Recite Al-Fātiha in the funeral Salah for a child and then say:
‘Allāhumma ij-‘alhu lanā salafan fara’tan wa salafan wa ajran. (O Allāh! Make him, as the one who prepares the way for us and as a source of reward for us.)

1335. Narrated Țalha bin ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Aīf: I offered the funeral prayer behind Ibn ‘Abbās, (and he) recited Al-Fātiha and said, “You should know that it (i.e. recitation of Al-Fātiha) in the funeral prayer is the Sunna (legal way of Prophet Muḥammad ﷺ).”

(66) CHAPTER. To offer the (funeral) Salah (prayer) on the grave after the burial of the deceased.

1336. Narrated Sulaimān Ash-Shaibānī: I heard Ăsh-Sha‘bī saying, “I was told by a man, who along with the Prophet ﷺ, had passed by a grave that was separate from the other graves; that he (the Prophet ﷺ) led them in the (funeral) Salah (prayer) and they offered Salah (funeral prayer) behind him.” I said, “O Abū ‘Amr! Who narrated that to you?” He replied, “Ibn ‘Abbās رضي الله عنهم.”
1337. Narrated Abū Hurairah: A black person, a male or a female who used to clean the mosque, died. The Prophet did not know about his death. One day the Prophet remembered him and said, "What happened to that person?" The people replied, "O Allah's Messenger! He died." He said, "Why did you not inform me?" They said, "His story was so-and-so (i.e., regarded him as insignificant)." He said, "Show me his grave." Then he went to his grave and offered the funeral prayer for him.

(67) CHAPTER. A dead person hears the footsteps (of the living).

1338. Narrated Anas: The Prophet said, "When a human being is laid in his grave and his companions return and he even hears their footsteps, two angels come to him and make him sit up and ask him: 'What did you use to say about this man, Muhammad?' He will say: 'I testify that he is Allah's slave and His Messenger.' Then it will be said to him, 'Look at your place in the Hell-Fire. Allah has changed for you a place in Paradise instead of it.'" The Prophet further said, "The dead person will see both his places. But a disbeliever or a hypocrite will say to the angels, 'I do not know, but I used to say what the people used to say!' It will be said to him, 'Neither did you know nor did you take the guidance (by following the Qur'an).’ Then he will be hit

(1) (H.1338) See *Fath Al-Bârî*. This is quoted by *Musnad Al-Ahmad*.
with an iron hammer between his two ears, and he will cry, and that cry will be heard by whatever is near to him except human beings and jinn.”

(68) CHAPTER. Whoever desired to be buried in the Sacred Land or something like it.

1339. Narrated Abū Hurairah: The angel of death was sent to Mūsā (Moses) and when he came to him, Mūsā slapped him and spoiled one of his eyes. The angel went back to his Lord (Allah), and said, “You sent me to a slave who does not want to die.” Allah restored his eye and said, “Go back and tell him (i.e. Mūsā) to place his hand over the back of an ox, for he will be allowed to live for the number of years equal to the number of hairs coming under his hand.” (So the angel came to him and told him the same). Then Mūsā asked, “O my Lord! What will be then?” He said, “Death will be then.” He said, “(Let it be) now.” He asked Allah that He bring him near the Sacred Land at a distance of a stone’s throw. Allah’s Messenger said, “Were I there, I would show you the grave of Mūsā by the way near the red sand-hill.”

(69) CHAPTER. Burial at night and Abū Bakr was buried at night.
1340. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbās: The Prophet offered the funeral prayer of a man one night after he was buried, he and his Companions stood up (for the Salat — prayer). He had asked them about him before standing, saying, “Who is this?” They said, “He is so-and-so and was buried last night.” So, all of them offered the funeral prayer for him.

(70) CHAPTER. Building a mosque (a place of worship) at a grave.

1341. Narrated ‘Aishah: When the Prophet became ill, some of his wives talked about a church which they had seen in Ethiopia and it was called Māriya. Umm Salma and Umm Ḥabiba had been to Ethiopia, and both of them narrated its (the church’s) beauty and the pictures it contained. The Prophet raised his head and said, “Those are the people who, whenever a pious man dies amongst them, make a mosque (a place of worship) at his grave and then they make those pictures in it. Those are the worst creatures in front of Allah.”

(71) CHAPTER. Who may get down in the grave of a woman.

1342. Narrated Anas: We were in the funeral procession of the daughter of Allāh’s Messenger, and Allāh’s Messenger was sitting near the grave and I saw his eyes full of tears. He said, “Is there anyone amongst you who did not had sexual relation...
with his wife last night?” Abû Talha replied in the affirmative. And so, Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ told him to get down in her grave and he got down in her grave and buried her.

(72) CHAPTER. The funeral Şalât (prayer) of a martyr.

1343. Narrated Jãbir bin ‘Abdullãh رضي الله عنهما: The Prophet ﷺ collected every two martyrs of Uhud in one piece of cloth, then he would ask, “Which of them had (knew) more of the Qur’ãn?” And if one of them was pointed out for him (as having more knowledge of it), he would put that one first in the grave and say: “I will be a witness on these on the Day of Resurrection.” He ordered them to be buried with their blood on their bodies and they were neither washed nor was funeral prayer offered for them.

1344. Narrated ‘Uqba bin ‘Amir رضي الله عنه: One day the Prophet ﷺ went out and offered the funeral prayer for the martyrs of Uhud, then he went up the pulpit and said, “I will pave the way for you as your predecessor and will be a witness over you.
By Allāh! I am looking at my Haud (Tank Al-Kauthar) just now and I have been given the keys of all the treasures of the earth (or the keys of the earth). By Allāh! I am not afraid that you will worship others along with Allāh after me (my death), but I am afraid that you will fight with one another (for worldly things).” (See H. No. 6590)

(73) CHAPTER. The burial of two or three men in one grave.


(74) CHAPTER. Whoever thinks that no bath is required for the martyrs.

1346. Narrated Jābir: The Prophet  said, “Bury them (i.e. martyrs) with their blood.” (That was) on the day of the battle of Uḥud. He did not give them Ghusl (bath — by washing of the whole body).

(75) CHAPTER. Who should be put first in the Lahd (a side extension of a grave) and it is called Lahd because it is to the side. If it is
a straight one (i.e. has no side extension), it is called *Darih*.

1347. Narrated Jābir bin 'Abdullāh رضي الله عنهما: Allah's Messenger ﷺ shrouded every two men from amongst the martyrs of Uhud in one piece of cloth, and then he would ask, "Which of them had (knew) more of the Qur'ān?" And if one of them was pointed out for him (as having more knowledge of it), he would put that one first in the grave and say, "I will be a witness on these (on the Day of Resurrection)." Then he ordered them to be buried with blood on their bodies. Neither he offered their funeral prayer nor he gave them *Ghusl* (bath).

1348. Jābir bin 'Abdullāh رضي الله عنهما added: Allah's Messenger ﷺ used to ask about the martyrs of Uhud as to which of them knew more of the Qur'ān. And when one of them was pointed out as having more of it, he would put him first in the grave and then his companion. (Jābir added): My father and my uncle were shrouded in one sheet.
(76) CHAPTER. The placing of *Idhkhir* (a kind of shrub with a fragrant smell) and grass in the grave.

1349. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbās: The Prophet said, “Allāh has made Makkah a sanctuary (sacred place) and it was a sanctuary before me and will be so after me. It was made legal for me (to fight in it) for a few hours of the day. None is allowed to uproot its thorny shrubs, or to cut its trees, or to chase its game, or to pick up its fallen things except a person who announces it publicly.” On that Al-‘Abbās said (to the Prophet), “Except *Al-Idhkhir* for our goldsmiths and for our graves.” And so the Prophet added, “Except *Al-Idhkhir*."

And Abū Hurairah narrated that the Prophet said, “Except *Al-Idhkhir* for our graves and houses.” And Ibn ‘Abbās said, “For their goldsmiths and houses.”

(77) CHAPTER. Can the dead body be taken out of its grave and *Lahd* for some reason?

1350. Narrated Jābir bin ‘Abdullāh: Allāh’s Messenger came to ‘Abdullāh bin Ubaï (a hypocrite) after his death, and he has been laid in his pit (grave). He ordered (that he be taken out of the
23 - THE BOOK OF FUNERALS [AL-JANĀ'IZ]

grave), and he was taken out. Then he placed him on his knees and threw some of his saliva on him and clothed him in his (the Prophet's) own shirt. Allāh knows better (why he did so). 'Abdullāh bin Ubaī had given his shirt to Al-'Abbās to wear. Abu Hārūn said, "Allāh's Messenger at that time had two shirts, and the son of 'Abdullāh bin Ubaï said to him, 'O Allāh's Messenger! Clothe my father in your shirt which has been in contact with your skin.'" Sufyān added, "Thus people think that the Prophet clothed 'Abdullāh bin Ubaï in his shirt in lieu of what he ('Abdullāh) had done (for Al-'Abbās, the Prophet's uncle)."

1351. Narrated Jābir: When the time of the battle of Uḥud approached, my father called me at night and said, "I think that I will be the first amongst the Companions of the Prophet to be martyred. I do not leave anyone after me dearer to me than you, except Allāh's Messenger and I owe some debt and you should repay it and treat your sisters favourably (nicely and politely)." So in the morning he was the first to be martyred and was buried along with another (martyr). I did not like to leave him with the other (martyr), so I took his body out of the grave after six months of his burial and he was in the same condition as he was on the day of burial, except a slight change near his ear.

1352. Narrated Jābir: A man was buried along with my father and I did not like it till I took him (i.e. my father) out and
buried him in a separate grave.

1353. Narrated Jābir bin ‘Abdullāh: The Prophet put every two martyrs of Uḥud (in one grave) and then he would ask, “Which of them had (knew) more of the Qur‘ān?” And if one of them was pointed out for him (as having more knowledge), he would put him first in the Lahd and say, “I will be a witness on these on the Day of Resurrection.” Then he ordered them to be buried with their blood on their bodies and he did not have them washed.

(79) CHAPTER. If a boy becomes a Muslim and then dies, should a funeral prayer be offered for him? Should Islām be explained to a boy (below the age of puberty)?

And Al-Hasan, Shuraih, Ibrāhīm and Ḥatṭada said, “If one of the parents of the boy becomes a Muslim, then the boy will be with the Muslim parent.” And Ibn ‘Abbās was with his mother who was amongst the weak and the poor people, and was not with his father who was on the religion of his nation. And said, “Islām is always superior and never inferior.”

with the Prophet \( \text{with} \) a group of people to Ibn Saiyyad till they saw him playing with the boys near the hillocks of Bani Mughala. Ibn Saiyyad, at that time was nearing his puberty and did not notice (us) until the Prophet \( \text{stroked} \) him with his hand and said to him, "Do you testify that I am Allah’s Messenger?" Ibn Saiyyad looked at him and said, "I testify that you are the Messenger of illiterates." Then Ibn Saiyyad asked the Prophet \( \text{refuted} \) it and said, "I believe in Allah and His Messenger." Then he said (to Ibn Saiyyad). (1) "What do you think?" Ibn Saiyyad answered, "True people and liars visit me." The Prophet \( \text{said} \), "You have been confused as to this matter."

Then the Prophet \( \text{said} \) to him, "I have kept something (in my mind) for you, (can you tell me that?)" Ibn Saiyyad said, "It is Al-Dukh (the smoke)." (2) The Prophet \( \text{said} \), "Let you be in ignominy. You cannot cross your limits." On that ‘Umar Z \( \text{added} \), "O Allah’s Messenger! Allow me to chop his head off." The Prophet \( \text{said} \), "If he is he (i.e. Ad-Dajjal), then you cannot over-power him, and if he is not, then there is no use of murdering him." (See H. No. 3055).

1355. Ibn ‘Umar \( \text{added} \) : Later on Allah’s Messenger \( \text{once again} \) went along with Uba‘ bin Ka‘b to the date-palm

(1) (H.1354) Ibn Saiyyad: was a soothsayer. (See the footnote of Hadith No.3055, Vol.4.)
(2) (H.1354) i.e., Verse No.10 of the Sūrah-Ad-Dukhān, 44:10. (The Qur’ān).
trees (garden) where Ibn Saiyyad was staying. The Prophet wanted to hear something from Ibn Saiyyad before Ibn Saiyyad could see him, and the Prophet saw him lying, covered with a sheet and from where his murmurs were heard. Ibn Saiyyad’s mother saw Allâh’s Messenger while he was hiding himself behind the trunks of the date-palm trees. She addressed Ibn Saiyyad, “O Saf! (and that was the name of Ibn Saiyyad) Here is Muhammad.” And with that Ibn Saiyyad got up.

The Prophet said, “Had this woman left him (had she not disturbed him), then Ibn Saiyyad would have revealed the reality of his case.”

1356. Narrated Anas: A young Jewish boy used to serve the Prophet and he became sick. So, the Prophet went to visit him. He sat near his head and asked him to embrace Islâm. The boy looked at his father, who was sitting there; the latter told him to obey Abul-Qasim, and the boy embraced Islâm. The Prophet came out saying: “All the praises and thanks be to Allah Who saved the boy from the Hell-fire.”

1357. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbâs: My mother and I were among the weak and oppressed. I from among the children, and my mother from among the women.
1358. Narrated Ibn Shihab: The funeral prayer should be offered for every child, even if he were the son of a prostitute, as he was born with a true faith of Islam (i.e., to worship none but Allâh Alone). If his parents are Muslims, particularly the father, even if his mother were a non-Muslim, and if he after the delivery cries (even once) before his death (i.e., born alive) then the funeral prayer must be offered. And if the child does not cry after his delivery (i.e., born dead) then his funeral prayer should not be offered, and he will be considered as a miscarriage. Abû Hurairah narrated that the Prophet ﷺ said, “Every child is born with a true faith (i.e. to worship none but Allâh Alone), but his parents convert him to Judaism or to Christianity or to Magianism, as an animal gives birth to a perfect baby animal. Do you find it mutilated?” Then Abû Hurairah رضي الله عنه recited the holy Verses: ‘...Allâh’s Fitrah (i.e., Allâh’s Islamic Monotheism), with which He has created mankind...’ (V.30:30).

1359. Narrated Abû Hurairah: Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ said, “Every child is born on Fitrah [true faith of Islamic Monotheism (i.e. to worship none but Allâh Alone)] but his parents convert him to Judaism, Christianity or Magianism, as an animal gives birth to a perfect baby animal. Do you find it mutilated?” Then Abû Hurairah رضي الله عنه recited the holy Verses: “Allah’s Fitrah (i.e. Allâh’s Islamic Monotheism) with which He has created
mankind. No change let there be in *Khalq-illãh* (i.e. the Religion of Allãh - Islamic Monotheism), that is the Straight Religion (Islam)....” (V.30:30)

(80) CHAPTER. If *Al-Muãrik*<sup>(1)</sup> says, “*Lã ilãha illallãh*” (none has the right to be worshipped but Allãh) at the time of his death.

1360. Narrated Al-Musaiyab: When the time of the death of Abû Ṭâlib approached, Allãh’s Messenger went to him and found Abû Jahl bin Hishâm and ‘Abdullãh bin Abî Umaiyya bin Al-Mugãira by his side. Allãh’s Messenger said to Abû Ṭâlib, “0 uncle! Say: ‘*Lã ilãha illallãh*’ (none has the right to be worshipped but Allãh), a sentence with which I shall be a witness (i.e., argue) for you before Allãh.” Abû Jahl and ‘Abdullãh bin Abî Umaiyya said, “0 Abû Ṭâlib! Are you going to denounce the religion of ‘Abdul Muttalib?” Allãh’s Messenger kept on inviting Abû Ṭâlib to say it (i.e.: *Lã ilãha illallãh*) while they (Abû Jahl and ‘Abdullãh) kept on repeating their statement till Abû Ṭâlib said as his last statement, that he was on the religion of ‘Abdul Muţṭalib and refused to say: *Lã ilãha illallãh*. Then Allãh’s Messenger said, “I will keep on asking Allãh’s Forgiveness for you unless I am forbidden (by Allãh) to do so.” So Allãh revealed (the Verse) concerning him [i.e., “It is not (proper) for the Prophet and those who believe, to ask Allãh’s Forgiveness for the *Muṣãrikãn*<sup>(2)</sup> even though they be of

---

<sup>(1)</sup>*Al-Muṣãrik* (Al-Muṣãrikân): Polytheists, pagans, idolaters, and disbelievers in the Oneness of Allah and in His Messenger Muhammad .

<sup>(2)</sup> (H.1360) *Al-Muṣãrikân*: Polytheists, pagans, idolaters, and disbelievers in the=
kin, after it has become clear to them that they are dwellers of the Fire’] (V.9:113).

(81) CHAPTER. Placing a leaf of a date-palm over the grave.

And Buraida Al-Aslamî asked that two leaves of a date-palm be put on his grave. Ibn ‘Umar saw a tent made of hair (of goats) over the grave of ‘Abdur Raḥmān and said, “O Boy! Remove it from the grave for his deeds will shade him.”

And Khārîja bin Zaid said, “(I remember) when we were young during the caliphate of ‘Uthmān we used to jump over the graves and) used to consider as the best jumper the one who would jump over the grave of ‘Uthmān bin Maz‘ūn.”

‘Uthmān bin Ḥakîm said, “Khārîja caught hold of my hand and made me sit over a grave and informed me that his uncle Yazid bin Ḥabīt said, ‘Sitting over a grave is disliked for one with the purpose of doing Ḥadāth over it.’” And Nāfi’ said, “Ibn ‘Umar used to sit over the graves.” [See Fath Al-Bari].

1361. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbâs: The Prophet used once passed by two graves, and those two persons (in the graves) were being tortured. He said, “They are being tortured not for a great thing (to avoid). One of them never saved himself from being soiled with his urine, while the other was going about with calumnies (to make enmity between friends).” He then took a green branch of a date-palm tree, split it into two pieces and fixed one on each grave. The people said, “O Allah’s Messenger! Why

=Oneness of Allah and in His Messenger Muhammad (ﷺ).
have you done so?” He replied, “I hope that their punishment may be lessened till they (the leaf) become dry.” (1) (See H. No. 216 and its footnote).

(82) CHAPTER. Preacher delivering a lecture at a grave and the sitting of his companions around him.

1362. Narrated ‘Ali: We were accompanying a funeral procession in Baqi’-il-Gharqad. The Prophet came to us and sat and we sat around him. He had a small stick in his hand, then he bent his head and started scraping the ground with the stick. He then said, “There is none among you, nor any person created, but has a place either in Paradise or in Hell assigned for him and it is also determined for him whether he will be among the blessed or wretched.” A man said, “O Allah’s Messenger! Should we not depend on what has been written for us and leave the deeds, as whoever amongst us is

(1) (H. 1361) This action was a kind of invocation on the part of the Prophet for the deceased persons. [See Fath-Al-Bari].
blessed will do the deeds of a blessed person, and whoever amongst us is wretched, will do the deeds of a wretched person?” The Prophet ﷺ said, “The good deeds are made easy for the blessed, and bad deeds are made easy for the wretched.” Then he recited the Verses:-

“As for him who gives (in charity) and keeps his duty to Allah and fears Him. And believes in Al-Husna [(the best) i.e., either Lā ilāha illāllāh (none has the right to be worshipped but Allah) or a reward from Allah i.e., Allah will compensate him for what he will spend in Allah’s Way or bless him with Paradise]. [V.92: 5-7]

(83) CHAPTER. What is said about committing suicide.

1363. Narrated Thabit bin Ad-Dahhāk: The Prophet ﷺ said, “Whoever intentionally swears falsely by a religion other than Islam, then he is what he has said, (e.g., if he says, ‘If such thing is not true then I am a Jew,’ he is really a Jew if he is a liar). And whoever commits suicide with a piece of iron will be punished with the same piece of iron in the Hell-fire.”

1364. Narrated Jundab: The Prophet ﷺ said, “A man was inflicted with wounds and he committed suicide, and so Allah said: My slave has caused death on himself hurriedly, so I forbid Paradise for him.”
1365. Narrated Abū Hurairah: The Prophet said, “He who commits suicide by throttling shall keep on throttling himself in the Hell-fire (forever), and he who commits suicide by stabbing himself shall keep on stabbing himself in the Hell-fire.”

(84) CHAPTER. It is disliked to offer the funeral prayer for the hypocrites, and to ask Allāh’s Forgiveness for the Mushrikūn (polytheists, pagans, etc.).

This is narrated by Ibn ‘Umar on the authority of the Prophet.

1366. Narrated ‘Umar bin Al-Khattāb: When ‘Abdullāh bin Ubaib bin Salūl died, Allāh’s Messenger was requested to offer his funeral prayer. When Allāh’s Messenger stood up to offer the prayer, I got up quickly and said, “O Allāh’s Messenger! Are you going to offer prayer for Ibn Ubaib and he said so-and-so on such and such occasions?” And started mentioning all that he had said. Allāh’s Messenger smiled and said, “O ‘Umar! Leave me.” When I talked too much he said, “I have been given the choice and I have chosen (to offer the prayer). Had I known that he would be forgiven by asking for Allāh’s Forgiveness for more than seventy times, surely I would have done so.” (‘Umar added): Allāh’s Messenger offered his funeral prayer and returned and after a short while the two Verses of Sūrat Barā’ (At-Tauba) were revealed: “And never (O Muḥammad)
pray (funeral prayer) for any of them (hypocrites) who dies... (to the end of the Verse) while they were Fāsiqūn (rebellious...” V.9:84. (‘Umar added), “Later I was astonished at my daring before Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ on that day. And Allāh and His Messenger know better.”

(85) CHAPTER. The praising of a deceased by the people.

1367. Narrated Anas bin Mālik: A funeral procession passed and the people praised the deceased. The Prophet ﷺ said, “It has been affirmed to him.” Then another funeral procession passed and the people spoke badly of the deceased. The Prophet ﷺ said, “It has been affirmed to him”. ‘Umar bin Al-Khaṭṭāb asked (Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ), “What has been affirmed?” He replied, “You have praised this one, so Paradise has been affirmed to him; and you have dispraised (spoken badly of) the other, so Fire (Hell) has been affirmed to him. You people are Allāh’s witnesses on earth.”

1368. Narrated Abū Al-Aswad: I came to Al-Madīna when an epidemic disease had broken out. While I was sitting with ‘Umar bin Al-Khaṭṭāb a funeral procession passed by and the people praised the deceased. ‘Umar said, “It has been affirmed to him.” And another funeral procession passed by and the people praised the deceased. ‘Umar said, “It has been
affirmed to him.” A third (funeral procession) passed by and the people displeased (spoke badly) of the deceased. He said, “It has been affirmed to him.” I (Abū Al-Aswad) asked, “O chief of the believers! What has been affirmed?” He replied, “I said the same as the Prophet ﷺ had said, that is: if four persons testify the piety of a Muslim, Allāh will grant him Paradise.’ We asked, ‘If three persons testify his piety?’ He (the Prophet ﷺ) replied, ‘Even three.’ Then we asked, ‘If two?’ He replied, ‘Even two.’ We did not ask him regarding one witness.”

(86) CHAPTER. What is said regarding the punishment in the grave.

And the Statement of Allāh ﷻ:

“...If you could but see, when the Zalimūn (polytheists and wrongdoers etc.) are in the agonies of death, while the angels are stretching forth their hands (saying): Deliver your souls! This day shall be recompensed with the torment of degradation...” (V.6:93).

And also the Statement of Allāh ﷻ:

“And the Statement of Allāh ﷻ:

“...We shall punish them twice, and thereafter, they shall be brought back to a great (horrible) torment.” (V.9:101).

And also the Statement of Allāh ﷻ, saying:

“...While an evil torment encompassed Fir’aun’s (Pharoah) people. The Fire; they are exposed to it morning and afternoon, and on the Day when the Hour will be established (it will be said to the angels): Cause Fir’aun’s (Pharoah) people to enter the severest torment!” (V.40:45,46)
1369. Narrated Al-Barâ’ bin ‘Azyb: The Prophet said, “When a faithful believer is made to sit in his grave, then (the angels) come to him and he testifies that Lâ ilâha illallâh, wa an-Nâ Muhammed-ar-Rasûl Allâh (none has the right to be worshipped but Allâh and Muhammed is Allâh’s Messenger).” And that corresponds to Allâh’s Statement: “Allâh will keep firm those who believe, with the word that stands firm…” (V.14:27).

Narrated Shu’ba (same as above) and added, “Allâh will keep firm those who believe… (14:27) was revealed concerning the punishment in the grave.”

1370. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar: The Prophet looked at the dead people of the well (the well in which there were the bodies of those Mushrikûn(1) killed during the battle of Badr) and said, “Have you found true what your Lord promised you?” Somebody said to him, “You are addressing dead people.” He replied, “You do not hear better than they but they cannot reply.”

1371. Narrated ‘Aishah: The Prophet said, “They (the Quraish Mushrikûn(2) killed during the battle of Badr) now realise that what I used to tell them was the truth.” And Allâh said, “Verily! You cannot make the dead to hear (i.e. benefit them, and similarly the

(1) (H. 1370, 1371) Al-Mushrikûn: Polytheists, pagans, idolaters, and disbelievers in the Oneness of Allâh and in His Messenger Muhammed (saws).
23. THE BOOK OF FUNERALS [AL-JANÂ’IZ]

1372. Narrated `Aishah رضي الله عنها: A Jewess came to me and mentioned the punishment in the grave and said, “May Allâh protect you from the punishment in the grave.” `Aishah then asked Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ about the punishment in the grave. He said, “Yes, (there is) punishment in the grave.” `Aishah رضي الله عنها added, “After that I never saw Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ but seeking refuge with Allâh from the punishment in the grave in every Salât (prayer) he offered.”

1373. Narrated Asma’ bint Abû Bakr رضي الله عنها: Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ once stood up delivering a Khutba (religious talk) and mentioned the Fîmrah (trial and affliction) in the grave which people will face in their grave. When he mentioned that, the Muslims started crying loudly.

1374. Narrated Anas bin Mâlik رضي الله عنه: Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ said, “When (Allâh’s) slave is put in his grave and his companions return and he even hears their footsteps, two angels come to him and make him sit and ask, ‘What did you use to say about this man disbelievers)…” (V.27:80).
(i.e. Muḥammad ﷺ)? Then as regards a faithful believer, he will say, ‘I testify that he is Allāh’s slave and His Messenger.’ Then they will say to him, ‘Look at your place in the Fire (Hell); Allāh has changed for you a place in Paradise instead of it.’ So, he will see both his places.” (Qatāda said, “We were informed that his grave would be made spacious.”) Then Qatāda went back to the narration of Anas who said:) “Whereas a hypocrite or a disbeliever will be asked, “What did you use to say about this man. He will reply, ‘I do not know; but I used to say what the people used to say.’ So, they will say to him, ‘Neither did you know nor did you take the guidance (by following the Qur‘ān).’ Then he will be hit with iron hammers and he will make such a cry as everything near to him will hear, except jinn and human beings.” (See Hadith No. 1338).

(87) CHAPTER. To seek refuge with Allāh from the punishment in the grave.

1375. Narrated Abū Ayyūb: Once the Prophet ﷺ went out after sunset and heard a (dreadful) voice, and said, “The Jews are being punished in their graves.”
1376. Narrated Mūsā bin ‘Uqba: The daughter of Khālid bin Sa‘īd bin Al-‘Āṣ said that she had heard the Prophet seeking refuge with Allāh from the punishment in the grave.

1377. Narrated Abū Hurairah: Allah’s Messenger used to invoke (Allāh):

“Allāhumma innā a‘ūdhu bika min ‘adhabil-qabr, wa min ‘adhābin-nār, wa min fitnatil-mahyā wal-mamāt, wa min fitnatil-Masīh Ad-Dājjal. (O Allāh! I seek refuge with you from the punishment in the grave, and from the punishment in the Hell-fire, and from the Fitnah of life and death, and the Fitnah (trial and the affliction) of Al-Masīh Ad-Dājjal.)”

(88) CHAPTER. Punishment in the grave because of back-biting and soiling one’s clothes with one’s urine.

1378. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbās: The Prophet once passed by two graves and said, “They (the deceased persons in those graves) are being tortured not for a great thing to avoid.” And then added, “Yes, (they are being punished for a big sin) for one of them used to go about with calumnies; while the other never saved himself from being soiled with his urine.” (Ibn ‘Abbās added): Then he took a green branch of a date-palm and split it into two pieces and fixed one piece on each grave and said, “May their punishment be abated till these (two pieces) get dry”. (See Hadith No.1361 and its footnote).
(89) CHAPTER. The deceased is shown his actual place (in Paradise or in Hell) both in the morning and in the afternoon.

1379. Narrated `Abdullãh bin `Umar: Allah’s Messenger said, “When anyone of you dies, he is shown his place both in the morning and in the afternoon. If he is one of the people of Paradise; he is shown his place in it, and if he is from the people of the Hell-fire; he is shown his place therein. Then it is said to him, ‘This is your place till Allah resurrects you on the Day of Resurrection.’”

(90) CHAPTER. The speech of the deceased after it is lifted upon the bier.

1380. Narrated `Abû Sa‘îd Al-Khudri: Allah’s Messenger said, “When the funeral is ready (for its burial) and the people lift it on their shoulders, then if the deceased is a righteous person he says, ‘Take me ahead (or present me, quickly),’ and if he is not a righteous one he says, ‘Woe to it (me)! Where are you taking it (me)?’ And his voice is audible to everything except human beings; and if they heard it they would fall down unconscious.”
(91) CHAPTER. What is said regarding the dead children of Muslims.

And Aḥū Hurayrāh ḥ narrated that the Prophet ἔ said “He whose three children died before the age of puberty, they will shield him from the Hell-fire, or will make him enter Paradise.”

1381. Narrated Aḥūs bin Mālīk ἔ: Allah’s Messenger ἔ said, “Any Muslim whose three children died before the age of puberty will be granted Paradise by Allāh because of His Mercy to them.”

1382. Narrated Aḥū Barā’ ἔ: When Ibrāhīm (the son of Prophet ἔ) expired, Allah’s Messenger ἔ said, “There is a wet-nurse for him in Paradise.”

(92) CHAPTER. What is said regarding the (dead) children of Al-Mushrikūn. (1)

1383. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbās ἔ: Allah’s Messenger ἔ was asked about the children of Al-Mushrikūn. (2) The Prophet ἔ replied, “Since Allāh created them, He knows what sort of deeds they would have done.”

(1) & (2) (Ch. 92 and H.1383) Al-Mushrikūn: Polytheists, pagans, idolaters, and disbelievers in the Oneness of Allāh and in His Messenger Muhammad ἔ.
1384. Narrated Abū Hurairah: The Prophet was asked about the offspring of Al-Musîrikûn; so he said, “Allāh knows what sort of deeds they would have done.”

1385. Narrated Abū Hurairah: The Prophet said, “Every child is born a Muslim, and his parents convert him to Judaism or Christianity or Magianism, as an animal gives birth to a perfect baby animal. Do you find it mutilated?” (See H. No. 1358)

(93) CHAPTER:

1386. Narrated Samura bin Jundâb: Whenever the Prophet finished the Fajr prayer, he would face us and ask, “Who amongst you had a dream last night?” So, if anyone had a dream he would narrate it. The Prophet would say: “Mā šā’Allāh” (an Arabic maxim meaning literally, ‘What Allāh wished,’ and it indicates a good omen.) One day, he asked us whether anyone of us had a dream. We replied in the negative. The

(1) (H. 1384) (See the footnote of H. 1383).
Prophet ﷺ said, “But I had seen (a dream) last night that two men came to me, caught hold of my hands, and took me to the Sacred Land. There, I saw a person sitting and another standing with an iron hook in his hand; pushing it inside the mouth of the former till it reached the jaw-bone, and then tore off one side of his cheek, and then did the same with the other side; in the meantime the first side of his cheek became normal again and then he repeated the same operation again. I said, ‘What is this?’ They told me to proceed on, and we went on till we came to a man lying in a prone position, and another man standing at his head carrying a stone or a piece of rock, and crushing the head of the lying man with that stone. Whenever he struck him, the stone rolled away. The man went to pick it up and by the time he returned to him, the crushed head returned to its normal state and the man came back and struck him again (and so on). I said, ‘Who (what) is this?’ They told me to proceed on; so we proceeded on and passed by a hole like Tannūr (a kind of baking oven); with a narrow top and wide bottom, and the fire was kindling underneath that oven. Whenever the fire-flame went up, the people were lifted up to such an extent that they were about to get out of it, and whenever the fire abated, the people went down into it, and there were naked men and women in it. I said, ‘Who (what) is this?’ They told me to proceed on. So, we proceeded on till we reached a river of blood and there was a man in it, and another man (was standing at its bank) with stones in front of him, the latter confronted the former who was in the river. Whenever the man in the river wanted to come out, the other one threw a stone in his mouth and caused him to retreat to his original position;
and so whenever he wanted to come out the other would throw a stone in his mouth,’ and he would retreat to his original position. I asked, ‘What is this?’ They told me to proceed on, and we did so till we reached a well-flourished green garden having a huge tree and near its base was sitting an old man with some children. (I saw) another man near the tree with fire in front of him and he was kindling it up. Then they (i.e., my two companions) made me climb up the tree and made me enter a Dār (abode, dwelling place, house, etc.), better than which I had never seen. In it were some old men and young men, women and children. Then they took me out of this house and made me climb up the tree and made me enter another Dār that was better and superior (to the first) containing old and young people. I asked them (i.e., my two companions), ‘You have made me go around all the night. Tell me all about that I have seen.’ They said, ‘Yes. As for the one whose cheek you saw being torn away, he was a liar and he used to tell lies, and the people would report those lies on his authority till they spread all over the world. So, he will be punished like that till the Day of Resurrection. The one whose head you saw being crushed is the one whom Allah had given the knowledge of the Qur’ān (i.e., knowing it by heart), but he used to sleep at night (i.e., he did not recite it then) and did not use to act upon it (i.e., upon its orders etc.) by day; and so this punishment will go on till the Day of Resurrection. And those whom you saw in the hole (like oven) were adulterers (those men and women who commit illegal sexual intercourse). And those whom you saw in the river of blood were those dealing in Riba (usury). And the old man who was sitting at the base of the tree was Ibrāhīm (Abraham) whom Allah said: ‘Indeed, I have chosen you to be a servant of mine, so call to me every morning and evening.’ – [Sūrat al-‘Adhā: 96]
the little children around him were the offspring of the people. And the one who was kindling the fire was Malik, the gatekeeper of the Hell-fire. And the first Dār in which you entered was the house of the common believers, and the second Dār was of the martyrs. I am Jibrīl (Gabriel) and this is Mikāēl (Michael). Raise your head.’ I raised my head and saw a thing like a cloud over me. They said, ‘That is your place.’ I said, ‘Let me enter my place.’ They said, ‘You still have some life which you have not yet completed, and when you complete (that remaining portion of your life) you will then enter your place.” (See H.No. 7047).

(94) CHAPTER. Dying on Monday.

1387.Narrated Hishām’s father: ‘Āishah said, “I went to Abū Bakr during his fatal illness) and he asked me, ‘In how many garments was the Prophet shrouded?’ She replied, ‘In three Sahūliyya pieces of white cloth of cotton, and there was neither a shirt nor a turban among them.’ Abū Bakr further asked her, ‘On which day did the Prophet die?’ She replied, ‘He died on Monday.’ He asked, ‘What (day) is today?’ She replied, ‘Today is Monday.’ He added, ‘I hope I shall die sometime between this morning and tonight.’ Then he looked at a garment that he was wearing during his illness and it had some stains of saffron. Then he said, ‘Wash this garment of mine and add two more garments and shroud me in them.’ I said, ‘This is worn out.’ He said, ‘A living person has more right to wear new clothes than a dead one; the shroud is only for the body’s pus.’ He did not die till it was the night of Tuesday and was buried before the morning.”
(95) CHAPTER. Sudden unexpected death.

1388. Narrated ʿAishah رضي الله عنها: A man said to the Prophet ﷺ, “My mother died suddenly and I thought that if she had lived she would have given alms. So, if I give alms now on her behalf, will she get the reward?” The Prophet ﷺ replied in the affirmative.

(96) CHAPTER. What is said regarding the graves of the Prophet ﷺ, Abū Bakr, and ʿUmar رضي الله عنهم.

1389. Narrated ʿAishah رضي الله عنها: Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ during his sickness was asking repeatedly, “Where am I today? Where will I be tomorrow?” And he was waiting for the day of my turn (impatiently). Then, when my turn came, Allāh took his soul away (in my lap) between my chest and arms and he was buried in my house.
1390. Narrated 'Aishah رضي الله عنها: Allāh's Messenger ﷺ in his fatal illness said, "Allāh cursed the Jews and the Christians, for they built places of worship at the graves of their Prophets." And if that had not been the case, then the Prophet's grave would have been made prominent before the people. So, (the Prophet ﷺ) was afraid, or the people were afraid that his grave might be taken as a place for worship.

Narrated Abū Bakr bin 'Ayyash رضي الله عنه: Sufyān At-Tammar told me that he had seen the grave of the Prophet ﷺ, elevated and convex.

Narrated 'Urwa: When the wall (around the graves of the Prophet ﷺ, Abū Bakr and Umar رضي الله عنهم) collapsed during the caliphate of Al-Walid bin 'Abdul Malik; the people started repairing it, and a foot appeared to them. The people got scared and thought that it was the foot of the Prophet ﷺ. No one could be found who could tell them about it till I ('Urwa) said to them, "By Allāh, this is not the foot of the Prophet ﷺ, but it is the foot of Abū Bakr, but it is the foot of 'Urwa:"

1391. 'Aishah رضي الله عنها narrated that she made a will to 'Abdullāh bin Zubair رضي الله عنه: Do not bury me with them (the Prophet ﷺ).
and his two Companions) but bury me with my companions (wives of the Prophet) in Al-Baqi' as I would not like to be looked upon as better than I really am (by being buried near the Prophet).

1392. Narrated 'Amr bin Maimūn Al-Audī: I saw 'Umar bin Al-Khattāb (when he was stabbed) saying, “O 'Abdullāh bin 'Umar! Go to the mother of the believers 'Aishah and say, 'Umar bin Al-Khattāb sends his greetings to you,” and request her to allow me to be buried with my companions.” (So Ibn 'Umar conveyed the message to 'Aishah). She said, “I had the idea of having this place for myself but today I prefer him ('Umar) to myself (and allow him to be buried there).” When 'Abdullāh bin 'Umar returned, 'Umar asked him, “What (news) do you have?” He replied, “O chief of the believers! She has allowed you (to be buried there).” On that 'Umar said, “Nothing was more important to me than to be buried in that (sacred) place. So, when I expire, carry me there and pay my greetings to her ('Aishah) and say, 'Umar bin Al-Khattāb asks permission; and if she gives permission, then bury me (there) and if she does not, then take me to the grave-yard of the Muslims. I do not think any person has more right for the caliphate than those with whom Allah's Messenger was always pleased till his death. And whoever is chosen by the people after me will be the caliph, and you people must listen to him and obey him.” Then he mentioned the name of 'Uthmān, 'Ali, Ťalḥa, Az-Zubair, 'Abdur-Rahmān bin 'Auf and Sa'd bin Abī Waqqās. By this time a young man from Ansār came and said, “O chief of the believers! Be happy with Allah's glad tidings. The grade which you have in Islam is known to you, then you
became the caliph and you ruled with justice; and then you have been awarded martyrdom after all this.” ‘Umar replied, “O son of my brother! Would that all that privileges will counterbalance (my short comings), so that I neither lose nor gain anything. I recommend my successor to be good to the early emigrants and realize their rights and to protect their honour. And, I also recommend him to be good to the Ansâr who before them, had homes (in Al-Madîna) and had adopted the Faith. He should accept the good of the righteous among them and should excuse their wrongdoers. I recommend him to abide by the rules and regulations concerning the Qhimmis (protected non-Muslims) of Allâh and His Messenger ﷺ, to fulfil their contracts completely, and fight for them and not to tax (overburden) them beyond their capabilities.”

(97) CHAPTER. What is forbidden as regards: Abusing the dead.

1393. Narrated ‘Aishah ﷺ: The Prophet ﷺ said, “Don’t abuse the dead, because they have reached the destination of what they forwarded.”
(98) CHAPTER. Talking about the wicked among the dead.

1394. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbās: Abū Lahab, may Allāh curse him, once said to the Prophet ﷺ, “Perish you all the day.”

Then the Divine Revelation came: “Perish the two hands of Abī Lahab!” (V.111:1).
24 – THE BOOK OF ZAKÁT

(1) CHAPTER. The obligation of Zakát

And the Statement of Allâh (1) تعالى: “And perform Aś-Šalât (Iqamat-ay-Šalât) and give Zakát.” (V.2:43) Ibn ‘Abbâs said: Abû Sufyân narrated to me the Hadîth about the Prophet [the conversation which happened between him (Abû Sufyân) and Heraclius] and quoted from it: “He (the Prophet ﷺ) ordered us to offer Aś-Šalât (the prayers) to pay the Zakât, to keep good relations with kith and kin, and to be chaste.” (See H.No. 7, Vol.1).

1395. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbâs: The Prophet ﷺ sent Mu‘âdh to Yemen and said, “Invite the people to testify that Lâ ilâha illallah (none has the right to be worshipped but Allâh) and I am Allâh’s Messenger (Islâmic Monotheism), and if they obey you to do so, then inform them that Allâh has enjoined on them five Šalât (prayer) in every day and night (in twenty-four hours), and if they obey you to do so, then inform them that Allâh has made it obligatory for them to pay the Sadaqa (2) (1) Zakát: A certain fixed proportion of the wealth and of every kind of the property liable to Zakát of a Muslim to be paid yearly for the benefit of the poor in the Muslim community. The payment of Zakát is obligatory, as it is one of the five pillars of Islâm. Zakát is the major economic means for establishing social justice and leading the Muslim society to prosperity and security. Zakát is meant for eight types of people, as mentioned in the Noble Qur’ân: Aś-Šadaqa (here it means Zakát) are only for the (1) Fuqârâ (poor), (2) Al-Masâkîn (poor), (3) and those employed to collect (the funds), (4) and for to attract the hearts of those who have been inclined (towards Islâm); (5) and to free the captives; (6) and for those in debt; (7) and for Allâh’s Cause (i.e. for Mujâhidûn - those fighting in a holy battle), (8) and for the way-farer (a traveller who is cut off from everything); a duty imposed by Allâh. And Allâh is All-Knower, All-Wise. (V. 9:60).

(2) (H.1395) Sadaqa : Whatever is given in charity is called in Arabic, Sadaqa. Zakát is one specific kind of Sadaqa which is to be collected, according to certain rules and regulations, from the rich Muslims and distributed among the poor ones. The Ahadîth...
(Zakât) from their properties, and it is to be taken from the wealthy among them and given to the poor among them.” [See Hadîth No.1496].

1396. Narrated Abû Ayyûb: A man said to the Prophet ﷺ, “Inform me of such a deed as will make me enter Paradise.” The people said, “What is the matter with him? What is the matter with him?” The Prophet ﷺ said, “He has something to ask. (What he needs greatly)”. The Prophet said, “(In order to enter Paradise) you should worship Allâh (Alone, and none else) and do not ascribe any partners to Him, perform Iqâmat-as-Salât(1) (prayer), pay the Zakât and keep good relations with your kith and kin.” (See Hadîth No. 5983 Vol. 8).

1397. Narrated Abû Hurairah: A bedouin came to the Prophet ﷺ and said, “Inform me of such a deed as will make me...
enter Paradise, if I do it.” The Prophet said, “(In order to enter Paradise) you should worship Allah (Alone and none else) and do not ascribe any partners to Him, perform Iqāmat-as-Salāt, pay the compulsory Zakāt, and observe Saum (fast) in the month of Ramadān.” The bedouin said, “By Him, in Whose Hands my soul (life) is, I will not do more than this.” When he (the bedouin) left, the Prophet said, “Whoever likes to see a man of Paradise, then he may look at this man.”

1398. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbās : A delegation of the tribe of ‘Abdul Qais came to the Prophet and said, “O Allah’s Messenger! We are from the tribe of Rabī‘a, and the infidels of the tribe of Mūdār stands between us and you; so we cannot come to you except during the Sacred Months. Please order us to do something (religious deeds) which we may take it from you (carry out); and also invite to it our people whom we have left behind.” The Prophet said, “I order you to do four things and forbid you four others: (I order you) to have faith in Allah, and confess that La ilāha illālah [and the Prophet gestured with his hand like this (i.e., one knot)] and to perform Iqāmat-as-Salāt and to pay the compulsory Zakāt, and to pay one-fifth of the booty in Allah’s Cause. And I forbid you to use Dubbā‘, Hantam, Naqīr and
Muzaffat (all these are the names of utensils used for preparing alcoholic drinks)."

1399. Narrated Abū Hurairah: When Allah’s Messenger died and Abū Bakr became the caliph, some Arabs renegaded (reverted to disbelief) (Abū Bakr decided to fight against them), ‘Umar said to Abū Bakr, “How can you fight with these people although Allah’s Messenger said, ‘I have been ordered (by Allah) to fight the people till they say: La ilaha illallah (none has the right to be worshipped but Allah), and whoever said it, then he will save his life and property from me except on tresgressing (Islamic) law (rights and conditions for which he will be punished justly), and his accounts will be with Allah.’” (See H.No. 25).

1400. In continuation of the narration of Abū Hurairah (No. 1399) Abū Bakr said, “By Allah! I will fight those who differentiate between As-Salāt (the prayer) and the Zakāt; as Zakāt is the compulsory right to be taken from the property (according to Allah’s Orders). By Allah! If they refuse to pay me even a she-kid which they used to pay at the time of Allah’s Messenger, I will fight with them for withholding it”. Then ‘Umar said, “By Allah, it was nothing, but Allah opened Abū Bakr’s chest towards the decision (to fight) and I came to know that his decision was right.”
(2) CHAPTER. To give Bai’ah (pledge) for paying Zakāt.

And Allāh’s Statement: ‘But if they repent, and perform As-Ṣalāt (Iqāmat-as-Ṣalāt) and give Zakāt, then they are your brethren in religion...’ (V.9:11)

1401. Narrated Jarir bin ‘Abdullāh رضي الله عنه: I gave the Bai’ah (pledge) to the Prophet ﷺ for (1) Iqāmat-as-Ṣalāt [offering As-Ṣalāt (prayer)], (2) giving Zakāt and (3) to be sincere and true to every Muslim [i.e., to order them for Al-Ma‘rūf (i.e., Islamic Monotheism and all that Islām orders one to do) and forbid them from Al-Munkar (i.e., disbelief, polytheism and all that Islām has forbidden), to help them, to be kind and merciful to them etc.]. [See Hadīth No. 57, vol. I, along with its chapter 42].

(3) CHAPTER. The sin of a person who does not pay Zakāt.

And the Statement of Allāh ﻪـ تعالى:

‘...And those who hoard up gold and silver (Al-Kanz – money, gold and silver, the Zakāt of which has not been paid) and spend them not in the Way of Allāh, announce unto them a painful torment. On the Day when that (Al-Kanz) will be heated in the fire of Hell and with it will be branded their foreheads and their flanks, and their backs (and it will be said to them): ‘This is the treasure which you hoarded for yourselves. Now taste of what you used to hoard.’ (V.9:34-35)

1402. Narrated Abū Hurairah رضي الله عنه: The Prophet ﷺ said, ‘(On the Day of Resurrection) camels will come to their owners in the best state of health they have ever had (in the world), and if he had not paid their Zakāt (in the world) then they...’
would tread him with their feet; and similarly, sheep will come to their owners in the best state of health they have ever had in the world, and if he had not paid their Zakât, then they would tread him with their hooves and would butt him with their horns.” The Prophet added, “One of their rights is that they should be milked while water is kept in front of them.” The Prophet added, “I do not want anyone of you to come to me on the Day of Resurrection, carrying over his neck a sheep that will be bleating. Such a person will (then) say, ‘O Muhammad! (please intercede for me.)’ I will say to him, ‘I can’t help you, for I conveyed Allâh’s Message to you.’ Similarly, I do not want anyone of you to come to me carrying over his neck a camel that will be grunting. Such a person (then) will say, ‘O Muḥammad! (please intercede for me.)’ I will say to him, ‘I can’t help you for I conveyed Allâh’s Message to you.’”

**1403. Narrated Abû Hurairah**

Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ said, “Whoever is made wealthy by Allâh and does not pay the Zakât of his wealth, then on the Day of Resurrection his wealth will be made like a bald-headed poisonous male snake with two black spots over the eyes (or two poisonous glands in its mouth). The snake will encircle his neck and bite his cheeks and say, ‘I am your wealth, I am your treasure.’” Then the Prophet recited the holy Verses: “Let not those who covetously withhold...” (to the end of the Verse). (V.3:180).

(1) (H.1403) See Fâh Al-Bârî.
CHAPTER. A property from which the Zakat is paid is not a Al-Kanz (hoarded-money).

According to the statement of the Prophet: “There is no Zakat on property mounting to less than five Uqiyah (of silver)” – (one Uqiyah equals 128 grams.)

1404. Narrated Khalid bin Aslam: We went out with ‘Abdulllah bin ‘Umar and a bedouin said (to ‘Abdullah), “Tell me about Allah’s Saying: “And those who hoard up gold and silver (Al-Kanz – money, gold, silver etc., the Zakat of which has not been paid) and spend it not in the Way of Allah (V.9:34).” Ibn ‘Umar said, “Whoever hoarded them and did not pay the Zakat thereof, then woe to him. But these holy Verses were revealed before the Verses of Zakat. So when the Verses of Zakat were revealed Allah made Zakat a purifier of the property.”

1405. Narrated Abu Sa’id: Allah’s Messenger said, “No Zakat is due on property mounting to less than five Uqiyah (of silver), and no Zakat is due on less than five camels, and there is no Zakat on less than five Wasq.” (A Wasq equals 60 Sa’) & (1 Sa’ = 3 kgms approx.)

(1) See Nisab in the Glossary. (H.1405) See Nisab: in the glossary.
1406. Narrated Zaid bin Wahab: “I passed by a place called Ar-Rabadha and by chance I met Abü Dhar رضي الله عنه and asked him, “What has brought you to this place?” He said, “I was in Sham and differed with Mu‘awiya on the meaning of (the following Verses of the Qur’an): ‘And those who hoard up gold and silver (Al-Kanz – money, the Zakāt of which is not paid) and spend it not in the Way of Allāh.’ (V.9:34). Mu‘awiya said, “This Verse is revealed regarding the people of the Scriptures.” I said, “It was revealed regarding us and also the people of the Scriptures.” So we had a quarrel and Mu‘awiya sent a complaint against me to ‘Uthmān رضي الله عنه. ‘Uthmān wrote to me to come to Al-Madīna, and I came to Al-Madīna. Many people came to me as if they had not seen me before. So, I told this to ‘Uthmān who said to me, “You may depart and live nearby if you wish.” That was the reason for my being here for even if an Ethiopian had been nominated as my ruler, I would have obeyed him.

1407. Narrated Al-Ahnaf bin Qais: While I was sitting with some people from Quraish, a man with very rough hair, clothes, and appearance came and stood in front of us, greeted us and said, “Inform those who hoard wealth, that a stone will be heated in the Hell-fire and will be put on the nipples of their breasts till it comes out from the bones of their shoulders, and then put on the bones of their shoulders till it comes through the nipples of their breasts, the stone will be...
moving and hitting.” After saying that, that person retreated and sat by the side of the pillar, I followed him and sat beside him, and I did not know who he was. I said to him, “I think the people disliked what you had said.” He said, “These people do not understand anything.”

1408. Abū Dhar added: “My friend told me.” I asked, “Who is your friend?” He said, “The Prophet ﷺ said (to me), ‘O Abū Dhar! Do you see the mountain of Uhud?’ And on that I (Abū Dhar) started looking towards the sun to judge how much remained of the day, as I thought that Allah’s Messenger ﷺ wanted to send me to do something for him and I said, ‘Yes!’ He said, ‘I do not love to have gold equal to the mountain of Uhud unless I spend it all (in Allah’s Cause) except three Dinārs. These people do not understand and collect worldly wealth. No, by Allah, neither I ask them for worldly benefits nor am I in need of their religious verdicts and advices till I meet Allah, the Honourable, the Majestic.’”

(5) CHAPTER. To spend money in the right way.

1409. Narrated Ibn Mas‘ūd: I
heard the Prophet saying, “There is no envy (or not to wish to be the like of) except in two: a person whom Allâh has given wealth and he spends it in the right way, and a person whom Allâh has given wisdom (i.e. religious knowledge of the Qur’ân and Sunna - legal way of Prophet Muhammad) and he gives his decisions accordingly and teaches it to the others.”

(6) CHAPTER. Giving alms for showing off.

And the Statement of Allâh: “O you who believe! Do not render in vain your Šadaqa (charity) by reminders of your generosity or by injury... up to... And Allâh does not guide the disbelieving people.” (V.2:264)

(7) CHAPTER. No charity is accepted from what is grabbed from the war booty in an illegal way.

And charity is accepted only from honestly-earned money, as Allâh’s Statement:

“Kind words and forgiving of faults are better than Šadaqa (charity) followed by injury... up to... (He is) Most Forbearing.” (V.2:263)

(8) CHAPTER. As-Šadaqa (Charity must be from money earned honestly.

As Allâh’s Statement asserts: “Allâh will destroy Riba (usury) and will give increase for Šadaqât (deeds of charity, alms, etc.). And Allâh likes not the disbelievers, sinners. Truly those who believe and do deeds of righteousness, and perform As-Šalât (Iqāmat-as-Šalât), and give Zakât, they will...”
have their reward with their Lord. On them shall be no fear, nor shall they grieve.” (V.2:276, 277)

1410. Narrated Abū Hurairah: Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ said, “If one gives in charity what equals one date-fruit from the honestly earned money – and Allāh accepts only the honestly earned money – Allāh takes it in His Right (Hand) and then enlarges its reward for that person (who has given it), as anyone of you brings up his baby horse, so much so that it becomes as big as a mountain.”

(9) CHAPTER. To practise charity (as early as possible) before such time comes when nobody would accept it.

1411. Narrated Hāritha bin Wahab: I heard the Prophet ﷺ saying, “O people! Give in charity as a time will come upon you when a person will wander about with his object of charity and will not find anybody to accept it, and one (who will be requested to take it) will say, ‘If you had brought it yesterday, I would have taken it, but today I am not in need of it.’
1412. Narrated Abū Hurairah: The Prophet said, “The Hour (the Day of Judgement) will not be established till your wealth increases so much so that one will be worried, for no one will accept his Zakāt and the person to whom he will give it, will reply, ‘I am not in need of it.’”

1413. Narrated ‘Adi bin Ḥatim: While I was sitting with Allah’s Messenger, two persons came to him; one of them complained about his poverty and the other complained about the prevalence of robberies. Allah’s Messenger said, “As regards stealing and robberies, there will shortly come a time when a caravan will go to Makkah (from Al-Madīnā) without any guard. And regarding poverty, The Hour (the Day of Judgement) will not be established till one of you wanders about with his object of charity and will not find anybody to accept it. And (no doubt) each one of you will stand in front of Allah and there will be neither a screen nor an interpreter between him and Allah, and Allah will ask him, ‘Did not I give you wealth?’ He will reply in the affirmative. Allah will further ask, ‘Didn’t I send a Messenger to you?’ And again that person will reply in the affirmative. Then he will look to his right and he will see nothing but Hell-fire, and then he will look to his left and will see nothing but Hell-fire. So, let each one of you save himself from the Hell-fire even by giving half of a date-fruit (in charity). And if
you do not find a half date-fruit, then (you can do it through saying) a good pleasant word (to your Muslim brother).” (See Hadîth No.3595, Vol.4).

1414. Narrated Abû Mûsâ: The Prophet ﷺ said, “A time will come upon the people when a person will wander about with gold as Zakât and will not find anybody to accept it, and one man will be seen followed by forty women to be their guardian because of scarcity of men and great number of women.”

(10) CHAPTER. “Protect yourself from Hell-fire even with a half date, or with a little object of charity.”

And Allâh’s Statement:
“And the likeness of those who spend their wealth ..up to.. all kinds of fruits for him therein.” (V.2:265, 266).

1415. Narrated Abû Mas‘ûd: When the Verses of charity were revealed, we used to work as porters. A man came and distributed objects of charity in a great amount. And they (the people) said, “He is showing off.” And another man came and gave a Sâ’ (a small measure of food grains); they said, “Allâh is not in need of this small amount of charity.” And then the Divine Revelation came: “Those who defame such of the believers who give in charity (in Allâh’s Cause) voluntarily, and such who could not
find to give in charity (in Allāh’s Cause) except what is available to them…” (V.9:79).

1416. Narrated Abū Mas‘ūd Al-Ansārī: Whenever Allāh’s Messenger ordered us to give in charity, we used to go to the market and work as porters and get a Mudd (a special measure of grain) and then give it in charity. (Those were the days of poverty) and today some of us have one hundred thousand.

1417. Narrated ‘Adi bin Ḥātim: I heard the Prophet saying: “Save yourself from Hell-fire even by giving half a date-fruit in charity.”

1418. Narrated ‘Aishah: A lady along with her two daughters came to me asking (for some alms), but she found nothing with me except one date-fruit which I gave to her and she divided it between her two daughters, and did not eat anything herself, and then she got up and went away. Then the Prophet came and I informed him about this story. He said, “Whoever is put to trial by these daughters and he treats them generously (with benevolence) then these daughters will act as a shield for him.
from Hell-fire.’ (See Hadith No.5995, Vol.8).

(11) CHAPTER. What kind of As-Sadaqa (charity etc.) is superior? The superiority of charity practised by a niggardly healthy person, as is said in the Statement of Allah's

t:;J

علَيْنَا فَأَخْرَجْنِهُمْ قَالَ الْبَيْتُ: “فَمِنْ النَّبِيِّ

من هذه النبات سيّء؛ كَثَرَ لَهُ سَيِّئَةٌ مِنَ النَّارِ.” [نظر: 5995]

وَأَيْفُوا بِنَّا رَضِيْتَنِيهِمْ مِنْ مَعْلُومٍ الآية [السافون: 10] وَقُولُهُ: «كَثِيرَةٌ أَلْدِينَ ۖ عَادَتُوْنَ أَيْفُوا بِنَّا رَضِيْتَنِيهِمْ مِنْ مَعْلُومٍ آنَّا لَمْ يَمُوتُنَّ أَمَّا بَعْدُ فِيهِ» الآية

[الفرة: 254]

1419. Narrated Abū Hurairah: A man came to the Prophet and asked, “O Allah’s Messenger! What kind of As-adaqa (charity etc.) is the most superior in reward?” He replied, “The charity which you practise while you are healthy, niggardly and afraid of poverty and wish to become wealthy. Do not delay it to the time of approaching death and then say, ‘Give so much to such and such, and so much to such and such.’ And it has already belonged to such and such (his heirs).”

CHAPTER

1420. Narrated ‘Aishah: Some of the wives of the Prophet asked him, “Who amongst us will be the first to follow you (i.e., die after you)?” He said, “Whoever has the longest hand.” So, they started measuring their hands with a stick and
Sauda’s hand turned out to be the longest. (When Zainab bint Jahsh died first of all in the caliphate of ‘Umar), we came to know that the long hand was a symbol of practising charity, so, she was the first to follow the Prophet and she used to love to practise charity. (Sauda died later in the caliphate of Mu‘awiya).

(12) CHAPTER. To give in charity openly.

And the Statement of Allah:

“Those who spend their wealth (in Allah’s Cause) by night and day, in secret and in public … up to … on them shall be no fear, nor shall they grieve.” (V.2:274).

(13) CHAPTER. To give in charity secretly

Narrated Abū Hurairah that the Prophet said, “A person who gives in charity so secretly that his left hand does not know what his right hand has given (then he will be under the shade of Allah on the Day of Resurrection).” [See Hadith No. 1423].

And the Statement of Allah: “If you disclose your Sadaqāt (alms-giving) it is well, but if you conceal them, and give them to the poor, that is better for you…” (V.2:271)

(14) CHAPTER. If one gives an object of charity to a wealthy person unknowingly (one’s act of charity is accepted by Allah).

1421. Narrated Abū Hurairah: Allah’s Messenger said, “A man said that he would give something in charity. He went out with his object of charity and unknowingly gave it to a thief. Next morning, the people said that he had given his object of charity to a thief. (On hearing that) he said, ‘O Allah! All the praises and thanks are for You. I will give alms again.’
And so, he again went out with his alms and (unknowingly) gave it to an adulteress. Next morning, the people said that he had given his alms to an adulteress last night. The man said, ‘O Allah! All the praises and thanks are for You. (I gave my alms) to an adulteress. I will give alms again.’ So, he went out with his alms again and (unknowingly) gave it to a rich person. (The people) next morning said that he had given his alms to a wealthy person. He said, ‘O Allah! All the praises and thanks are for You. (I had given alms) to a thief, to an adulteress and to a wealthy man.’ Then someone came and said to him, “The alms which you gave to the thief, might make him abstain from stealing, and that given to the adulteress might make her abstain from illegal sexual intercourse (adultery), and that given to the wealthy man might make him take a lesson from it and spend his wealth which Allah has given him, in Allah’s Cause.’”

(15) CHAPTER. If a person gives something in charity to his own son unknowingly.

1422. Narrated Ma‘n bin Yazid: My grandfather, my father and I gave the Bai‘ah (pledge) to Allah’s Messenger. The Prophet got me engaged and then got me married. One day I went to the Prophet with a complaint. My father Yazid had given some gold coins for charity and kept them with a man in the mosque (to give them to the poor) but I went and took them and then brought them to him (my father). My father said, “By Allah! I did not intend to give them to you.” I took (the case) to Allah’s Messenger. On that Allah’s Messenger said, “O Yazid! You will be rewarded for what you intended. O Ma‘n! Whatever you
have taken is yours.”

(16) CHAPTER. To give objects of charity with the right hand.

1423. Narrated Abū Hurairah: The Prophet said, “Seven people will be shaded by Allāh under His Shade on the Day (of Resurrection) when there will be no shade except His. They are:

1. A just ruler;
2. A young man who has been brought up in the worship of Allāh, i.e. worships Allāh (Alone) sincerely from his childhood,
3. A man whose heart is attached to the mosques [who offers the five compulsory congregational Salāt (prayers) in the mosques],
4. Two persons who love each other only for Allāh’s sake and they meet and part in Allāh’s Cause only;
5. A man who refuses the call of a charming woman of noble birth for an illegal sexual intercourse with her and says: ‘I am afraid of Allāh;’
6. A person who practises charity so secretly that his left hand does not know what his right hand has given (i.e. nobody knows how much he has given in charity).
7. A person who remembers Allāh in seclusion and his eyes become flooded with tears.”

1424. Narrated Ḥāritha bin Wahab Al-Khuzā’ī: I heard the Prophet saying, “(O people!) Give in charity (for Allāh’s Cause), because a time will come when a person will carry his object of charity from place to place (and he will not find any person to take it); and any person whom he shall request to take it, will reply, ‘If you had brought it yesterday I would have taken it,
but today I am not in need of it.’”

(17) CHAPTER. Whoever ordered his servant to give something in charity and did not give it himself.

Narrated Abû Mûsa that the Prophet ﷺ said, “He is one of the charitable persons.”(1)

1425. Narrated ʿAisâh ﷺ said, “When a woman gives in charity some of the foodstuff (which she has in her house) without spoiling it, she will receive the reward for what she has spent, and her husband will receive the reward because of his earning, and the storekeeper will also have a reward similar to it. The reward of one will not decrease the reward of the others.”

(18) CHAPTER. The wealthy only are required to give in charity.

Whoever gives in charity and he himself or his family are in need or in debt, the payment of debts has precedence over giving in charity or setting a slave free, or giving presents to others, for in this case his act of charity is not acceptable and that person has no right to waste the people’s property. And the Prophet ﷺ said, “Allāh will destroy the person who takes other’s wealth with the intention of wasting it.” But if one is known for his patience and prefers others to himself while he himself is in need, as Abû Bakr did

(1) (Ch.17) This is a part of another Hadîth. See Hadîth No.1438.
when he gave all his property in charity, it is permissible. Similarly, the Anṣār gave preference to the emigrants over themselves. And the Prophet ﷺ had forbidden the wasting of wealth, so, a person has no right to waste other’s wealth, by spending it in charity.

And Ka‘b (bin Mālik) Zaydī said, “I said to Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ, ‘O Allāh’s Messenger! As a part of my repentance I would like to give up all my property in the Cause of Allāh and His Messenger ﷺ.’ He said, ‘You would better keep some of your property.’ On that I said, ‘I will keep my share that is in Khaibar.’”

1426. Narrated Abū Hurairah: The Prophet ﷺ said, “The best charity is that which is practised by a wealthy person. And start giving first to your dependents.”

1427. Narrated Hakim bin Hizām: The Prophet ﷺ said, “The upper hand is better than the lower hand (i.e., he who gives in charity is better than him who takes it). One should start giving first to his dependents. And the best object of charity is that which is given by a wealthy person (from the money which is left after his expenses). And whoever abstains from asking others for some financial help, Allāh will give him and save him from asking others; and whosoever is satisfied with what Allāh has given him, Allāh will make him self-sufficient.”
1428. Narrated Abū Hurairah like this.

1429. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar: Allah’s Messenger while on the pulpit mentioned about As-Sadaqa (charity), and to abstain from asking others for some financial help, and begging others, and said: “The upper hand is better than the lower hand. The upper hand is that of the giver and the lower (hand) is that of the beggar.”

(19) CHAPTER. The one who follows up his charitable gifts with reminders of generosity; as is referred to in Allâh’s Statement:

“Those who spend their wealth in the Cause of Allâh, and do not follow up their gifts with reminders of their generosity or with injury…” (V.2:262)

(20) CHAPTER. Whoever loves to give something in charity on the very day (on which he receives his earnings).

1430. Narrated ‘Uqba bin Al-Hârith: Once the Prophet offered the ‘Asr prayers and then hurriedly went to his house and returned immediately. I (or somebody else) asked him (as to what was the matter) and he said, “I left at home a piece of gold which was from the charity, and I disliked to let it remain a night in my house, so I got it distributed.”
(21) CHAPTER. To exhort one to give in charity and to intercede for the same purpose.

1431. Narrated Ibn `Abbas: The Prophet went out for ‘Salãt-ul-‘Eid on the ‘Eid day and offered a two Rak’ât prayer; and he neither offered any ‘Salãt (prayer) before it nor after it. Then he went towards the women along with Bilãl. He preached them and ordered them to give in charity. And some (amongst the women) started giving their forearm bangles and ear-rings.

1432. Narrated Abû Musa: “Whenever a beggar came to Allah’s Messenger, or he was asked for something, he would intercede (and say to his Companions), “Help and recommend him and you will receive the reward for it; and Allah will bring about what He will through His Prophet’s tongue.”

1433. Narrated Asmã: The Prophet said to me, “Do not withhold your money, (for if you did so) Allah would...” (1)

(1) (H.1432) The Prophet, urged his Companions to intercede with him on behalf of their Muslim brethren who were in need of something or had some difficulties. He meant that he was ready to listen to their intercessions for good people, and that they would be rewarded for their intercession. Anyhow, the Prophet prohibited intercession for those who were sentenced to one of the punishments that were ordained by Allah and could not be changed in any circumstances.
withhold His Blessings from you.

Narrated ‘Abdā ibn As-Sawā’i: The Prophetﷺ said, “Do not withhold your money by counting and hoarding it, being afraid that it (money) may be exhausted (by spending in Allah’s Cause) lest Allah should withhold His Blessings from you.” [See Fath Al-Bārī].

(22) CHAPTER. To give in charity as much as you can afford.

1434. Narrated Asmā bint Abū Bakr that she came to the Prophetﷺ (for some problem) and he said, “Do not shut your money bag; otherwise Allah too will withhold His Blessings from you. Spend (in Allah’s Cause) as much as you can afford.”

1435. Narrated Abū Wā’il: Hudhaifa said, “‘Umar said, ‘Who amongst you remembers the statement of Allah’s Messenger ﷺ about the Al-Fītnah (trial and affliction)?’ I said, ‘I know it exactly as the Prophet ﷺ said.’ ‘Umar said, ‘No doubt, you are bold. How did he say it?’ I said, ‘A man’s Al-Fītnah caused by his wife, children and neighbours is expiated by (his) Ṣalāt (prayer), charity, and enjoining Al-Ma‘rūf (Islāmic Monotheism and all that
Islām ordains).’ (The subnarrator Sulaimān added that he said, ‘The Ṣalāt (prayer), charity, enjoining Al-Ma’rūf and forbidding Al-Munkar (disbelief, polytheism, and all that Islām has forbidden).’ ‘Umar said, ‘I did not mean that, but I ask about that Al-Fītnah which will spread like the waves of the sea.’ I said, ‘O chief of the believers! You need not be afraid of it as there is a closed door between you and it.’ He asked, ‘Will the door be broken or opened?’ I replied, ‘No, it will be broken.’ He said, ‘Then, if it is broken, it will never be closed again?’ I replied, ‘Yes.’’ We were afraid to ask him about that door, so we asked Masrūq to inquire, and he asked Ḥudhaifa regarding it. Ḥudhaifa said, “The door was ‘Umar We further asked Hudhaifa whether ‘Umar knew what that door meant. Hudhaifa replied in the affirmative and added, “He knew it as one knows that there will be a night before the tomorrow morning.”

(24) CHAPTER. Whoever gave things in charity while he was a Muṣrīk(1) and then embraced Islām.

1436. Narrated Ḥākim bin Ḥizām: I said to Allah’s Messenger, “Before embracing Islām, I used to do good deeds like giving in charity, manumission of slaves, and the keeping of good relations with kith and kin. Shall I be rewarded for those deeds?” The Prophet replied, “You became Muslim with all those good deeds (without losing their reward).”

---

(1) (Ch.24) Muṣrīkūn : See glossary.
(25) CHAPTER. The servant gets a reward for giving charity when ordered by the owner of the property, as long as the servant has no intention of spoiling it (his master's property).

1437. Narrated 'Aishah: Allah's Messenger said, "When a woman gives in charity from her husband's meals with no intention of spoiling it (the property of her husband), she will get a reward for it and her husband too will get a reward for what he earned, and the trustee (store-keeper) will have the reward likewise."

1438. Narrated Abū Musa: The Prophet said, "An honest Muslim trustee (store-keeper) who carries out the orders of his master, and pays fully what he has been ordered to give with a good heart and pays to that person to whom he was ordered to pay, is regarded as one of the two charitable persons."

(26) CHAPTER. The reward of the lady who gives in charity, or provides somebody with food from her husband's house for Allah's sake without spoiling her husband's property.

1439. Narrated 'Aishah: The Prophet said, "If a woman gives in charity from her husband's house..." (See H. No.1440).
1440. The Prophet ﷺ further said, “If a lady gives meals (in charity) from her husband’s house without spoiling her husband’s property, she will get a reward and her husband will also get a reward likewise. The husband will get a reward because of his earnings and the woman because of her spending.”

1441. Narrated ‘Āishah: The Prophet ﷺ said, “When a woman gives in charity from her house meals in Allah’s Cause without spoiling her husband’s property, she will get a reward for it; and her husband will also get the reward for his earnings and the trustee (store-keeper) will get a reward likewise.”

(27) CHAPTER. The Statement of Allâh

"As for him who gives (in charity) and keeps his duty to Allâh and fears Him, and believes in Al-Husna [The Best (i.e., Lâ ilâha illallâh or a reward from Allâh (i.e. Allâh will compensate him for what he will spend in Allâh’s Cause or bless him with Paradise)]. We will make smooth for him the path of ease (goodness). But he who is a greedy, miser and thinks himself self-sufficient, and belies Al-Husna, We will make smooth for him the path for evil.’ (V.92:5-10)

And the saying of the angels: “O Allâh, compensate a person who spends in Your Cause for what he has spent.”
1442. Narrated Abū Hurairah: The Prophet said, "Every day two angels come down (from the heaven) and one of them says, 'O Allāh! Compensate every person who spends in Your Cause,' and the other (angel) says, 'O Allāh! Destroy every miser.'"

(28) CHAPTER. The examples of an almsgiver and a miser.

1443. Narrated Abū Hurairah: The Prophet said, "The example of a miser and an almsgiver is like the example of two persons wearing two iron cloaks." (In another narration Abū Hurairah narrates:) Allāh’s Messenger said, "The example of an almsgiver and a miser is like the example of two persons wearing two iron cloaks from their breasts to their collar bones; and when the almsgiver gives in charity, the cloak becomes capacious till it covers his whole body to such an extent that it hides his fingertips and covers his footprints (obliterates his tracks). And when the miser wants to spend, it sticks and (its) every ring gets stuck to its place, he tries to widen it, but it does not become wide.'"
1444. See 1443.

(29) CHAPTER. Giving in charity from the earnings and trade, as is referred to in the Statement of Allâh:

"O you who believe! Spend of the good things which you have (legally) earned... (up to) ... and Worthy of all praise." (V.2:267)

(30) CHAPTER. Every Muslim has to give in charity; and whoever does not find anything to give, should do all that is good [i.e. enjoin Al-Ma'rûf (Islâmí Monotheism, and all that Islâm has ordained)].

1445. Narrated Abû Musa: The Prophet said, "Every Muslim has to give in charity." The people asked, "O Allâh's Prophet! If someone has nothing to give, what will he do?" He said, "He should work with his hands and benefit himself and also give in charity (from what he earns)." The people further asked, "If he cannot do even that?" He replied, "He should help the needy who appeal for help." Then the people asked, "If he cannot do that?" He replied, "Then he should perform all that is good [i.e. enjoin Al-Ma'rûf (Islâmí Monotheism, and all that Islâm has ordained)] and keep away from all that is evil (i.e. disbelief, polytheism, and all that Islâm has forbidden) and this will be regarded as charitable deeds."
(31) CHAPTER. How much is Zakāt, and how much may be given in charity? And whoever gave a sheep in charity.

1446. Narrated Umm 'Atiyya: A sheep was sent to Nusaiba Al-Ansariya (as charity) and she gave some of it to 'Āishah. The Prophet asked ‘Āishah for something to eat. ‘Āishah replied that there was nothing except what Nusaiba had sent of that sheep. The Prophet said to her, "Bring it as it has reached its place." (1)

(32) CHAPTER. The Zakāt of silver.

1447. Narrated Abū Sa‘īd Al-Khudri: Allah’s Messenger said, "There is no Zakāt on less than five camels, and also there is no Zakāt on less than five Awāq (of silver). (5 Awāq = 22 Fransa Riyals of Yemen or 200 Dirhams i.e., approx. 640 Grams.) And there is no Zakāt on less than five Awsuq. (2) (A special measure of food-grains, and one Wasq equals 60 Sa‘.) [For gold, 20 Mithqal, i.e., approx. 94 grams, i.e., equal to 12 Guinea English. No Zakāt for less than 12 Guinea (English) of gold or for silver less than 22 Fransa Riyals of Yemen, i.e., 200 Dirhams, i.e., approx. 640 grams of silver. (This is called Niṣab). (3)

---

(1) (H.1446) For further details see Hadith No.1494 and 1495.
(2) (H.1447) Five Awsuq (i.e., approx. 675 Kilograms of dates or fruits or food grain. [1 Wasq 60 Sa‘ 135 Kilograms.]
(3) (H.1447) Niṣab: Minimum amount of property liable to payment of the Zakāt. e.g. Niṣab of Gold is twenty (20) Mithqal, i.e., approx. 94 grams; Niṣab of silver is two hundred (200) Dirhams, i.e., approx. 640 grams; Niṣab of food-grains and fruit is 5 Awsuq, i.e., 673.5 Kilograms. Niṣab of camels is 5 camels; Niṣab of cows is 5 cows; and Niṣab of sheep is 40 sheep, etc.
(33) CHAPTER. *Zakāt* may be paid in kind (and not in cash).

Ṭawús said: Mu‘adh said to the people of Yemen, “Bring me small, or used garments in charity in place of barley and millet as it will be easy for you and useful for the Companions of the Prophet in Al-Madīna.” The Prophet said, “Khālid has kept his shield and arms for Allāh’s Cause.” And the Prophet said to the ladies, “Give in charity, even from your ornaments.” The Prophet did not differentiate between the *Zakāt* and other kinds of *Ṣadāqa* in this respect. And so the women donated their ear-rings and necklaces. And the Prophet did not specify that what might be paid in kind should be silver or gold.

1448. Narrated Anas: Abū Bakr wrote to me what Allah had instructed His Messenger to do regarding the one who had to pay one *Bint Maḥād* (i.e. one-year-old she-camel) as *Zakāt*, and he did not have it but had got *Bint Labūn* (two-year-old she-camel). (He wrote that) it could be accepted from him as *Zakāt*, and the collector of *Zakāt* would return him 20 Dirhams or two sheep; and if the *Zakāt* prayer had not a *Bint Maḥād*, but he had *Ibn Labūn* (a two-year-old he-camel) then it could be accepted as his *Zakāt*, but he would not be paid anything.

(1) (H.1448) One Dirham equals about 3\(\frac{1}{5}\) grams of silver.
1449. Narrated Ibn `Abbâs: I am a witness that Allâh’s Messenger offered the ‘Eid prayer before delivering the Khutba (religious talk), and then he thought that the women would not be able to hear him (because of the distance), so he went to them along with Bilâl who was spreading his garment. The Prophet advised and ordered them to give in charity. So the women started giving their ornaments (in charity). (The subnarrator Ayyûb pointed towards his ears and neck meaning that they gave ornaments from those places such as ear-rings and necklaces.)

(34) CHAPTER. The individual property of different people should neither be gathered together nor the joint property should be divided, in assessing the Zakât.

Narrated Sâlim: Ibn `Umar said: The Prophet stated a similar narration.

1450. Narrated Anas: Abû Bakr wrote to me what was made compulsory by Allâh’s Messenger and that was (regarding the payments of Zakât, and there was mentioned in it): Neither the property of different people should be gathered together nor the joint property should be split for fear of (paying more, or receiving less) Zakât. (1)

(1) (H.1450) e.g. If somebody owns forty to one hundred and twenty sheep, he should pay only one sheep. But if there are three persons having forty sheep each, they are not permitted to gather their sheep together intending to pay one sheep only whereas each has to pay one sheep. Similarly, one person having forty sheep is not permitted to divide his sheep intending not to pay the Zakât. This Hadith may also mean that the Zakât collector should not do the same with the intention of collecting more Zakât. He should not divide the property of one person or gather the property of different persons when collecting Zakât.
(35) CHAPTER. If a property is equally owned by two partners, its Zakāt is to be paid as a whole, and each partner is to pay the same amount.

Tawāṣ and ‘Aṭā’ say that if two partners know their shares separately, their property will not be collected together. And Sufyān says that Zakāt will not be due till one partner has forty sheep and the other partner also has the same number of sheep.

1451. Narrated Anas: Abū Bakr رضي الله عنه: wrote to me what Allah’s Messenger ﷺ has made compulsory (regarding Zakāt) and there was mentioned in it: If a property is equally owned by two partners, they should pay the combined Zakāt and it will be considered that both of them have paid their Zakāt equally.

(36) CHAPTER. The Zakāt of camels.

And this was narrated from Abū Bakr, Abū Dhar and Abū Hurairah رضي الله عنهم on the authority of the Prophet ﷺ.

1452. Narrated Abū Sa‘īd Al-Khudrī رضي الله عنه: A bedouin asked Allah’s Messenger ﷺ about the emigration. The Prophet ﷺ said, “May Allah have mercy on you! The matter of emigration is very hard. Have you got camels? Do you pay their Zakāt?” The bedouin said, “Yes, I have camels and I pay their Zakāt.” The Prophet ﷺ said, “Work beyond the seas and Allah will not decrease (waste the reward of) any of your good deeds.” (See Hadīth No. 3923, Vol.5).
(37) CHAPTER. Whoever has to pay a *Bint Makhād* (one-year-old she-camel) as *Zakāt* and has not got it.

1453. Narrated Anas : Abū Bakr narrated to me about the *Zakāt* which Allah had ordered His Messenger to observe: Whoever had to pay *Jadh’a* (*Jadh’a* means a four-year-old she-camel) as *Zakāt* from his herd of camels and he had not got one, and he had *Hiqa* (three-year-old she-camel), that *Hiqa* should be accepted from him along with two sheep if they were available or twenty Dirhams and whoever had to pay *Hiqa* as *Zakāt* and he had no *Hiqa* but had a *Jadh’a*, the *Jadh’a* should be accepted from him, and the *Zakāt* collector should pay back (or return) to him twenty Dirhams or two sheep; and whoever had to pay *Hiqa* as *Zakāt* and he had not got one, but had a *Bint Labūn* (two-year-old she-camel), it should be accepted from him along with two sheep or twenty Dirhams; and whoever had to pay *Bint Labūn* and had a *Hiqa*, that *Hiqa* should be accepted from him and the *Zakāt* collector should pay back (or return) to him twenty Dirhams or two sheep; and whoever had to pay *Bint Labūn* and he had not got one but had a *Bint Makhād* (one-year-old she-camel), that *Bint Makhād* should be accepted from him along with twenty Dirhams or two sheep.
(38) CHAPTER. The Zakāt of sheep.

1454. Narrated Anas: When Abū Bakr sent me to (collect the Zakāt from) Bahriya, he wrote to me the following:

(In the Name of Allāh, the Most Gracious, the Most Merciful).

These are the orders for Zakāt which Allāh's Messenger had made obligatory for every Muslim, and which Allāh had ordered His Messenger to observe: Whoever amongst the Muslims is asked to pay Zakāt accordingly, he should pay it (to the Zakāt collector) and whoever is asked more than that (what is specified in this script) he should not pay it. For twenty-four (24) camels or less, sheep are to be paid as Zakāt; for every five (5) camels one (1) sheep is to be paid, and if there are between twenty-five (25) to thirty-five (35) camels, one (1) Bint Makhād (one-year-old she-camel) is to be paid; and if they are between thirty-six (36) to forty-five (45) camels, one (1) Bint Labūn (two-years-old she-camel) is to be paid; and if they are between forty-six (46) to sixty (60) camels, one (1) Hiqqa (three-years-old she-camel) is to be paid; and if the number is between sixty-one (61) to seventy-five (75) camels, one (1) Jadh'a (four-years-old she-camel) is to be paid; and if the number is between seventy-six (76) to ninety (90) camels, two (2) Bint Labūn are to be paid; and if they are from ninety-one (91) to one hundred and twenty (120) camels, two (2) Hiqqas are to be paid; and if they are over one hundred and twenty (120) camels, for every forty (40) [over one hundred and twenty (120)] one (1) Bint Labūn is to be paid, and for every fifty (50) camels [over one hundred and twenty (120)], one (1) Hiqqa is to be paid; and whoever has got only four (4) camels, has to pay nothing as Zakāt, but if
the owner of these four (4) camels, wants to give something, he can.

If the number of camels increases to five (5), the owner has to pay one (1) sheep as Zakat. As regards the Zakat for the (flock) of sheep; if they are between forty (40) and one hundred and twenty (120) (sheep), one (1) sheep is to be in Zakat; and if they are between one hundred and twenty (120) to two hundred (200) (sheep), two (2) sheep are to be paid; and if they are between two hundred (200) to three hundred (300) sheep, three (3) sheep are to be paid; and for over three hundred (300) sheep, for every extra one hundred (100) sheep, one (1) sheep is to be paid as Zakat.

[No Zakat for sheep less the forty (40)]

And if somebody has got less than forty (40) sheep, no Zakat is required, but if he wants to give, he can. For silver: the Zakat is one-fortieth of the lot (i.e. 2.5%), and if its value is less than two hundred (200) Dirhams [i.e. approx. six hundred and forty (640) Grams] there is no Zakät but if the owner wants to pay he can.

(39) CHAPTER. Neither an old, nor a defective animal, nor a male-goat may be taken as Zakat except if the Zakat collector wishes (to take it).

1455. Narrated Anas: Abū Bakr wrote to me what Allah had ordered His Messenger (about Zakat) which goes: Neither an old nor a defective animal, nor a male-goat may be taken as Zakat except if the Zakat collector wishes (to take it)\(^1\).

---

\(^1\) (H.1455) The Arabic word which means ‘Zakat-collector’ when slightly modified may mean ‘the Zakat payer’. In this case the Hadith will mean: The male-goat may not be taken as Zakat if the owner does not want to give it up. If we regard the ‘Zakat-collector’ as the proper word then the meaning is: The Zakat-collector is not to take an old or defective animal or a male-goat unless he finds no better alternative.
(40) CHAPTER. To accept a she-kid as Zakāt.

1456. Narrated Abū Hurairah: Abū Bakr said, "By Allah! If they (pay me the Zakāt and) withhold even a she-kid which they used to pay during the lifetime of Allah’s Messenger, I will fight with them for it."

1457. ‘Umar said, “It was nothing but Allah Who opened Abū Bakr’s chest towards the decision to fight, and I came to know that his decision was right.”

(41) CHAPTER. “Do not take the best from the property of the people as Zakāt.”

1458. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbās: When Allah’s Messenger sent Mu‘ādh to Yemen, he said (to him), “You are going to a nation (from) the people of the Scripture (Divine Book – Jews, Christians etc.) First of all invite them to worship Allah (Alone – Islamic Monotheism i.e. to testify Lā ilāha illallāh Muhammad Ar-Rasūl Allāh – none has the right to be worshipped but Allah, and Muhammad is the Messenger of Allah) and when they (testify) Allah, then inform them that Allah has enjoined on them, five
Salāt (prayers) in every day and night (24 hours); and if they start offering these Salāt, inform them that Allāh has enjoined on them, the Zakāt. And it is to be taken from the rich amongst them and given to the poor amongst them; and if they obey you in that, take Zakāt from them but avoid (don’t take) the best property of the people as Zakāt.”

(42) CHAPTER. There is no Zakāt for less than five camels.

1459. Narrated Abū Sa‘īd (Al-Khudri) ṭūṣφ: Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ said, “No Zakāt is imposed on less than five Awsuq of dates; no Zakāt is imposed on less than five Awāq of silver, and no Zakāt is imposed on less than five camels.” [See Niṣāb footnote No. 3, Ḥadîth No. 1447].

(43) CHAPTER. The Zakāt of cows. (1)

Abū Ḥumaid told that the Prophet ﷺ said, “I do not want a person to come to Allāh with a mooing cow (on the Day of Resurrection).”

(1) (Ch. 42) For every thirty cows there is (to be paid as Zakāt) one Tabiyā (one-year-old cow) and no Zakāt for less than thirty cows. For every forty cows there is (to be paid as Zakāt) one Mussinā (two-years-old cow).
1460. Narrated Abū Dhar: Once I went to him (the Prophet) and he said, “By Allâh in Whose Hands my life is (or probably said, ‘By Allâh, except Whom none has the right to be worshipped), whoever had camels or cows or sheep and did not pay their Zakât, those animals will be brought on the Day of Resurrection far bigger and fatter than before; and they will tread him under their hooves, and will butt him with their horns, and (those animals will come in circle). When the last does its turn, the first will start again, and this punishment will go on till Allâh has finished the Judgement amongst the people.”

(44) CHAPTER. The giving of Zakât to relatives.

And the Prophet said, “The one who gives Zakât to kith and kin shall get double reward; one for fulfilling the rights of kith and kin, and the other for paying the Zakât.”

1461. Narrated Ishâq bin ‘Abdullâh bin Abî Ṭalähâ: I heard Anas bin Mâlik saying, “Abû Ṭalâh had more property of date-palm trees (gardens) than any other amongst the Ansâr in Al-Madînâ, and the most beloved of them to him was Bairuḥâ’ garden, and it was in front of the mosque of the Prophet. Allâh’s Messenger used to go there and used to drink its nice water.” Anas added, “When these Verses were revealed:

‘By no means shall you attain Al-Bîr (piety, righteousness — here it means Allâh’s reward i.e., Paradise) unless you
spend (in Allâh’s Cause) of that which you love...’ (V.3:92)

Abû Talha said to Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ: ‘O Allâh’s Messenger! Allâh, the Blessed, the Superior says: By no means shall you attain Al-Birr unless you spend (in Allâh’s Cause) of that which you love. And no doubt, Bairuha’ garden is the most beloved of all my property to me. So, I want to give it in charity in Allâh’s Cause. I expect its reward from Allâh. O Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ! Spend it where Allâh makes you think it feasible.’ On that Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ said, ‘Bravo! It is useful property. I have heard what you have said (O Abû Talha), and I think it would be proper if you gave it to your kith and kin.’ Abû Talha said, I will do so, O Allâh’s Messenger.’ Then Abû Talha distributed that garden amongst his relatives and his cousins.”

1462. Narrated Abû Sa‘îd Al-Khudri: One on the day of Eid-ul-Fîtr or Eid-ul-Adha, Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ went out to the Musâllâ (praying place). After finishing the Salât (prayer), he delivered the Khutba (religious talk) and ordered the people to give alms. He said, “O people! Give alms.” Then he went towards the women and said, “O women! Give alms, for I have seen that the majority of the dwellers of Hell-fire were you (women).” The women asked, “O Allâh’s Messenger! What is the reason for it?” He replied, “O women! You curse frequently, and are ungrateful to your
husbands. I have not seen anyone more deficient in intelligence and religion than you. O women, some of you can lead a cautious wise man astray.” Then he left. And when he reached his house, Zainab, the wife of Ibn Mas'ūd, came and asked permission to enter. It was said, “O Allāh’s Messenger! It is Zainab.” He asked, “Which Zainab?” The reply was that she was the wife of Ibn Mas'ūd. He said, “Yes, allow her to enter.” And she was admitted. Then she said, “O Prophet of Allāh! Today, you ordered people to give alms and I had an ornament and intended to give it as alms, but Ibn Mas'ūd said that he and his children deserved it more than anybody else.” The Prophet replied, “Ibn Mas'ūd had spoken the truth. Your husband and your children had more right to it than anybody else.”

(45) CHAPTER. No Zakāt is imposed on the horse of a Muslim.

1463. Narrated Abū Hurairah: Allāh’s Messenger said, “There is no Zakāt either on a horse or a slave belonging to a Muslim.”
(46) CHAPTER. No zakāt is imposed on the slave belonging to a Muslim.

1464. Narrated Abū Hurairah: The Prophet ﷺ said, “There is no zakāt either on a slave or on a horse belonging to a Muslim.”

(47) CHAPTER. Giving in charity to orphans.

1465. Narrated Abū Sa‘īd Al-Khudrī: Once the Prophet ﷺ sat on a pulpit and we sat around him. Then he said, “The things I am afraid of most for your sake is the pleasures and splendours of the world and its beauties which will be disclosed to you.” Somebody said, “O Allah’s Messenger! Can the good bring forth evil?” The Prophet ﷺ remained silent for a while. It was said to that person, “What is wrong with you? You are talking to the Prophet while he is not talking to you.” Then we noticed that he was being inspired Divinely. Then the Prophet ﷺ wiped off his sweat and said, “Where is the questioner?” It seemed as if the Prophet ﷺ liked his question. Then he said, “Good never brings forth evil. Indeed it is like what grows on the banks of a water-stream which either kills or makes the animals sick, except if an animal...
eats its fill the *Khadirā* (a kind of vegetable) and then faces the sun, and then passes out dung and urine, and grazes again. No doubt this wealth is sweet and green. Blessed is the wealth of a Muslim from which he gives to the poor, the orphans and to needy travellers (Or the Prophet said something similar to it). No doubt, whoever takes it illegally will be like the one who eats but is never satisfied, and his wealth will be a witness against him on the Day of Resurrection.”

(48) CHAPTER. The giving of Zakāt to one’s husband and to orphans under one’s protection.

And this was narrated by Abū Sa‘īd on the authority of the Prophet.

1466. Narrated ‘Amr bin Al-Hārith: Zainab, the wife of ‘Abdullāh (bin Mas‘ūd) said, “I was in the mosque and saw the Prophet saying, ‘O women! Give alms even from your ornaments.’” Zainab used to provide for ‘Abdullāh and those orphans who were under her protection. So she said to ‘Abdullāh, “Will you ask Allah’s Messenger whether it will be sufficient for me to spend part of the Zakāt on you and the orphans who are under my protection?” He said: “You yourself ask Allah’s Messenger (about it).” (Zainab added): So, I went to the Prophet and I saw there an *Ansārī* woman who was standing at the door (of the Prophet) with a similar problem as mine. Bilāl passed by us and we asked him, ‘Ask the Prophet whether it is permissible for me to
spend in charity on my husband and the orphans under my protection.’ And we requested Bilāl not to inform the Prophet about us. So Bilāl went inside and asked the Prophet regarding our problem. The Prophet asked, ‘Who are those two?’ Bilāl replied that she was Zainab. The Prophet asked, ‘Which Zainab?’ Bilāl said, ‘The wife of ‘Abdullāh (bin Mas‘ūd).’ The Prophet said, ‘Yes, (it is sufficient for her) and she will receive a double reward (for that): One for helping relatives, and the other for giving As-Ṣadaqa (charity etc.).’

1467. Narrated Zainab, the daughter of Umm Salama: My mother said, ‘O Allah’s Messenger! Shall I receive a reward if I spend for the sustenance of Abū Salama’s offspring, and in fact they are also my sons?’ The Prophet replied, ‘Spend on them and you will get a reward for what you spend on them.’

(49) CHAPTER. The Statement of Allāh Ta‘ālā:

“(Zakāt should be spent)… to free the captives; and for those in debt; and for Allāh’s Cause…” (V.9:60)
And Al-Hasan said, “It is permissible to manumit one’s father with one’s Zakat, and also to give from it to Mujahidin (Muslims fighting in holy battles) and to those who have not performed Hajj.” Then he recited this holy Verse: As-Sadaqat (Zakat) are only for the poor....’ (V.9:60)

Then he recited this holy Verse: As-Sadaqat (Zakat) are only for the poor....’ (V.9:60)

[8 types of people - (see footnote 1 of Chap.1. The Book of Zakat, before H. No.1395)] Al-Hasan went on, “And if you give Zakat to any of them, you will receive its reward.” And the Prophet said, “No doubt, Khalid has kept his armour for Allah’s Cause.” And Abü Lás said, “The Prophet made us ride on camels given as Zakat, for the purpose of performing Hajj.”

1468. Narrated Abü Hurairah: Allah’s Messenger ordered (a person) to collect Zakat, and that person returned and told him that Ibn Jamil, Khalid bin Al-Walid, and ‘Abbâs bin ‘Abdul Muţtalib had refused to give Zakat.” The Prophet said, “What made Ibn Jamil refuse to give Zakat, though he was a poor man, and was made wealthy by Allah and His Messenger? But you are unfair in asking Zakat from Khalid as he is keeping his armour for Allah’s Cause (for Jihād).” As for ‘Abbâs bin ‘Abdul Muţtalib, he is the uncle of Allah’s Messenger and Zakat is compulsory on him and he should pay it and a similar amount along with it (i.e. double).”

(1) (H. 1468) From this narration religious scholars consider it permissible to buy weapons (artillery, missiles, tanks, planes etc.) for Jihād from the Zakat. (See Fah Al-Bâr).
(50) CHAPTER. To abstain from begging.

1469. Narrated Abū Sa‘īd Al-Khudrī: Some Anṣāri persons asked for (something) from Allah's Messenger and he gave them. They again asked him for (something) and he again gave them. And then again they asked him and he gave them again till all that was with him finished. And then he said, "If I had anything, I would not keep it away from you. (Remember) whoever abstains from asking others, Allah will make him contented, and whoever tries to make himself self-sufficient, Allah will make him self-sufficient. And whoever remains patient, Allah will make him patient. Nobody can be given a blessing better and greater than patience."(1)

1470. Narrated Abū Hurairah: Allah's Messenger said, "By Him in Whose Hand my life is, it is better for anyone of you to take a rope and cut the wood (from the forest) and carry it over his back and sell it (as a means of earning his living), rather than to ask a person for something and that person may or may not give him."

1471. Narrated Az-Zubair bin Al-'Awwām: The Prophet said,

(1) (H.1469) The Arabic word Sabar which means patience conveys also the meaning of perseverance, constancy and endurance.
"It is better for anyone of you to take a rope (and cut) and bring a bundle of wood (from the forest) over his back and sell it; and Allāh will save his face (from the Hell-fire) because of that, rather than to ask the people who may or may not give him."

1472. Narrated ʻUrwa bin Az-Zubair and Saʿīd bin Al-Musaiyab: Ḥakīm bin Hizām  said, "(Once) I asked Allāh’s Messenger  for something and he gave it to me. Again I asked and he gave (it to me). Again I asked and he gave (it to me). And then he said, “O Ḥakīm! This property is like a sweet fresh fruit; whoever takes it without greediness, he is blessed in it, and whoever takes it with greediness, he is not blessed in it. And he is like a person who eats but is never satisfied; and the upper (giving) hand is better than the lower (receiving) hand.”

Hakīm added, “I said to Allāh’s Messenger  , ‘By Him (Allāh) Who sent you with the Truth, I shall never ask or take anything from anybody after you, till I leave this world.’”

Then Abū Bakr  (during his caliphate) called Ḥakīm to give him his share from the war booty (like the other Companions of the Prophet ), but he refused to accept anything. Then ʻUmar  (during his caliphate) called him to give him his share, but he refused (to take). On that ʻUmar said, “O Muslims! I would like you to witness that I offered Ḥakīm his share from this booty and he refused to take it.” So Ḥakīm never took anything from anybody after the Prophet  till he died.
(51) CHAPTER. The one whom Allah gives something without his asking for it, or without avarice for it. (And Allah's Statement): “And those in whose wealth there is a recognised right, for the beggar who asks, and for the unlucky who has lost his property and wealth (and his means of living has been straitened).” (V.70:24-25).

1473. Narrated 'Umar (bin Al-Khattab) رضي الله عنه: Allâh's Messenger ﷺ used to give me something but I would say to him, "Would you give it to a poorer and more needy one than me?" The Prophet ﷺ said to me, "Take it, if you are given something from this property, without asking for it or having greed for it, take it; and if not given, do not run for it."

(52) CHAPTER. Whoever asks the people (for something) so as to increase his wealth.

1474. Narrated 'Abdullah bin 'Umar رضي الله عنهما: The Prophet ﷺ said, "A man keeps on asking others for something till he comes on the Day of Resurrection having no flesh on his face."
1475. The Prophet added, “On the Day of Resurrection, the sun will come near (to the people) to such an extent that the sweat will reach up to the middle of the ears, so, when all the people are in that state, they will ask Adam for help, and then Moses, and then Muhammad.” The subnarrator added “Muhammad will intercede with Allāh to judge amongst the people. Then he will proceed on till he will hold the ring of the door (of Paradise); and then Allāh will exalt him to Maqām Maḥmūd (i.e. the Honour of intercession on the Day of Resurrection). And all the people of the gathering will thank him.

1476. Narrated Abū Hurairah: The Prophet said, “Al-Miskīn (the poor) is...
not the one who asks a morsel or two (of meals) from the others, but Al-Miskin is the one who has nothing and is ashamed to beg from others.”

1477. Narrated Ash-Sha’bi: The clerk of Al-Mughira bin Shu’ba narrated, “Muawiyya wrote to Al-Mughira bin Shu’ba: Write to me something which you have heard from the Prophet ﷺ. So Al-Mughira wrote, ‘I heard the Prophet ﷺ saying: Allah has hated for you three things:

1. Qil and Qal (sinful and useless talk like backbiting etc. or that you talk too much or talk about others.)

2. Wasting of wealth (by extravagance with lack of wisdom and thinking etc.).

3. And asking too many questions (in disputed religious matters etc.) or asking others for something (except in great need).

(See Hadith No. 2408, Vol. 3)

1478. Narrated Sa’id (bin Abi Waqqas) رضي الله عنه: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ distributed something amongst a group of people while I was sitting amongst them, but he left a man whom I considered the best of the lot. So, I went up to Allah’s Messenger ﷺ and asked him secretly, “Why have you left that person? By Allah! I consider him a believer.” The Prophet ﷺ said, “Or merely a Muslim.” I remained quiet for a while but could not help repeating my question because of what I knew about him. I said, “O Allah’s Messenger! Why have you left that person? By Allah! I consider him a
believer.” The Prophet ﷺ said, “Or merely a Muslim.” I remained quiet for a while but could not help repeating my question because of what I knew about him. I said, “O Allah’s Messenger! Why have you left that person? By Allah! I consider him a believer.” The Prophet ﷺ said, “Or merely a Muslim.” Then Allah’s Messenger ﷺ said, “(O Sa’d!) I give to a person while another is dearer to me, for fear that he may be thrown in the Hell-fire on his face (by reneging from Islam).”

1479. Narrated Abu Hurairah: Allah’s Messenger ﷺ said, Al-Maskin (the poor) is not the one who goes round the people and asks them for a mouthful or two (of meals) or a date or two, but Al-Maskin (the poor) is that who has not enough (money) to satisfy his needs and whose condition is not known to others, that others may give him something in charity,
and who does not beg of people.” (See H. No. 1476).

1480. Narrated Abū Hurairah: The Prophet said, “No doubt, it is better for a person to take a rope and proceed in the morning to the mountains and cut the wood and then sell it, and eat from this income and give alms from it than to ask others for something.”

(54) CHAPTER. (The lawfulness of) estimating the amount of the date-fruits while they are still on the palms for the sake of taking the Zakāt.

1481. Narrated Abū Ḥumaid As-Sāʿīdī: We took part in the Ghazwa (holy battle) of Tabūk in the company of the Prophet, and when we arrived at the Wādī Al-Qūrā, there was a woman in her garden. The Prophet asked his Companions to estimate the amount of the fruits in the garden, and Allāh’s Messenger estimated it at ten Awṣuq (One Wasq = 60 Ṣa‘ and 1 Ṣa‘ = 3 kg. approximately). The Prophet said to that lady, “Check what your garden will yield.” When we reached Tabūk, the Prophet said, “There will be a strong wind tonight and so no one should stand and whoever has camel, should fasten it.” So, we
fastened our camels. A strong wind blew at night and a man stood up and he was blown away to a mountain called Taiy. The king of 'Aila sent a white mule and a sheet for wearing to the Prophet as a present, and wrote to the Prophet that his people would stay in their place (and will pay Jizya taxation.)

When the Prophet reached Wādī Al-Qurã he asked that woman how much her garden had yielded. She said, “Ten Awsuq,” and that was what Allâh’s Messenger had estimated. Then the Prophet said, “I want to reach Al-Madîna quickly, and whoever among you wants to accompany me should hurry up.”

The subnarrator Ibn Bakkar said something which meant: When the Prophet saw Al-Madîna he said, “This is Ṭāba.” And when he saw the mountain of Uhud, he said, “This mountain loves us and we love it. Shall I tell you of the best amongst the families of the Ansâr?” We replied in the affirmative. He said, “The family of Bani An-Najjâr and then the family of Bani Abdul-Ashhal, and then the family of Bani Sa’ida or Bani Al-Harith bin Al-Khazraj. (The above-mentioned are the best) but there is goodness in all the families of Ansâr.”

1482. And Sulaiman bin Bilal said, then the family of Bani Al-Harith and then the family of Bani Sa’ida.

Narrated Ibn Abbas: The Prophet said, “This is Uhud mountain, it loves us and we love it.”

(1) (H.1481) Jizya is a head tax imposed by Islam on the people of Scriptures and other people who have a revealed Book when they are under Muslim rule.
CHAPTER. 'Uṣār (i.e., one-tenth of the yield be levied as Zakāt) is to be imposed on the yield of the land which is either irrigated by rain or the running water channel.

‘Umar bin ‘Abdul-‘Azīz did not consider ‘Uṣār compulsory on honey.

1483. Narrated ‘Abdullāh (bin Umar) رضي: The Prophet ﷺ said, “On a land irrigated by rain water or by natural water channels, or if the land is wet due to a nearby water channel, ‘Uṣār (i.e. one-tenth) is compulsory (as Zakāt); and on the land irrigated by the well, half of an ‘Uṣār (i.e. one-twentieth) is compulsory (as Zakāt on the yield of the land).”

CHAPTER. There is no Zakāt on less than five Awsuq [i.e., approx. 675 kilograms]
CHAPTER. Zakāt of dates should be taken during their plucking season. Can a child touch the dates collected as Zakāt?

1485. Narrated Abū Hurairah: Dates used to be brought to Allâh’s Messenger immediately after being plucked. Different persons would bring their dates till a big heap was collected (in front of the Prophet). Once Al-Hasan and Al-Ḥusain were playing with these dates. One of them took a date and put it in his mouth. Allâh’s Messenger looked at him and took it out from his mouth and said, “Don’t you know that Muhammad’s offspring do not eat what is given in charity?”
 Whoever sold his fruits, his date-palm trees, his land or his crops and the 'Uṣṣr or Zakāt was due on them, and gave Zakāt from some other property, or sold his fruits when Zakāt was due.

And the statement of the Prophet ﷺ: “Don’t sell the fruits till they are ripe (free from blight).” So, the Prophet ﷺ did not stop anyone from selling the fruits after they are ripe (free from blight), and he did not differentiate between those on whom the Zakāt was due and those on whom it was not due (in this respect.).

1486. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar رضي الله عنهما: The Prophet ﷺ had forbidden the sale of dates till they were good (ripe), and when it was asked what is meant by that; the Prophet said, “Till there is no danger of blight.”

1487. Narrated Jābir bin ‘Abdullāh رضي الله عنهما: The Prophet ﷺ had forbidden the sale of fruits till they were ripe (free from blight).

1488. Narrated Anas bin Mālik رضي الله عنه: Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ forbade the selling of fruits until they were ripe. The Prophet ﷺ
added, “It means that they become red.”

(59) CHAPTER. Can one buy the thing which he has given in charity? There is no harm in buying what was given as Zakāt by someone else, for the Prophet forbade the alms-giver (particularly) to buy what he himself had given in charity, but he did not forbid others to buy it.

1489. Narrated ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Umar: ‘Umar bin Al-Khaṭṭāb gave a horse in charity in Allah’s Cause, and later he saw it being sold in the market and intended to purchase it. Then he went to the Prophet and asked his permission. The Prophet said, “Do not take back what you have given in charity.” (The subnarrator added,) “For this reason, Ibn ‘Umar never purchased the things which he had given in charity, and in case he had purchased something (unknowingly) he would give it in charity again.

1490. Narrated ‘Umar: Once I gave a horse in Allah’s Cause (in charity) but that person did not take care of it. I intended to buy it, as I thought he would sell it at a low price. So, I asked the Prophet about it. He said, “Neither buy, nor take back your alms which you have given, even if it is given to you (or the seller were willing to sell it) for one Dirham; for he who takes back his alms is like the one who swallows his own vomit.”
(60) CHAPTER. What is said regarding what is given to the Prophet ﷺ and his offspring in charity.

1491. Narrated Abū Hurairah ﺎ. ﺎ: Al-Ḥaṣan bin ‘Ali ﺎ. ﺎ took a date from the dates given in charity and put it in his mouth. The Prophet ﷺ said, “Expel it from your mouth. Don’t you know that we do not eat a thing which is given in charity?”

(61) CHAPTER. As-Ṣadaqa (alms) for the freed slave-girls of the wives of the Prophet ﷺ (do they accept things given in charity)?

1492. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbās ﺎ. ﺎ: The Prophet ﷺ, saw a dead sheep which had been given in charity to a freed slave-girl of Maimūna, the wife of the Prophet ﷺ. The Prophet ﷺ said, “Why don’t you get the benefit of its hide?” They said, “It is dead.” He replied, “Only to eat (its meat) is illegal.”

1493. Narrated Al-Aswad: ‘Āishah ﺎ. ﺎ intended to buy Barira (a slave-girl) in order to manumit her, and her masters
intended to put the condition that her Al-walā would be for them. ‘Aishah mentioned that to the Prophet ﷺ who said to her, “Buy her, as the Walā is for the manumitter.” Once some meat was presented to the Prophet ﷺ and ‘Aishah said to him, “This (meat) was given in charity to Barira.” He said, “It is an object of charity for Barira but a gift for us.”

(62) CHAPTER. When alms is transferred.
(It will be legal for the Prophet’s folk to accept it as a gift.)

1494. Narrated Umm ‘Ayya Al-Anṣāriya: The Prophet ﷺ went to ‘Aishah رضي الله عنها and asked her whether she had something to eat. She replied that she had nothing except the mutton (piece) which Nusaiba (Umm ‘Atiyya) had sent to us (Barira) in charity.” The Prophet ﷺ said, “It has reached its place (and now it is not a thing of charity but a gift for us).”

1495. Narrated Anas: Some meat was presented to the Prophet ﷺ and it had been given to Barira (the freed slave-girl of Aishah) in charity. He ﷺ said, “This meat is a thing of charity for Barira but it is a gift for us.”
(63) CHAPTER. Zakāt should be taken from the rich (Muslims) and given to the poor (Muslims) wherever they are.

1496. Narrated Abū Maʿbad, the slave of Ibn ʿAbbas: Allāh’s Messenger said to Muʿadh when he sent him to Yemen, “You will go to the people of the Scripture (Jews and Christians). So, when you reach there, invite them to testify that Lā ilāha illallāh (none has the right to be worshipped but Allāh), and that Muhammad is Allāh’s Messenger (Islamic Monotheism). And if they obey you in that, tell them that Allāh has enjoined on them five Salāt (prayer) in each day and night (24 hours). And if they obey you in that, tell them that Allāh has made it obligatory on them to pay the Sadaqa (Zakāt) which will be taken from the rich among them and given to the poor among them. If they obey you in that, then avoid taking the best of their possessions, and be afraid of the curse of an oppressed person because there is no screen between his invocation and Allāh.” (See H. No. 1395).

(64) CHAPTER. The invoking and supplicating Allāh of the Imām for the one who gives in charity. And the Statement of Allāh: “Take Sadaqa (alms) from their wealth in order to purify them and sanctify them with it, and invoke Allāh for them. Verily, your invocations are a source of security for them…” (V.9:103)
1497. Narrated ‘Abdullāh bin Abū Aufa: Whenever a person brought his alms to the Prophet ﷺ, the Prophet ﷺ would say, “O Allâh! Send Your Blessings upon so-and-so.” My father went to the Prophet ﷺ with his alms and the Prophet ﷺ said, “O Allâh! Send Your Blessings upon the offspring of Abû Aûfā.”

(65) CHAPTER. (Is Zakât imposed on) what is taken out of the sea (or not)?

And Ibn ‘Abbâs ﷺ said, “Ambergris (a special kind of perfume), is not Rikâţ(1), but a thing which is thrown out by the sea.” And Al-Hasan said, “Khumus (i.e. one-fifth) is imposed on Ambergris and pearls.” The Prophet ﷺ fixed Khumus(2) on Rikâţ but not on the things taken out of the water.

1498. Narrated Abû Hurairah ﷺ: The Prophet ﷺ said, “A man from Bâni Isrâ’il asked someone from Bâni Isrâ’il to give him a loan of one thousand Dinar, and the latter gave it to him. The debtor went on a voyage but (when the time for the payment of the debt became due) he did not find a boat, so he took a piece of wood and bored it and put 1000 Dinar in it and threw it into the sea. The creditor went out and took the piece of wood to his family to be used as fire-wood.” (See Ḥadîth No. 2291, Vol. 3)

And the Prophet ﷺ mentioned the narration (and said), “When he sawed the wood, he found his money.”

(1) (Ch. 65) Rikâţ: Burried treasure or wealth.
(2) (Ch. 65) 1/5th of the Rikâţ is to be paid to the Muslim treasury.
(66) CHAPTER. There is Khumus on Rikāz.

And Mālik and Ibn Idrīs said, “Rikāz is the buried treasures in the Pre-Islamic Period and Khumus is compulsory on it whether the treasure is small or large, but the mines are not considered as Rikāz.” No doubt, the Prophet had said, “There is no Zakāt on minerals. And Khumus is compulsory on Rikāz.” ’Umar bin ‘Abdul ‘Azīz took five portions out of every two-hundred from minerals. And Al-Ḥasan said, “Khumus is compulsory on Rikāz found in the land owned by non-Muslims, but if found in the Muslim territory there is only Zakāt on it. If one finds a Luqāṭa (fallen property) in the territory of the enemy, he must announce it publicly. And if it belongs to the enemy, then Khumus is compulsory on it. Some people considered minerals as Rikāz similar to the buried treasures of pre-Islamic period.

1499. Narrated Abū Hurairah: Allāh’s Messenger said, “There is no compensation for one killed or wounded by an animal or by falling in a well, or because of working in mines; but Khumus is compulsory on Rikāz (i.e. buried treasure or wealth). [(Khumas) i.e. 1/5th of Rikāz wealth is to be paid to the Muslim treasury]"
(67) CHAPTER. The Statement of Allah: "...And those employed to collect (the funds) ... (V.9:60) (Those employees working for the collection of Zakât, compulsory funds, etc., are to be paid officially.) And the Imam is to supervise and check the work of the collectors.

1500. Narrated Abu Humaid As-Sâ`idi: Allâh’s Messenger appointed a man called Ibn Al-Lutabiyya, from the tribe of Al-Asd to collect Zakât from Banî Sulaim. When he returned, (after collecting the Zakât) the Prophet checked the account with him.

(68) CHAPTER. The use of the camels given as Zakât and their milk for travellers.

1501. Narrated Anas: Some people from ‘Uraina tribe came to Al-Madina and its climate did not suit them. So Allâh’s Messenger allowed them to go to the herd of camels (given as Zakât); and they drank their milk and urine (as medicine), but they killed the shepherd and drove away all the camels. So, Allâh’s Messenger sent (men) in their pursuit to catch them, and they were brought, and he had their hands and feet cut, and their eyes were branded with heated pieces of iron and they were left in the Harra (a stony place at Al-Madina) biting the stones. (See Hadîth No. 233, Vol. 1)
(69) CHAPTER. Branding the camels given in As-Šadaqa (Zakat) by the Imam with his own hands.

1502. Narrated Anas bin Mālik: I took 'Abdullāh bin Abū Talīa to Allah's Messenger to perform Taḥnīk for him. (Taḥnīk was a custom among the Muslims that whenever a child was born they used to take it to the Prophet who would chew a piece of date and put a part of its juice in the child's mouth). I saw the Prophet, and he had an instrument for branding in his hands and was branding the camels of Zakat.

(70) CHAPTER. Obligation of Sadaqat-ul-Fitr. [It is also called Zakāt-ul-Fitr, and is obligatory. It should be paid by the Muslims at the end of the month of Ramaḍān (Fasting) before the prayer of 'Eid-ul-Fitr].

And Abū Al-'Āliya, 'Āṭa and Ibn Sīrīn considered Sadaqat-ul-Fitr as obligatory.

1503. Narrated Ibn 'Umar: Allah's Messenger made it the payment of one șā' of dates or one șā' of barley as Zakāt-ul-Fitr on every Muslim slave or free, male or female, young or old; and he ordered that it be paid before the people went out to offer 'Eid. (One șā' = 3 kilograms approx.)
(71) CHAPTER. *Sadaqat-ul-Fiṭr* is compulsory on the free or the slave Muslims.

1504. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar: Allah’s Messenger made it obligatory on all the slave or free Muslims, male or female, to pay one Șa’ of dates or barley as *Zakāt-ul-Fiṭr*.

(72) CHAPTER. *Sadaqat-ul-Fiṭr* is one Șa’ of barley. (1 Șa’ = 3 kilograms approx.)

1505. Narrated Abū Sa‘īd: We used to give one Șa’ of barley as *Sadaqat-ul-Fiṭr* (per head).

(73) CHAPTER. *Sadaqat-ul-Fiṭr* is one Șa’ of meal (per head).

1506. Narrated Abū Sa‘īd Al-Khudrī: We used to give one Șa’ of meal, or one Șa’ of barley or one Șa’ of dates, or one Șa’ of *iqt* (dried yoghurt or cottage cheese), or one Șa’ of raisins (dried grapes) (per head) as *Zakāt-ul-Fiṭr*.
(74) CHAPTER. *Sadaqat-ul-Fitr* is one *Sa‘* of dates (per head).

1507. Narrated ‘Abdullah bin ‘Umar: The Prophet *ordered* (Muslims) to give one *Sa‘* of dates or one *Sa‘* of barley as *Zakat-ul-Fitr*. The people regarded two *Mudd* of wheat as equal to that.

(75) CHAPTER. *(Sadaqat-ul-Fitr is)* one *Sa‘* of raisins (dried grapes) (per head).

1508. Narrated Abū Sa‘īd Al-Khudri: In the lifetime of the Prophet we used to give one *Sa‘* of meal or one *Sa‘* of dates, or one *Sa‘* of barley, or one *Sa‘* of raisins (dried grapes) (per head) as *Sadaqat-ul-Fitr*. And when Mu‘awiya became the caliph and the wheat was (available in abundance) he said, “I think (observe) that one *Mudd* (of wheat) equals two *Mudd* (of any of the above-mentioned things).

(76) CHAPTER. *Sadaqat-ul-Fitr* is to be given before the *Eid* prayers.

1509. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar: The Prophet *ordered* the people to pay *Zakat-ul-Fitr* before going to the *Eid* prayers.
1510. Narrated Abū Sa‘īd Al-Khudrī: In the lifetime of Allah’s Messenger, we used to give one Ṣā‘ of meal (per head) as Ṣadaqat-ul-Fītr (to the poor). Our food used to be either of barley, raisins (dried grapes), Iqt (dried yoghurt or cottage cheese) or dates.

1511. Narrated Nāfi’: Ibn ‘Umar said, “The Prophet made obligatory on every male or female, free man or slave, the payment of one Ṣā‘ of dates or barley as Ṣadaqat-ul-Fītr (or said Ṣadaqat-ul-Ramādān).” The people then substituted one-half Ṣā‘ of wheat for that. Ibn ‘Umar used to give dates (as Ṣadaqat-ul-Fītr).

Nāfi’ added: Once there was scarcity of dates in Al-Madīna and Ibn ‘Umar gave barley (instead). And Ibn ‘Umar used to give Ṣadaqat-ul-Fītr for every young and old person. He even used to give on behalf of my children.

Ibn ‘Umar used to give Ṣadaqat-ul-Fītr to those who had been officially appointed for its collection. People used to give Ṣadaqat-ul-Fītr (even) a
day or two before the 'Eid.

(78) CHAPTER. **Sadaqat-ul-Fiṭr** is obligatory on the young and the old.

1512. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar: Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ has made the payment of **Sadaqat-ul-Fiṭr** obligatory, (and it was), either one Sa‘ of barley or one Sa‘ of dates (per head) (and it was enjoined) on young and old people, and on free men as well as on slaves.
1513. Narrated `Abdullãh bin ‘Abbãs 4: Al-Fãdl (his brother) was riding behind Allah’s Messenger و and a woman from the tribe of Khãth’am came and Al-Fãdl started looking at her and she started looking at him. The Prophet م turned Al-Fãdl’s face to the other side. The woman said, “O Allah’s Messenger! The obligation of Hajj enjoined by Allah on His devotees has become due on my father and he is old and weak, and he cannot sit firm on the mount; may I perform Hajj on his behalf?” The Prophet replied, “Yes, you may.” That happened during the Hajj Al-Widã’. (of the Prophet ）。

(2) CHAPTER. The Statement of Allah ّ
And proclaim to mankind the Hajj (pilgrimage). They will come to you on foot and on every lean camel, they will come from every deep and distant (wide) mountain highway (to perform Hajj). That they may
witness things that are of benefit to them...
(V.22:27-28)
And the meaning of the word Fījāj is a wide way (ravine).

1514. Narrated Ibn 'Umar: I saw that Allah's Messenger used to ride on his Rāhila (mount) at Dhul-Hulaifa and used to start saying Labbaik when the Rāhila stood up straight.

1515. Narrated Jābir bin 'Abdullāh: that Allah's Messenger started saying, Labbaik from Dhul-Hulaifa when his Rāhila (mount) stood up straight carrying him.

(3) CHAPTER. To go for Hajj on a packsaddle (of a camel).

1516. Narrated 'Āishah: The Prophet sent my brother, 'Abdur Rahmān with me to Ta'īm for the 'Umra, and he made me ride on the packsaddle (of a camel). 'Umar said, “Be ready to travel for Hajj as it (Hajj) is one of the two kinds of Jihad.”

(1) (H.1516) Jihad literally means struggle and perseverance. Holy fighting against the enemies of Islam is also called Jihad. Hajj here is regarded as a kind of Jihad since one endures many difficulties and has to control one's desires and spend money on performing Hajj.
1517. Narrated Thumāma bin ‘Abdullāh bin Anas: Anas performed the Hajj on a packsaddle (of a camel) and he was not a miser. Anas said, “Allāh’s Messenger performed Hajj on a packsaddle and the same Rāhila (mount) was carrying his baggage too.”


(4) CHAPTER. The superiority of Al-Ḥajj-ul-Mabrūr (most probably means the Hajj which is performed with the intention of seeking Allāh’s Pleasures only and is in accordance with the Prophet’s legal ways; without committing sins and is acceptable to Allāh).

1519. Narrated Abū Hurairah: The Prophet was asked, “Which is the best deed?” He said, “To believe in Allāh and His Messenger (Muhammad).” He was then asked, “Which is the next (in goodness)?” He said, “To participate in Jihād in Allāh’s Cause.” He was again asked, “Which is the next?” He said, “To perform Hajj-Mabrūr.”
1520. Narrated ‘Aishah, the Mother of the faithful believers: I said, “O Allah’s Messenger! We consider Jihad as the best deed. Should we not participate in Jihad?” The Prophet ﷺ said, “The best Jihad (for women) is Hajj-Mabrūr.”

1521. Narrated Abu Hurairah: The Prophet ﷺ said, “Whoever performs Hajj for Allah’s sake only and does not have sexual relations with his wife, and does not do evil or sins; then he will return (after Hajj, free from all sins) as if he was born anew.”

(5) CHAPTER. The demarcation of Mawāqît for Hajj.

(Mawāqît are places at which one should assume the state of Ihram(1) for the purpose of Hajj or ‘Umra.)

1522. Narrated Zaid bin Jubair: I went to visit ‘Abdullâh bin ‘Umar (رضي الله عنهما) at his house which contained many tents made of

---

(1) (Ch.5) Ihram: A state in which one is prohibited to practise certain deeds that are lawful at other times. The ceremonies of ‘Umra and Hajj are performed during such state. When one assumes this state, the first thing one should do is to express mentally and orally one’s intention to assume this state for the purpose of performing Hajj or ‘Umra. Then Talbiya is recited, two sheets of unstiched clothes are the only clothes one wears; (1) Izâr: worn below one’s waist and the other (2) Rîdâ’: worn round upper part of the body.*

* Talbiya: See Hadîth No.1549.
cotton cloth and these were encircled with Surādik (part of the tent). I asked him from where should one assume Ihram for ‘Umra. He said, “Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ had fixed as Miqāt (singular of Mawaqīt) Qarn for the people of Najd, Dhul-Ḥulaifa for the people of Al-Madina, and Al-Juḥfa for the people of Sham.”

(6) CHAPTER. The Statement of Allāh

“...And take provision (with you) for the journey, but the best provision is At-Taqwā (piety, righteousness)…” (V.2:197)

1523. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbās: The people of Yemen used to come for Hajj and used not to bring enough provisions with them and used to say that they depend on Allāh. On their arrival in Al-Madina they used to beg the people, and so Allāh revealed, “…And take a provision (with you) for the journey, but the best provision is At-Taqwā…” (V.2:197).

(7) CHAPTER. Miqāt of Ḥajj and ‘Umra for the people of Makkah.

1524. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbās: Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ made Dhul-Ḥulaifa as the Miqāt for the people of Al-Madina; Al-Juḥfa for the people of Sham; Qarn-al-

(1) (Ch.6) Mutaqūn: It means pious and righteous persons who fear Allāh much (abstain from all kinds of sins and evil deeds which He has forbidden) and love Allāh much (perform all kinds of good deeds which He has ordained).
Manāzil for the people of Najd; and Yalamlam for the people of Yemen; and these Mawaqit are for the people at those very places, and besides them for those who come through those places with the intention of performing Hajj and ‘Umra. Whoever is living within these boundaries can assume Ihram(1) from the place he starts, and the people of Makkah can assume Ihram (for Hajj only) from Makkah.

(8) CHAPTER. The Miqât for the people of Al-Madina (is Dhul-Hulaifa) and they should not assume Ihram before Dhul-Hulaifa.

1525. Narrated Nāfi‘: ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Umar (r) said, “Allāh’s Messenger (s) said, ‘The people of Al-Madina should assume Ihram from Dhul-Hulaifa; the people of Shām from Al-Juḥfa; and the people of Najd from Qarn.’” And ‘Abdullāh added, “I was informed that Allāh’s Messenger (s) had said, ‘The people of Yemen should assume Ihram from Yalamlam.’”

(9) CHAPTER. The Miqât for the people of Shām.

1526. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbās (r): Allāh’s Messenger (s) had fixed Dhul-Hulaifa as the Miqât for the people of Al-Madīna; Al-Juḥfa for the people of Sham; and Qarn-al-Manāzil for the people of Najd; and Yalamlam for the people of Yemen. So,

(1) (H. 1524) Ihram: See the footnote of chapter 5, before Hadith No. 1522.
these (above-mentioned) are the Mawaqit for all those living at those places; and besides them for those who come through those places with the intention of performing Hajj and 'Umra. Whoever lives within these places should assume Ihram from his dwelling place, and similarly the people of Makkah can assume Ihram (for Hajj only) from Makkah.

(10) CHAPTER. The Miqât for the people of Najd.

1527. Narrated Sâlim’s father, “The Prophet had fixed the Mawaqit as follows: (Hadith No. 1528)

1528. Narrated ‘Abdullâh (bin ‘Umar): I heard Allâh’s Messenger saying “The Miqât for the people of Al-Madîna is Dhul-Hulaifa; for the people of Sham is Mahi’a; (i.e. Al-Juhfa); and for the people of Najd is Qarn.” Ibn ‘Umar added, “They claim, but I did not hear personally, that the Prophet said, ‘The Miqât for the people of Yemen is Yalamlam.”

(11) CHAPTER. The Miqât for those people who are living within the Mawaqit.

1529. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbâs: The Prophet fixed Dhul-Hulaifa as the Miqât for the people of Al-Madîna, Al-
Juḫfa, for the people of Sham, Yalamal for the people of Yemen, and Qarn for the people of Najd. And these Mawaqīt are for those living at those very places, and besides them; for those who come through those places with the intention of performing Ḥajj and ‘Umra; and whoever is living inside these places can assume Ihrām from his own dwelling place, and the people of Makkah can assume Ihrām (for Ḥajj only) from Makkah.

(12) CHAPTER. The Miqāt for the people of Yemen.

1530. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbas: The Prophet ﷺ fixed Dhul-Hulaifa as the Miqāt for the people of Al-Madina, Al-Juḫfa for the people of Sham, Qarn-al-Manāzil for the people of Najd, and Yalamal for the people of Yemen. And these Mawaqīt are for those living at those very places, and besides them, for all those who come through them with the intention of performing Ḥajj and ‘Umra; and whoever is living within these Mawaqīt should assume Ihrām from where he starts, and the people of Makkah can assume Ihrām (for Ḥajj only) from Makkah.

(13) CHAPTER. The Miqāt for the people of ‘Iraq is Dhat-‘Irq.

1531. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar: When these two towns (Basrah and Kūfa) were conquered, the people went to ‘Umar and said, “O chief of the faithful believers! The Prophet ﷺ fixed Qarn as the Miqāt for the people of Najd, it is beyond our way and it is difficult for us to pass through it.” ‘Umar said, “Take as your Miqāt a place situated...
opposite to Qarn on your usual way. So, he fixed Dhat-'Irq (as their Miqat).”

(14) CHAPTER.

1532. Narrated Nafi’: ‘Abdullah bin Umar said, “Allah’s Messenger made his camel sit (i.e. he dismounted) at Al-Bathâ’ in Dhul-Hulaifa and offered the Salât (prayer).” ‘Abdullah bin Umar used to do the same.

(15) CHAPTER. The going of the Prophet (for Hajj) via Ash-Shajara way.

1533. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar: Allah's Messenger used to go (for Hajj) via Ash-Shajara way and return via Mu’arras way. And no doubt, whenever Allah’s Messenger went to Makkah, he used to offer the Salât (prayer) in the mosque of Ash-Shajara; and on his return journey, he used to offer the Salât at Dhul-Hulaifa in the middle of the valley, and pass the night there till morning.

(16) CHAPTER. The saying of the Prophet: “Al-'Aqiq is a blessed valley.”

1534. Narrated ‘Umar: In the valley of Al-'Aqiq I heard Allah’s Messenger...
25—THE BOOK OF HAJJ

لِسانُ اللَّهِ: ِمَسْأَلَ بِنَّا الْنَّبِيُّ صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ بِلِسَانِهِ: ِلِيَدُنْمَ اللَّهُ أَوْزِعْتُكَ بِلِسَانِهِ أَوْذِعُتُكَ بِلِسَانِهِ أَوْذِعَ اللَّهُ أَوْذِعَ اللَّهُ أَوْذِعَ اللَّهُ أَوْذِعَ اللَّهُ أَوْذِعَ اللَّهُ أَوْذِعَ اللَّهُ أَوْذِعَ اللَّهُ أَوْذِعَ اللَّهُ أَوْذِعَ اللَّهُ أَوْذِعَ اللَّهُ أَوْذِعَ اللَّهُ أَوْذِعَ اللَّهُ أَوْذِعَ اللَّهُ أَوْذِعَ اللَّهُ أَوْذِعَ اللَّهُ أَوْذِعَ اللَّهُ أَوْذِعَ اللَّهُ أَوْذِعَ اللَّهُ أَوْذِعَ اللَّهُ أَوْذِعَ اللَّهُ أَوْذِعَ اللَّهُ أَوْذِعَ اللَّهُ أَوْذِعَ اللَّهُ أَوْذِعَ اللَّهُ أَوْذِعَ اللَّهُ أَوْذِعَ اللَّهُ أَوْذِعَ اللَّهُ أَوْذِعَ اللَّهُ أَوْذِعَ اللَّهُ أَوْذِعَ اللَّهُ أَوْذِعَ اللَّهُ أَوْذِعَ اللَّهُ A messenger came to me from my Lord and asked me to offer Salât (prayer) in this blessed valley; and to assume Ihram for Hajj and 'Umra together.

1535. Narrated `Abdullāh (bin `Umar)

while resting in the bottom of the valley at Mu`arras (a place where a traveller rests in the last part of night) in Dhul-Hulaifa, said that he had been addressed in a dream, 'Verily you are in a blessed valley.'" Sālim made us to dismount from our camels at the place where `Abdullāh used to dismount, aiming at the place where Allāh's Messenger ﷺ had rested and it was below the mosque situated in the middle of the valley in between them (the residence) and the road.

1536. Narrated Šafwān bin Ya`la: Ya`la said to `Umar, "Show me the Prophetﷺ when he is being inspired Divinely." While the Prophetﷺ was at Ji'rāna (in the company of some of his
Companions) a person came and asked, “O Allah’s Messenger! What is your verdict regarding that person who assumes Ihram for 'Umra and is scented with perfume?” The Prophet kept quiet for a while and he was Divinely inspired (then). Umar beckoned Ya’la. So he came, and Allah’s Messenger was shaded with a sheet. Ya’la put his head in and saw that the face of Allah’s Messenger was red and he was snoring. When that state of the Prophet was over, he asked, “Where is the person who asked about ‘Umra?” Then that person was brought and the Prophet said, “Wash the perfume off your body thrice and take off the cloak and do the same in ‘Umra as you do in Hajj.”

(18) CHAPTER. The use of perfume while assuming Ihram. What to wear when one intends to assume Ihram. May one comb and put oil on one’s hair?

And Ibn ‘Abbâs stated, “A Muhrim may smell sweet basil, and he may look at the mirror and can be treated with ordinary edible oil and butter.” And ‘Aţâ said, “A Muhrim may wear a ring and the Himyân (a belt with a purse to keep one’s money).” And Ibn ‘Umar performed the Tawâf while he was Muhrim, with a piece of cloth tied round his belly. And
‘Aisha found no harm in wearing *Tubbân* (short trousers) by those who fixed her *Howdah*.

1537. Narrated Sa‘îd bin Jubair: Ibn ‘Umar said to oil his hair. I told that to Ibrâhîm who said, “What do you think about this statement.”

1538. Narrated Aswâd: ‘Âishah, the wife of the Prophet ﷺ, said: As if I were just now observing the glitter of the scent in the parting of the hair of the Prophet ﷺ while he was *Muḥrim*?

1539. Narrated ‘Âishah, the wife of the Prophet ﷺ: I used to scent Allah’s Messenger ﷺ when he wanted to assume *Ihrams* and also on finishing *Ihrams* before the *Tawâf* round the Ka‘bah (*Tawâf-al-Ifâda*).

(19) CHAPTER. Whosoever recited *Talbiya* and assumed *Ihrama* with head hair matted (with resin or the like).

1540. Narrated Sâlim’s father: “I heard Allah’s Messenger ﷺ reciting *Talbiya* and assuming *Ihrama* with his head hair matted together.

(1) (Ch.18) *Talbiya*: See Hadith No.1549.
(20) CHAPTER. To recite *Talbiya* and assume *Ihram* at the mosque of Dhul-Hulaifa (by the inhabitants of Al-Madīna who want to perform *Hajj* or *'Umra*).

1541. Narrated Sālim bin ‘Abdullāh: I heard my father saying, “Never did Allāh’s Messenger recite *Talbiya* and assume *Ihram* except at the Mosque, that is, at the mosque of Dhul-Hulaifa.

(21) CHAPTER. What kind of clothes a *Muhrim* should not wear.

1542. Narrated ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Umar: A man asked, “O Allāh’s Messenger! What kind of clothes should a *Muhrim* wear?” Allāh’s Messenger replied, “He should not wear a shirt, a turban, trousers, a headcloak or leather socks, except if he can find no slippers, he then may wear leather socks after cutting off what might cover the ankles. And he should not wear clothes which are scented with saffron or *Wars* (kinds of perfumes).”

(22) CHAPTER. Riding alone or with somebody else during *Hajj*. 
1543, 1544. Narrated `Ubaidullah bin `Abdullah: 'Abbas said, "Usama rode behind Allah's Messenger from 'Arafat to Al-Muzdalifa and then Al-Fadl rode behind Allah's Messenger from Al-Muzdalifa to Mina." `Abbas added, "Both of them said, 'The Prophet kept on reciting Talbiya till he did the Ramy of Jamrat-al-'Aqaba.'"

(23) CHAPTER. What kind of clothes a Muhrim should wear, both for Rida (upper half body-cover) and Izar (lower half body-cover).

And `Aishah wore clothes dyed with yellow colour while she was Muhrima and she said that a Muhrima should neither Talafh-tham (i.e. to cover one's face up to the eyes) nor should cover it completely; and she should not wear such clothes as are scented with Wars or saffron. And Jabar said, "I do not regard the dye-stuff taken from safflower as a kind of scent." `Aishah considered that there was no harm for a woman to wear ornaments or black or rose (pink) coloured clothes or leather socks while in a state of Ihram. And Ibrahim did not see any harm in changing one's clothes (of Ihram).

1545. Narrated `Abdullah bin `Abbas: The Prophet, with his Companions departed from Al-Madina after combing and oiling his hair and putting on two sheets of Ihram – Rida..."
And so in the morning, the Prophet mounted his Rähila (mount) while in Dhul-Hulaifa and proceeded till they reached Al-Baidā', where he and his Companions recited Talbiya, and then he did the ceremony of Taqlid (which means to put the coloured rope garland around the neck) of his Badana (camel for sacrifice). And that was on the 25th of Dhul-Qa'da. When he reached Makkah on the 4th of Dhul-Hijjah, performed the Tawaf round the Ka'bah and the Sā'y (going) between Aš-Šafā and Al-Marwa. And as he had garlanded his Badana, he did not finish his Ihram. He proceeded towards the highest places of Makkah near Al-Hujūn and he was assuming the Ihram for Hajj and did not go near the Ka'bah after he performed Tawaf (round it) till he returned from 'Arafat. Then he ordered his Companions to perform the Tawaf round the Ka'bah and then the Sā'y of Aš-Šafā and Al-Marwa, and to cut short the hair of their heads and to finish their Ihram. And that was only for those people who did not have Badana (camels etc., for sacrifice) and had not garlanded them. Those who had their wives with them were permitted to contact them (can have sexual relations), and similarly can use perfume and wear (ordinary) clothes. [Then they assumed their Ihram for Hajj (and that was Hajj-at-Tamuttu) on the 8th of Dhul-Hijjah and performed their Hajj].

(1) (H.1545) Tawaf between Aš-Šafā and Al-Marwa is also called Sā'y which means literally “walking” or “going.” Here it means the seven times of going hurriedly between the two mountains in Makkah called Aš-Šafā and Al-Marwa (as it is one of the ceremonies of Hajj and 'Umra).
(24) CHAPTER. Passing the night at Dhul-Hulaifa till dawn.

This was narrated by Ibn ‘Umar on the authority of the Prophet.

1546. Narrated Anas bin Malik:
The Prophet offered four Rak’a of Zuhr prayer in Al-Madina and two Rak’a of ‘Asr prayers at Dhul-Hulaifa and I heard them (the Companions of the Prophet) reciting Talbiya together loudly to the extent of shouting.

1547. Narrated Abu Qilaba: Anas bin Malik said, “The Prophet offered four Rak’a of the Zuhr prayer in Al-Madina and two Rak’a of ‘Asr prayers at Dhul-Hulaifa.” I think that the Prophet passed the night there till morning.

(25) CHAPTER. Talbiya is to be recited aloud.

1548. Narrated Anas: The Prophet offered four Rak’a of the Zuhr prayer in Al-Madina and two Rak’a of the ‘Asr prayer in Dhul-Hulaifa and I heard them (the Companions of the Prophet) reciting Talbiya together loudly to the extent of shouting.
(26) CHAPTER. The *Talbiya*.

1549. Narrated 'Abdullãh bin 'Umar : The *Talbiya* of Allah's Messenger was:

'Labbaik Allahumma labbaik, labbaika la šharika Laka labbaik, innal-hamda wanni'mata Laka wal-mulk, la šharika Laka.'

(I respond to Your Call O Allah, I respond to Your Call, and I am obedient to Your Orders, You have no partner, I respond to Your Call. All the praises, thanks and blessings are for You. All the sovereignty is for You. And You have no partners with You.)

1550. Narrated 'Aishah : I know how the Prophet used to say (*Talbiya*) and it was:

'Labbaik Allahumma labbaik, labbaika la šharika Laka labbaik, innal-hamda wanni'mata Laka wal-mulk, la šharika Laka.' [See Hadith No.1549].

(27) CHAPTER. The praising and the glorification of Allah and the saying of *Takbir* before reciting *Talbiya*, while mounting one's travelling animal.

1551. Narrated Anas bin Mãlik : Allah's Messenger offered four *Rak'ã* of *Zuhr* prayers at Al-Madina and we were in his company, and two *Rak'ã* of the 'Asr prayers at Dhul-Hulaifa and then passed the night there till it was dawn; then he rode, and
reached Al-Bайдى’, he praised and glorified Allâh and said Takbîr (i.e., Alhamdulillah, Subhâh-Allah and Allâhu-Akbar). Then, he and the people along with him recited Talbiya with the intention of performing Hajj and ‘Umra. When we reached (Makkah) he ordered us to finish the Ihram (after performing the ‘Umra) [only those who had no Hady (animal for sacrifice) with them] till the day of Tarwiya (8th Dhul-Hijjah) when they assumed Ihram for Hajj (Haji-at-Tamuttu'). The Prophet ﷺ sacrificed many camels (slaughtering them by Nahr way) with his own hands while (the camels were) standing. [While in Al-Madîna, Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ also sacrificed with his own hands two horned rams black and white in colour in the Name of Allâh (by Dhabîh(2) way).”

(28) CHAPTER. Reciting Talbiya when one has mounted his Râhîla (mount) and it stood up straight (ready to set out).

1552. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar: The Prophet ﷺ recited Talbiya when he had mounted his Râhîla (mount) and it stood up straight (ready to set out).

(29) CHAPTER. Reciting Talbiya while facing the Qiblah.

1553. Narrated Nâfi’, ‘Whenever Ibn ‘Umar finished his morning Salât (prayer) at Dhul-Hulaifa he would get his Râhîla (mount) prepared. Then, he would ride on it, and after it had stood up straight (ready to set out), he would face Al-

(1) and (2) – (H. 1551) See footnote (1) and (2), Hadith No.982 and its chapter 22.
Qiblah (the Ka'bah at Makkah) while sitting (on his mount) and recite Talbiya. When he had reached the boundaries of the Haram (or Makkah), he would stop the recitation of Talbiya till he reached Dhi-Tuwâ (near Makkah) where he would pass the night till it was dawn. After offering the morning Salât, he would take a bath. He claimed that Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ had done the same.

1554. Narrated Nâfi‘: Whenever Ibn ‘Umar  said that he had seen the Prophet ﷺ doing the same.

(30) CHAPTER. Reciting Talbiya on entering a valley.

1555. Narrated Mujâhid: I was in the company of Ibn ‘Abbâs  and the people talked about Ad-Dajjâl and said, “Ad-Dajjâl will come with the word Kâfir (disbeliever) written in between his eyes.” On that Ibn ‘Abbâs said, “I have not heard this from the Prophet ﷺ, but I heard him saying, ‘As if I saw Mûsa (Moses) just now entering the valley reciting Talbiya.’”

(1) (H. 1554) Talbiya: See H. No. 1549.
(31) CHAPTER. How should a menstruating woman and a woman in a puerperal state assume Ḥājām?

And Allāh’s Statement: “And that which has been slaughtered as a sacrifice for others than Allāh.” (V.5:3)

1556. Narrated ‘Āishah رضي الله عنها the wife of the Prophet ﷺ: We set out with the Prophet ﷺ in his last Hajj and we assumed Ḥājām for ‘Umra. The Prophet ﷺ then said, “Whoever has got the Hady with him should assume Ḥājām for Hajj along with ‘Umra and should not finish the Ḥājām till he finishes both.” I was menstruating when I reached Makkah, I neither did Tawaf round the Ka’bah nor [Say (going)] between Aṣ-Ṣafā and Al-Marwa. I complained about that to the Prophet ﷺ on which he replied, “Undo and comb your head hair, and assume Ḥājām for Hajj (only) and leave the ‘Umra.” So, I did so. When we had performed the Hajj, the Prophet ﷺ sent me with my brother ‘Abdur-Rahmān bin Abū Bakr to Ţan’īm. So, I performed the ‘Umra. The Prophet ﷺ said to me, “This ‘Umra is in lieu of your missed one.” Those who had assumed Ḥājām for ‘Umra (Hajj-at-Tamattu’) performed Tawaf round the Ka’bah and (Sa’y) between Aṣ-Ṣafā and Al-Marwa and then finished their Ḥājām. After returning from Miḥā, they performed another Tawaf (Sa’y) (going)] (between Aṣ-Ṣafā and Al-Marwa). Those who had assumed Ḥājām for Hajj and ‘Umra together (Hajj-al-Qiran) performed only one Tawaf (Sa’y between Aṣ-Ṣafā and Al-Marwa).
(32) CHAPTER. Whoever assumed *Ihram* with the same intention as that of the Prophet (for *Hajj* or *Umra*) in the lifetime of the Prophet (without being objected by the Prophet).

Ibn 'Umar narrated this on the authority of the Prophet.

1557. Narrated 'Atä : Jâbir bin 'Abd Allâh said, “The Prophet ordered 'Ali to keep on assuming his *Ihram*.” The narrator then informed about the narration of Surâqa.

1558. Narrated Anas bin Malik: 'Ali came to the Prophet from Yemen (to Makah). The Prophet asked 'Ali, “With what intention have you assumed *Ihram*?” 'Ali replied, “I have assumed *Ihram* with the same intention as that of the Prophet. The Prophet said, “If I had not the *Hady* with me I would have finished the *Ihram*.”

Muâmmâd bin Bakr added that Ibn Juraij said: The Prophet said to 'Ali, “With what intention have you assumed the *Ihram*, O 'Ali?” He replied, “With the same (intention) as that of the Prophet.” The Prophet said, “Have a *Hady* and keep your *Ihram* as it is.”

1559. Narrated 'Abû Müsâ: The Prophet sent me to some people in Yemen
and when I returned, I found him at Al-
Baṭḥā. He asked me, “With what intention
have you assumed Ihram (i.e. for Hajj or for
‘Umra or for both).” I replied, “I have
assumed Ihram with an intention like that
of the Prophet ﷺ.” He asked, “Have you a
Hady with you?” I replied in the negative. He
ordered me to perform Tawaf round the
Ka’bah and [Sa’y (going)] between As-Ṣafā
and Al-Marwa and then to finish my Ihram. I
did so and went to a woman from my tribe
who combed my hair or washed my head.
Then, when ‘Umar became caliph he said,
“If we follow Allah’s Book, it orders us
to remain in the state of Ihram till we finish
from Hajj as Allah Full says: ‘Perform
properly the Hajj and ‘Umra for Allah.’
(V.2:196). And if we follow As-Sunna of
the Prophet ﷺ who did not finish his Ihram
till he sacrificed his Ha’dy (Hajj-al-Qiran).”

(33) CHAPTER. The Statement of Allah
 تعالى: “The Hajj (pilgrimage) is (in)
the well-known (lunar year) months ...
(upto) ... Hajj . . .” (V.2:197). And also His Statement:
“They ask you (O Muḥammad ﷺ) about
the new moons. Say: These are signs to mark
fixed periods of time for mankind and for
the Hajj.” (V.2:189).

And Ibn ‘Umar رضي الله عنهما said, “The
months of Hajj are Shawwal, Dhul-Qa’da
and the first ten days of Dhul-Hijjah. And
Ibn ‘Abbās رضي الله عنهما said, “It is in
accordance with the As-Sunna (legal ways)

(1) (H.1559) To not to finish the Ihram, either perform Hajj-al-Qiran (if you have a Hady)
or perform Hajj alone without the ‘Umra and that is the opinion of Umar رضي الله عنه only.
of the Prophet that no one should assume Ihram for Hajj except in the months of Hajj.” And ‘Uthmān disliked to assume Ihram from Khurāsān or Kirmān.

1560. Narrated Al-Qāsim bin Muhammad: ‘Aishah said, “We set out with Allāh’s Messenger in the months of Hajj, and (in) the nights of Ijāj and at the time and places of Hajj and in a state of Hajj. We dismounted at Sarif (a village ten miles from Makkah). The Prophet then addressed his Companions and said, ‘Anyone who has not got the Hady and likes to do ‘Umra instead of Hajj may do so (i.e., Hajj-at-Tamattu’) and anyone who has got the Hady should not finish the Ihram after performing ‘Umra (i.e., Hajj-al-Qirān).’

‘Aishah added, ‘The Companions of the Prophet obeyed the above (order) and some of them (i.e., who did not have Hady) finished their Ihram after ‘Umra.” Allāh’s Messenger and some of his Companions were resourceful and had the Hady with them, they could not perform ‘Umra (alone) (but had to perform both Hajj and ‘Umra with one Ihram).

‘Aishah added, “Allāh’s Messenger came to me and saw me weeping and said, ‘What makes you weep, O Hantah?’ I replied, ‘I have heard your conversation with your Companions and I cannot perform the ‘Umra.’ He asked, ‘What is wrong with you?’ I replied, ‘I do not offer the Salāt (prayer) (i.e., I have got my menses).’ He said, ‘It will not harm you, for you are one of the daughters of Adam, and Allāh has written for you (this state) as He has written it for them. Keep on with your intentions for Hajj and Allāh may reward you for that.’

‘Aishah further added, ‘Then we proceeded for Hajj till we reached Minā and I became clean from my menses. Then, I went out
from Minā and performed ʿawāf round the Kaʿbah.” ʿĀishah added, “I went along with the Prophet ﷺ in his final departure (from Hajj) till he dismounted at Al-Muḥāṣṣab (a valley outside Makkah) and we, too, dismounted with him.” He called ʿAbdūr-Rahmān bin Abī Bakr and said to him, ‘Take your sister outside the sanctuary of Makkah and let her assume ʿIhram for ʿUmra, and when you had finished ʿUmra, return to this place and I will wait for you both till you both return to me.’” ʿĀishah added, “So we went out of the sanctuary of Makkah and after finishing from the ʿUmra and the ʿawāf, we returned to the Prophet ﷺ at dawn. He said, ‘Have you performed the ʿUmra?’ We replied in the affirmative. So, he announced the departure amongst his Companions and the people set out for the journey, and the Prophet ﷺ too left for Al-Madīnah.”

(34) CHAPTER. What is said regarding Hajj-AT-Tamattu’, ʿHajj-AL-QIRAN, and Hajj-al-IFRĀD. (1)

And whoever has not brought the Ḥady with him, he should finish the ʿIhrām of Hajj, and make it as ʿUmra, (and then assume another ʿIhrām for Hajj from Makkah, etc.).

1561. Narrated Al-Aswād: ʿĀishah ʿrūṣiyya: “We went out with the Prophet ﷺ (from Al-Madīnah) with the intention of performing Ḥajj only, and when we reached Makkah we performed ʿawāf round the

(1) (Ch.34) There are three various ways of performing Ḥajj - as follows:

a) Hajj-AT-Tamattu’: It means that you have no Ḥady with you and you assume ʿIhrām only for ʿUmra first and after ʿUmra you finish your ʿIhrām and assume another ʿIhrām for performing Ḥajj, from Makkah, but you have to slaughter a Ḥady (an animal for sacrifice).

b) Hajj-AL-QIRAN: It means that one should have a Ḥady with him and should perform ʿUmra and then Ḥajj with the same state of ʿIhrām.

c) Hajj-al-IFRĀD: It means that one assumes ʿIhrām with the intention of performing Ḥajj only and does not perform ʿUmra, and this is specially for the inhabitants of Makkah.
Ka'bah(1) and then the Prophet ﷺ ordered those who had not driven the Hadīy along with them to finish their Iḥrâm. So, the people who had not driven the Hadīy along with them finished their Iḥrâm. The Prophet’s wives, too, had not driven the Hadīy with them, so, they too, finished their Iḥrâm. ‘Aīshah رضي الله عنها added, “I got my menses and could not perform Tawāf round the Ka’bah.” So when it was the night of Hásha (i.e., when we stopped at Al-Muḥāssib), I said, “O Allāh’s Messenger! Everyone is returning after performing Hajj and ‘Umra but I am returning after performing Hajj only.” He said, “Didn’t you perform Tawāf round the Ka’bah the night we reached Makkah?” I replied in the negative. He said, “Go with your brother to Tanīm and assume the Iḥrâm for ‘Umra, (and after performing it) come back (to such and such a place). On that Safiyya said, ‘I feel that I will detain you all.’ The Prophet ﷺ said, “O ‘Aqra Ḥalqā! (2) Didn’t you perform Tawāf of the Ka’bah on the day of sacrifice? (i.e. Tawāf-al-İfāda) Safiyya replied in the affirmative. He said, (to Safiyya). ‘There is no harm for you to proceed on with us.’ ” ‘Aīshah رضي الله عنها added, “(After returning from ‘Umra), the Prophet ﷺ met me while he was ascending (from Makkah) and I was descending to it, or I was ascending and he was descending.”

1562. Narrated ‘Aīshah رضي الله عنها: We set out with Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ (to Makkah) in the year of the Prophet’s last Hajj. Some of us had assumed Iḥrâm for ‘Umra only, some for both Hajj and ‘Umra, and others for Hajj only. Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ
assumed Ihram for Hajj. So, whoever had assumed Ihram for Hajj or for both Hajj and 'Umra did not finish the Ihram till the day of sacrifice. (See Ahadith Nos. 1560, 1565, and 1568).

1563. Narrated Marwän bin Al-Hakam: I saw 'Uthmán and 'Ali Prestigious Allah to the latter, 'Uthman used to forbid people to perform Hajj-at-Tamattu' and Hajj-al-Qiran (Hajj and 'Umra together), and when 'Ali saw (this act of 'Uthman), he assumed Ihram for Hajj and 'Umra together saying, "Labbaik for 'Umra and Hajj together," and said, "I will not leave As-Sunna of the Prophet Prestigious Allah to the saying of somebody."

1564. Narrated Ibn 'Abbās Prestigious Allah to the latter: The people (of the Pre-Islamic Period of Ignorance) used to think that to perform 'Umra during the months of Hajj was one of the major sins on earth. And they also used to consider the month of Safar as a forbidden (i.e. sacred) month and they used to say, "When the wounds of the camel's back heal up (after they return from Hajj) and the signs of those wounds vanish and the month of Safar passes away then (at that time) 'Umra is permissible for the one who wishes to perform it." In the morning of the 4th of Dhul-Hijjah, the Prophet Prestigious Allah and his Companions reached Makkah, assuming
Ihram for Hajj, and he ordered his Companions to make their intentions of the Ihram for 'Umra only (instead of Hajj), so they considered his order as something great and were puzzled, and said, “O Allah’s Messenger! What kind (of finishing) of Ihram is allowed?” The Prophet replied, “Finish the Ihram completely like a non-Muhrim (you are allowed everything).”

1565. Narrated Abū Mūsā (رضي الله عنه): I came to the Prophet (صلى الله عليه وسلم) from Yemen and was assuming Ihram for Hajj) and he ordered me to finish the Ihram (after performing the 'Umra).

1566. Narrated Ibn 'Umar (رضي الله عنهما): Hafsa, the wife of the Prophet (صلى الله عليه وسلم) said, “O Allah’s Messenger! Why have the people finished their Ihram after performing ‘Umra, but you have not finished your Ihram after performing ‘Umra?” He replied, “I have matted my head-hair and garlanded my Hady. So I will not finish my Ihram till I have slaughtered (my Hady)”.

1567. Narrated Shu’ba (رضي الله عنه): Abū Jamra Naṣr bin Imrān Ad-Ḍuba’ī said, “I intended to perform Hajj-at-Tamattu’ and the people advised me not to do so. I asked Ibn ‘Abbās (رضي الله عنهما) regarding it and he ordered me to perform Hajj-at-Tammatu’. Later I saw in a dream someone saying to me, ‘Hajj-Mabrūr’ (Hajj performed in accordance with the Prophet’s Sunna without committing
sins, and accepted by Allah) and an accepted ‘Umra.’ So I told that dream to Ibn ‘Abbas. He said, ‘This is As-Sunna of Abul-Qasim.’ Then he said to me, ‘Stay with me and I shall give you a portion of my property.’” I (Shu‘ba) asked, “Why (did he invite you)"? He (Abu Jamra) said, “Because of the dream which I had seen.”

1568. Narrated Abū Shihāb: I left for Makkah for Hajj-at-Tamattu assuming Ḥārām for ‘Umra. I reached Makkah three days before the day of Tarwīya (8th Dhul-Hijjah). Some people of Makkah said to me, “Your Hajj will be like the Hajj performed by the people of Makkah (i.e., you will lose the superiority of assuming Ḥārām from the Miqāt).” So I went to ‘Ata’ asking him his view about it. He said, “Jābir bin ‘Abdullāh narrated to me, ‘I performed Hajj with Allah’s Messenger on the day when he drove camels with him. The people had assumed Ḥārām for Hajj-al-Ifrād. The Prophet ordered them to finish their Ḥārām after Tawāf round the Ka‘bah, and [Sa‘y (going)] between Aṣ-Ṣafā and Al-Marwa and to cut short their hair and then to stay there (in Makkah) as non-Muharrim till the day of Tarwīya (i.e. 8th of Dhul-Hijjah) when they should assume Ḥārām for Hajj and they were ordered to make the Ḥārām with which they had come, for ‘Umra only. They asked, ‘How can we make it ‘Umra (Tamattu)’ as we have intended to perform Hajj?’ The Prophet said, ‘Do what I have ordered you. Had I not brought the Hady with me, I would have done the same, but I cannot finish my Ḥārām till the Hady reaches its destination (i.e., is slaughtered’.) So, they did (what he ordered them to do).’”
1569. Narrated Sa'īd bin Al-Musaiyab: ‘Ālī and ‘Uthmān differed regarding Hajj-at-Tamattu’ while they were at ‘Usfān (a familiar place near Makkah). ‘Ālī said, “I see you want to forbid the people to do a thing that the Prophet ﷺ did?” When ‘Ālī saw that, he assumed Ihrām for both Hajj and ‘Umra.

1570. Narrated Jābir bin ‘Abdullāh: We came with Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ (to Makkah) and we were saying: Labbaika Allāhumma labbaik. Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ ordered us to perform ‘Umra with that Ihrām (instead of Hajj).

1571. Narrated ‘Imrān ibn Ṭālib: We performed Hajj-at-Tamattu’ in the lifetime of Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ and then the Qur’ān was revealed (regarding Hajj-at-Tamattu’). and somebody said what he wished (regarding Hajj-at-Tamattu’) according to his own opinion(1).

(35) CHAPTER. The Talbiya for Hajj and the mention of the intention of performing Hajj along with Talbiya.

(36) CHAPTER. Hajj-at-Tamattu’ during the lifetime of Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ

(37) CHAPTER. The Statement of Allāh

---

(1) (H.1571) The person meant here was ‘Umar bin Al-Khaṭṭāb (Fath Al-Bārī).
"This is for him whose family is not present at the Al-Masjid-al-Haram (i.e. non-resident of Makkah)." (V.2:196).

1572. Ibn ‘Abbas r.a. said that he had been asked regarding Hajj-at-Tamattu' on which he said, "The Muhajirin (emigrants) and the Ansar and the wives of the Prophet ﷺ and we did the same. When we reached Makkah, Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ said, “Give up your intention of doing the Hajj (at this moment) and perform ‘Umra, except the one who has garlanded the Hady.”

So, we performed Tawaf round the Ka’bah and [Sa’y (going)] between A-Safa and Al-Marwa, slept with our wives and wore ordinary (stitched) clothes. The Prophet ﷺ added, “Whoever has garlanded his Hady is not allowed to finish the Ihram till the Hady has reached its destination (has been sacrificed)”. Then on the night of Tarwiya (8th Dhul-Hijjah, in the afternoon) he ordered us to assume Ihram for Hajj and when we have performed all the ceremonies of Hajj, we came and performed Tawaf round the Ka’bah and (Sa’) between As-Safã and Al-Marwa, and then our Hajj was complete, and we had to sacrifice a Ha’dy according to the Statement of Allâh:

"... He must slaughter a Hady such as he can afford, but if he cannot afford it, he should observe Saum (fasts) three days during the Hajj and seven days after his return (to his home)...

And the sacrifice of a sheep is sufficient.

So, the Prophet ﷺ and his Companions joined the two religious deeds, (i.e. Hajj and ‘Umra) in one year, for Allâh revealed (the permissibility) of such practice in His Book and in the Sunna (legal ways) of His Prophet ﷺ and rendered it permissible for all the people except those living in Makkah. Allâh says: ‘This is for him whose family is not
present at the Al-Masjid-al-Ḥarām, (i.e. non-resident of Makkah).” The months of Ḥajj which Allah mentioned in His Book are: Shawwāl, Dhul-Qa’dā and Dhul-Hijjah. Whoever performed Ḥajj-at-Tamattu’ in those months, then slaughtering or fasting is compulsory for him.


(38) CHAPTER. Taking a bath on entering Makkah.

1573. Narrated Nāfi’: On reaching the sanctuary of Makkah, Ibn ‘Umar ṣa.ṣ. used to stop reciting Talbiya and then he would pass the night at Dhi-Tuwā(1) and then offer the Fajr prayers and take a bath. He used to say that the Prophet ᴧ صلى الله عليه وسلم used to do the same.

(39) CHAPTER. To enter Makkah by day or by night.

The Prophet ᴧ صلى الله عليه وسلم passed the night at Dhi-Tuwā(1) till it was dawn and then entered Makkah in the morning, and Ibn ‘Umar ṣa.ṣ. said, “The Prophet ᴧ صلى الله عليه وسلم used to do the same.

1574. Narrated Nāfi’ Ibn ‘Umar ṣa.ṣ. said, “The Prophet ᴧ صلى الله عليه وسلم passed the night at Dhi-Tuwā till it was dawn and then he entered Makkah.” Ibn ‘Umar ṣa.ṣ. used to do the same.

(1) (H.1573) Dhi-Tuwā is the name of one of the valleys (district) of Makkah where there is a well-known well in it (district). In the lifetime of the Messenger ᴧ صلى الله عليه وسلم, Makkah was a small city and this district was outside its precincts. Now-a-days Makkah is a larger city and the district is within its boundary.
CHAPTER. From where to enter Makkah.

1575.Narrated Ibn 'Umar:Allah's Messenger used to enter Makkah from the Thaniya-al-'Uliya and used to leave Makkah from the Thaniya-tis-Sufa.'

(1) (H.1575) Any obstacle or highway (between two hills) on a mountain is called Thaniya.
1577. Narrated ‘Aishah: When the Prophet came to Makkah he entered from its higher side and left from its lower side.

1578. Narrated ‘Aishah: In the year of the conquest of Makkah, the Prophet entered Makkah from Kadã’ and left Makkah from Kudan, from the higher part of Makkah.

1579. Narrated ‘Aishah: In the year of the conquest of Makkah, the Prophet entered Makkah from Kadã’ at the higher place of Makkah. (Hishãm, a subnarrator said, “‘Urwa used to enter (Makkah) from both Kadã which was nearer to his dwelling place.”)

1580. Narrated Hishãm: ‘Urwa said, “The Prophet entered Makkah in the year of the conquest of Makkah from the side of Kadã which is at the higher part to Makkah.” ‘Urwa often entered from Kadã’ which was nearer of the two to his dwelling place.
In the year of the conquest of Makkah, the Prophet entered Makkah from the side of Kada'. 'Urwa used to enter through both places, and he often entered through Kada' which was nearer of the two to his dwelling place.

(42) CHAPTER. The superiority of Makkah and its buildings, and the statement of Allah:

“And (remember) when We made the House (the Ka'bah at Makkah) a place of resort for mankind, and a place of safety. And take you (people) the Maqâm (place) of Ibrâhîm (Abraham) [or the stone on which Abraham stood while he was building the Ka'bah] as a place of prayer (for some of your prayer, e.g. two Rak'â of Tawâf of Ka'bah) and We commanded Abraham and Ismâ'îl (Ishmael) that they should purify My House (the Ka'bah) for those who are circumambulating it, or staying (I'tikâf), or bowing down or prostrating themselves (there, in prayer). And (remember) when Ibrâhîm said: ‘My Lord! Make this city (Makkah) a place of security, and provide its people with fruits, such of them as believe in Allah and the Last Day.’ He (Allâh) answered: ‘As for him who disbelieves, I shall leave him in contentment for a while, then I shall compel him to the torment of Fire, and worst indeed is that destination.’ And (remember) when Ibrâhîm and (his son) Ismâ'îl were raising the foundations of the House (the Ka'bah) (saying), ‘Our Lord! Accept (this service) from us. Verily! You are the All-Hearer, the All-Knower. Our Lord, make us submissive unto You and of our offspring a nation submissive to You, and
show us our *Manasik*" (1) (all the ceremonies of pilgrimage — *Hajj* and *'Umra* etc.). And accept our repentance. Truly! You are the One Who accepts repentance, the Most Merciful.”

(V.2:125-128)

1582. Narrated Jābir bin 'Abdullāh: When the Ka'bah was built, the Prophet and Al-'Abbās went to bring stones (for its construction). Al-'Abbās said to the Prophet, “Take off your waist sheet and put it on your neck.” (When the Prophet took it off) he fell on the ground with his eyes open towards the sky and said, “Give me my waist sheet.” And he covered himself with it.

1583. Narrated 'Āishah, the wife of the Prophet, that Allah's Messenger said to her, “Do you know that when your people (Quraish) rebuilt the Ka'bah, they reduced it from its original foundation laid by Ibrāhīm (Abraham)?” I said, “O Allah's Messenger! Why don't you rebuild it on its original foundation laid by Ibrahim?” He replied, “Were it not for the fact that your people are close to the Pre-Islamic Period of Ignorance (i.e., they have recently become Muslims), I would have done so.” The subnarrator, 'Abdullah (bin 'Umar) stated: ‘Āishah must have heard this from Allah's Messenger, for in my opinion Allah's Messenger had not

(1) (Chap. 42) *Manasik* (i.e., *Ihram*, *Tawāf* of Ka'bah and *Sā'y* (going) between Aş-Şafa and Al-Marwa, stay at Arafat, Muzdalifa, and Mina, *Ramy of Jamarāt*, slaughtering of *Hady* (animal) etc.)
placed his hand over the two corners of the Ka'bah opposite Al-Hijr only because the Ka'bah was not rebuilt on its original foundations laid by Ibrahim.

1584. Narrated 'Aishah: I asked the Prophet whether the round wall (near Ka'bah) was part of the Ka'bah. The Prophet replied in the affirmative. I further said, "What is wrong with them, why have they not included it in the building of the Ka'bah?" He said, "Don't you see that your people (Quraish) ran short of money (so they could not include it inside the building of Ka'bah)?" I asked, "What about its gate? Why is it so high?" He replied, "Your people did this so as to admit into it whomever they liked and prevent whomever they liked. Were your people not close to the Period of Ignorance (i.e., they have recently embraced Islam) and were I not afraid that they would dislike it, surely I would have included the (area of the) wall inside the building of the Ka'bah, and I would have lowered its gate to the level of the ground."

1585. Narrated 'Aishah: Allah's Messenger said to me, "Were your people not close to the Period of Ignorance, I would have demolished the Ka'bah and would have rebuilt it on its original foundations laid by Ibrahim (Abraham) (for Quraish had reduced its building), and I would have built a back door (too)."
1586. Narrated 'Urwa: 'Aishah said to her, “O Aishah! Were your people not close to the Period of Ignorance, I would have had the Ka'bah demolished and would have included in it the portion which had been left, and would have made it at a level with the ground and would have made two doors for it; one towards the east and the other towards the west, and then by doing this it would have been built on the foundations laid by (the Prophet) Ibrãhîm (Abraham).” That was what urged Ibn-Az-Zubair when he demolished and rebuilt the Ka'bah and included in it a portion of Al-Hijr (the unroofed portion of Ka'bah which is at present in the form of a compound towards the north-west of the Ka'bah). I saw the original foundations laid by Ibrãhîm which were of stones resembling the humps of camels.” So Jarîr asked Yazîd, “Where was the place of those stones?” Yazîd said, “I will just now show it to you.” So Jarîr accompanied Yazîd and entered Al-Hijr, and Yazîd pointed to a place and said, “Here it is.” Jarîr said, “It appeared to me about six cubits from Al-Hijr or so.”

(43) CHAPTER. The superiority of the Haram of Makkah.

And the Statement of Allâh ﷻ says: “[O Prophet! Say to them:] I (Muhammad ﷺ) have been commanded only to worship the Lord of this city (Makkah), Who sanctified it and to Whom belongs everything. And I am commanded to be from among the Muslims (those who submit to Allâh in
And the Statement of Allâh تعالى:

"...Have We not established for them a secure sanctuary (Makkah), to which are brought fruits of all kinds – a provision from Ourselves, but most of them know not.”
(V.28:57)

1587. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbâs رضي الله عنهما:
On the day of the conquest of Makkah, Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ said, “Allâh has made this town a sanctuary. Its thorny bushes should not be cut, its game should not be chased, and its Luqâ (fallen things) should not be picked up except by one who would announce it publicly.”

1588. Narrated ‘Usâma bin Zaid رضي الله عنهما: I asked, “O Allâh’s Messenger! Where will you stay in Makkah? Will you stay in your house in Makkah?” He replied, “Has ‘Aqil left any property or house?” ‘Aqil along with
Talib had inherited the property of Abu Talib. Ja’far and Ali did not inherit anything as they were Muslims while Aqil and Talib were disbelievers. Umar bin Al-Khattab used to say, “A believer cannot inherit (anything from a) disbeliever...” Ibn Shihab, (a sub-narrator) said, “They (Umar and others) derived the above verdict from Allah Statement:

‘Verily, those who believed, and emigrated and strove hard and fought with their property and their lives in the Cause of Allah, as well as those who gave (them) asylum and help – these are (all) allies to one another...’ (V.8:72)

(45) CHAPTER. The residence of the Prophet ﷺ in Makkah.

1589. Narrated Abu Hurairah:
When Allah’s Messenger ﷺ intended to enter Makkah he said, “Our destination tomorrow, if Allah will, shall be Khaif Banu Kinana where (the Mushrikun) had taken the oath of Kufr.” (Against the Prophet ﷺ i.e., to be loyal to heathenism by boycotting Banu Hashim, the Prophet’s folk). (See Hadith No. 3882 Vol. 5).

1590. Narrated Abu Hurairah:
On the day of Nahr at Mina, the Prophet ﷺ
said, “Tomorrow we shall stay at Khaif Bani Kinâna where the Mushrikin had taken the oath of Kufr (i.e. to be loyal to heathenism).” He meant (by that place) Al-Muḥāṣṣab where the Quraysh tribe and Bani Kinâna concluded a contract against Bani Hāshim and Bani ‘Abdul-Muṭṭalib or Bani Al-Muṭṭalib that they would not intermarry with them or deal with them in business until they handed over the Prophet ﷺ to them.

[46] CHAPTER. The Statement of Allāh:

“And (remember) when Ibrāhīm (Abraham) said: ‘O my Lord! Make this city (Makkah) one of peace and security, and keep me and my sons away from worshipping idols. O my Lord! They have indeed led astray many among mankind. But whoso follows me, he verily is of me. And whoso disobeys me – still You are indeed Oft Forgiving, Most Merciful. O our Lord! I have made some of my offspring to dwell in an uncultivable valley by Your Sacred House (the Ka’bah at Makkah); in order, O our Lord, that they may perform As-Salāt (Iqāmat-as-Salāt). So fill some hearts among men with love towards them...” ‘

(V.14:35-37)
(47) CHAPTER. The Statement of Allāh

“Allāh has made the Ka’bah, the Sacred House, an asylum of security and benefits [e.g., Hajj and ‘Umra (pilgrimage)] for mankind, and also the Sacred Month, and the animals of offerings, and the garlanded (people or animals, marked with garlands on their necks made from the outer parts of the stems of Makkah trees for their security) that you may know that Allāh has knowledge of all that is in the heavens and all that is in the earth, and that Allāh is the All-Knower of each and every thing.” (V.5:97)

1591. Narrated Abū Hurairah: The Prophet ﷺ said, “Qhus-Suwaiqatain (literally: One with two thin legs) from Ethiopia will demolish the Ka’bah.”

1592. Narrated ’Aishah: The people used to observe Saum (fast) on ‘Ashūra’ (the tenth day of the month of Muḥarram) before the fasting of Ramadān was made obligatory. And on that day, the Ka’bah used to be covered with a cover. When Allāh made the fasting of the month of Ramadān compulsory, Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ said, “Whoever wishes to observe Saum (fast) (on the day of ‘Ashūra’) may do so; and whoever wishes to leave it can do so.”
1593. Narrated Abū Sa‘īd Al-Khudrī: The Prophet ﷺ said, “The people will continue performing the Hajj and 'Umra to the Ka'bah even after the coming out of Ya'jūj and Ma'jūj (Gog and Magog).”

The subnarrator Shu‘ba added, “The Hour (Day of Judgement) will not be established till the Hajj (to the Ka'bah) is abandoned.

(48) CHAPTER. The covering of the Ka'bah.

1594. Narrated Abū Wā'il: (One day) I sat along with Shaiba on the chair inside the Ka'bah. He (Shaiba) said, “No doubt ‘Umar sat at this place and said, ‘I intended not to leave any yellow (i.e. gold) or white (i.e. silver) (inside the Ka'bah) undistributed.’ I said to ‘Umar, ‘But your two companions (i.e. the Prophet ﷺ and Abū Bakr) did not do so.’ ‘Umar said, ‘They are the two persons whom I always follow.’"
(49) **CHAPTER.** The demolishing of the Ka'bah.

‘Aishah  said that the Prophet  said, “An army will attack the Ka'bah and that army will sink down in the earth.”

1595. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbas  The Prophet  said, “As if I am looking at him, a black person with thin legs plucking out the stones of the Ka'bah one after another.”

1596. Narrated Abū Hurairah  Allāh’s Messenger  said, “Dhush-Suwaqatain (the thin-legged man) from Ethiopia will demolish the Ka'bah.”

(50) **CHAPTER.** What is said regarding the Black Stone.

1597. Narrated ‘Ābis bin Rabī‘a: ‘Umar  came near the Black Stone and kissed it and said, “No doubt, I know that you are a stone and can neither harm (anyone) nor benefit anyone. Had I not seen Allāh’s Messenger  kissing you, I would not have kissed you.”
(51) CHAPTER. Closing the door of the Ka'bah and (the permissibility) of offering Salāt (prayer) at any place in it.

1598. Narrated ʿĀlim that his father said, “Allāh’s Messenger ᴡ, Usāma bīn Zaid, Bilāl, and ʿUthmān bīn Ṭalḥa entered the Ka'bah and then closed its door. When they opened the door I was the first person to enter (the Ka'bah). I met Bilāl and asked him, “Did Allāh’s Messenger ᴡ offer a Salāt (prayer) inside (the Ka'bah)?” Bilāl replied in the affirmative and said, “(The Prophet ᴡ offered Salāt) in between the two right pillars.”

(52) CHAPTER. Offering As-Salāt (the prayers) inside the Ka’bah.

1599. Narrated Nāfī‘: Whenever Ibn ʿUmar ᴡ entered the Ka’bah he used to walk straight, keeping the door at his back on entering; and used to proceed on till about three cubits from the wall in front of him, and then he would offer prayers there aiming at the place where Allāh’s Messenger ᴡ offered prayers according to the information of Bilāl.

And there is no harm for any person to offer Salāt (prayer) at any place inside the Ka’bah.

(53) CHAPTER. Whoever did not enter the Ka’bah, and Ibn ʿUmar ᴡ used to
perform *Hajj* frequently without entering the Ka'bah.

1600. Narrated Ismā’il bin Abū Khālid: ‘Abdullāh bin Abū Aufa: ‘Alā‘ullāh’s Messenger ḥ performed the *Umra*. He performed *Tawaf* of the Ka’bah and offered two *Rak’ā* behind the *Maqām* [Ibrāhīm (Abraham’s) place] and was accompanied by those who were screening him from the people.’ Somebody asked ‘Abdullāh, “Did Allāh’s Messenger ḥ enter the Ka’bah?” ‘Abdullāh replied in the negative.\(^1\)

(54) CHAPTER. Saying *Takbir* (Allāh is the Most Great) inside the Ka’bah.

1601. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbās: When Allāh’s Messenger ḥ came to Makkah, he refused to enter the Ka’bah with idols in it. He ordered (idols to be taken out). So they were taken out. The people took out the pictures of Ibrāhīm (Abraham) and Ismā’il (Ishmael) holding *Azlām* in their hands. Allāh’s Messenger ḥ said, “May Allāh Curse these people. By Allāh, both Ibrāhīm and Ismā’il never did the game of chance with *Azlām*.” Then he entered the Ka’bah and said *Takbir* at its corners but did not offer the *Salāt* (prayer) in it.

---

\(^{1}\) (H. 1600) This means that the Prophet ḥ did not enter the Ka’bah when he performed that particular *Umra* perhaps because it contained idols or because he was afraid of being prevented by the pagans from entering it.
(55) CHAPTER. How (the legality of) the Ramal(1) started.

1602. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbâs: When Allah’s Messenger and his Companions came to Makkah, the Mushrikûn circulated the news that a group of people were coming to them and they had been weakened by the fever of Yathrib (Al-Madîna). So the Prophet ordered his Companions to do Ramal in the first three rounds of Tawaf of the Ka’bah, and to walk between the two corners (the Yemenite corner and the Black Stone). The Prophet did not order them to do Ramal in all the rounds of Tawaf out of pity for them.

(56) CHAPTER. The touching (and kissing) of the Black Stone on reaching Makkah during the first round of Tawaf of the Ka’bah, and doing Ramal in the first three rounds (of Tawaf).

1603. Narrated Sâlim that his father said: I saw Allah’s Messenger arriving at Makkah; he kissed the Black Stone corner first while doing Tawaf and did Ramal in the first three rounds of the seven rounds (of Tawaf).

(57) CHAPTER. Doing Ramal in performing Tawaf during Hajj and ‘Umra.

(1) (Ch.55) Ramal: See the glossary.
1604. Narrated ‘Abdullâh bin ‘Umar: The Prophet ﷺ did Ramal in (first) three rounds (of Tawâf), and walked in the remaining four, in Hajj and ‘Umra.

1605. Narrated Zaid bin Aslam that his father said, “‘Umar bin Al-Khattâb addressed the corner (Black Stone) saying, ‘By Allah! I know that you are a stone and can neither benefit nor harm. Had I not seen the Prophet ﷺ touching (and kissing) you, I would never have touched (and kissed) you.’ Then he kissed it and said, ‘There is no reason for us to do Ramal (in Tawâf) except that we wanted to show off before the Mushrikûn, and now Allah has destroyed them.’ ‘Umar added, ‘(Nevertheless) the Prophet ﷺ did that and we do not want to leave it (i.e. Ramal).’”

1606. Narrated Nâfi’: Ibn ‘Umar said, “I have never missed the touching of these two corners of Ka‘bah (the Black Stone and the Yemenite Corner) both in the presence and the absence of crowds, since I saw the Prophet ﷺ touching them.” (The subnarrator asked Nâfi’:) “Did Ibn ‘Umar use to walk between the two corners?” Nâfi’ replied, “He used to walk in order that it might be easy for him to touch it (the corner).”
(58) CHAPTER. Touching the Corner (Black Stone) with a bent-headed stick.

1607. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbās: The Prophet ﷺ performed Tawāf of the Ka’bah riding a camel in his last Hajj and touched the (Black Stone) Corner with a bent-headed stick.

1608. Abū Ash-Sha‘tha’ said, “Who keeps away from some portion of the Ka’bah?” Mu‘āwiya used to touch the four corners of the Ka’bah, Ibn ‘Abbās said to him, “These two corners (the ones facing the Hijr) are not to be touched.” Mu‘āwiya said, “Nothing is untouchable in the Ka’bah.” And Ibn Az-Zubair used to touch all the corners of the Ka’bah.

(59) CHAPTER. Whoever did not touch except the two Yemenite Corners of the Ka’bah.

1609. Narrated Sālim bin ‘Abdullāh: that his father said, “I have not seen the Prophet ﷺ touching except the two Yemenite Corners (i.e. the ones facing Yemen).”
(60) CHAPTER. To kiss the Black Stone.

1610. Narrated Zaid bin Aslam that his father said, “I saw ‘Umar bin Al-Khattab kissing the Black Stone and he then said (to it), ‘Had I not seen Allâh’s Messenger kissing you (stone), I would not have kissed you.’”

1611. Narrated Az-Zubair bin ‘Arabî: A man asked Ibn ‘Umar about the touching of the Black Stone. Ibn ‘Umar said, “I saw Allâh’s Messenger touching and kissing it.” The questioner said, “But if there were a throng (much rush) round the Ka’bah and the people overpowered me, (what would I do?)” He replied angrily, “Stay in Yemen (as that man was from Yemen). I saw Allâh’s Messenger touching and kissing it.”

(61) CHAPTER. Whoever pointed towards the Corner (Black Stone) on coming in front of it (while performing Tawâf).

1612. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbâs: The Prophet performed Tawâf of the Ka’bah while riding a camel, and whenever he came in front of the Corner, he pointed towards it.
(62) CHAPTER. To say Takbīr (Allāh is the Most Great) on coming in front of the Corner (having the Black Stone).

1613. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbās: The Prophet ﷺ performed Tawāf of the Ka‘bah riding a camel, and every time he came in front of the Corner (having the Black Stone), he pointed towards it with something he had with him and said Takbīr.

(63) CHAPTER. Whoever performed Tawāf of the Ka‘bah on reaching Makkah before going to his house then offered two Rak‘ā and then went towards As-Ṣafā.

1614, 1615. Narrated ‘Urwa: ‘Āishah زوجة ﷺ said, “The first thing the Prophet ﷺ did on reaching Makkah was the ablution and then he performed Tawāf of the Ka‘bah and that was not ‘Umra (alone), (but Hajj al-Qirān).” ‘Urwa added: Later Abū Bakr and ‘Umar did the same in their Hajj. And I performed the Hajj with my father Az-Zubair زوجي ﷺ, and the first thing he did was Tawāf of the Ka‘bah. Later I saw the Al-Muhājirin (Emigrants) and the Anṣār doing the same. My mother (Asmā’) told me that she, her sister (‘Aishah), Az-Zubair and such and such persons assumed Ihram for ‘Umra, and after they passed their hands over the Black Stone Corner (of the Ka‘bah) they finished the Ihram (i.e., after doing Tawāf of the Ka‘bah and Sa‘y between As-Ṣafā and Al-Marwā).
1616. Narrated ‘Abdullah bin ‘Umar: When Allah’s Messenger performed Tawaf of the Ka’bah for Hajj or ‘Umra, he used to do Ramal during the first three rounds, and in the last four rounds he used to walk; then after the Tawaf he offered two Rak’as prayer and then performed Sa’ý – Tawaf between Aş-Şafã and Al-Marwa.

1617. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar: When the Prophet performed the Tawaf of the Ka’bah, he did Ramal during the first three rounds and in the last four rounds he used to walk and while doing Sa’ý – Tawaf between Aş-Şafã and Al-Marwa, he used to run in the midst of the rain water passage.

(64) CHAPTER. The Tawaf of women and men.

1618. Ibn Juraij said, “‘Aţa’ informed us that when Ibn Hishâm forbade women to perform Tawaf with men he said to him, ‘How do you forbid them while the wives of the Prophet used to perform Tawaf with the men?’ I said, ‘Was this before decreeing the use of the veil or after it?’ ‘Aţa’ took an oath and said, ‘I saw it after the order of veil.’ I said, ‘How did they mix with the men?’
‘Aţā’ said, ‘The women never mixed with the men, and ‘Aishah used to perform Tawaf separately and never mixed with the men(1). (Once it happened that ‘Aishah was performing the Tawaf and a woman said to her, ‘O Mother of believers! Let us touch the Black Stone.’ ‘Aishah said to her, ‘Go yourself,’ and she herself refused to do so. The wives of the Prophet used to come out at night, in disguise and used to perform Tawaf with the men. But whenever they intended to enter the Ka’bah, they would stay outside till the men had gone out. I and ‘Ubaid bin ‘Umair used to visit ‘Aishah while she was residing at Jauf Thabir.” I asked, “What was her veil?” ‘Aţā’ said, “She was wearing an old Turkish veil, and that was the only thing (veil) which was a screen between us and her. I saw a pink cover on her.”

1619. Narrated Umm Salama the wife of the Prophet: I informed Allah’s Messenger about my sickness. So he said, “Perform the Tawaf while riding behind the people.” I did so, and at that time the Prophet was offering Salāt (prayer) beside the Ka’bah and reciting Sūrat An-Nāṣ.

(1) (Ch. 1618) Men and women used to perform Tawaf at the same time without mixing with each other.
(65) CHAPTER. The permissibility of talking during the Tawaf of the Ka'bah.

1620. Narrated Ibn 'Abbas: While the Prophet was performing Tawaf of the Ka'bah, he passed by a person who had tied his hands to another person with a rope or string or something like that. The Prophet cut it with his own hands and said, “Lead him by the hand.”

(66) CHAPTER. Whoever saw a string or something like that during the Tawaf and disliked it and cut it.

1621. Narrated Ibn 'Abbas: The Prophet saw a man performing Tawaf of the Ka'bah tied with a string or something else. So the Prophet cut that string.

(67) CHAPTER. It is neither permissible for a naked person to perform Tawaf of the Ka'bah nor for a Mushrik [polytheist, pagan, idolater, and disbeliever in the Oneness of Allah and in His Messenger Muhammad] to perform Hajj.

1622. Narrated Abū Hurairah: In the year prior to the last Hajj of the Prophet when Allah's Messenger made Abū Bakr the leader of the pilgrims, the latter (Abū Bakr) sent me in the company of a group of people to make a public
announcement (proclaiming): “No Mushrik: [polytheist, pagan, idolater, and disbeliever in the Oneness of Allâh and in His Messenger Muhammad (صلى الله عليه وسلم)] is allowed to perform Hajj after this year, and no naked person is allowed to perform Tawâf of the Ka’bah.” (See Hadith No.369, Vol.1)

(68) CHAPTER. If one stops during the Tawâf (should he start from the beginning?)

‘Aţâ’ said, “If a person is performing the Tawâf and the call for the Salât (prayer) is made and the Salât starts or he is pushed from his place; after finishing the Salât he should return and start from where he had stopped.” The same is narrated by Ibn ‘Umar and ‘Abdur-Rahmân bin Abû Bakr رضي الله عنهم.

(69) CHAPTER. The Prophet ﷺ offered a two Rak’â prayer after his seven rounds (of Tawâf of the Ka’bah).

Narrated Nâfi’: Ibn ‘Umar رضي الله عنهم used to offer a two Rak’â prayer after every seven rounds. And Ismâ’il bin Umaiyya said, “I told Az-Zuhri that ‘Aţâ’ said, ‘The compulsory Salât (prayer) dispenses with the two Rak’â prayer of Tawâf.’ Az-Zuhri said, ‘It is better to follow legal way (of the Prophet ﷺ). The Prophet ﷺ never performed seven rounds of Tawâf but offered a two Rak’â prayer (after them)’.”

1623. Narrated ‘Amr: We asked Ibn ‘Umar رضي الله عنهم: “Is it permissible for a man to have sexual relations with his wife during the ’Umra before performing Sa’y – Tawâf between As-Safâ and Al-Marwa?” He said, “Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ arrived (in Makkah) and circumambulated the Ka’bah seven times, then offered two Rak’â (prayer)
behind Maqām-Ibrāhīm (the place of Abraham), then performed Sa'y – Tawāf between Aš-Šafã and Al-Marwa.” Ibn ‘Umar added, “Indeed, in the Messenger of Allāh (Muhammad ﷺ) you have a good example to follow.” (V.33:21)

1624. And I asked Jābir bin ‘Abdullāh رضي الله عنه (the same question), and he replied, “You should not go near your wives (have sexual relations) till you have finished Sa'y – Tawāf between Aš-Šafã and Al-Marwa.”

(70) CHAPTER. Whoever did not go near the Ka'bah and did not perform Tawāf of the Ka'bah after the first Tawāf performed on entering Makkah till he proceeded to 'Arafat and returned.

1625. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbās رضي الله عنه: The Prophet ﷺ arrived at Makkah and performed Tawāf of the Ka'bah and Sa'y between Aš-Šafã and Al-Marwa, but he did not go near the Ka'bah after his Tawāf till he returned from 'Arafat.

(71) CHAPTER. Whoever offered two Rak'ā prayer of Tawāf outside the mosque.

‘Umar offered the prayer outside the Haram (the Sacred Mosque).

1626. Narrated Umm Salama رضي الله عنها, the wife of the Prophet ﷺ: I informed Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ (about my illness). Through other subnarrators, Umm Salama رضي الله عنها narrated that when Allāh’s
Messenger was at Makkah and decided to depart (from Makkah) while she had not yet done Tawaf of the Ka'bah (and after listening to her), the Prophet said, “When the morning Salat (prayer) is established, perform the Tawaf on your camel while the people are in Salat.” So she did the same and did not offer the two Rak'a of Tawaf until she came out of the Mosque.

(72) CHAPTER. Whoever offered the two Rak'a (prayer) of Tawaf behind Maqam-Ibrahim (place of Abraham).

1627. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar: The Prophet reached Makkah, (did the Tawaf) circumambulated the Ka'bah seven times and then offered a two Rak'a prayer behind Maqam-Ibrahim. Then he went towards As-Ṣafā. Allāh تعالى said, “Indeed, in the Messenger of Allāh (Muhammad ﷺ) you have a good example to follow.” (V.33:21)

(73) CHAPTER. To perform Tawaf (of the Ka'bah) after the morning and ‘Asr prayer.

Ibn ‘Umar used to offer the two Rak'a prayer of Tawaf before sunrise,
and ‘Umar performed the Tawaf (of the Ka’bah) after the morning prayer and then rode till he reached Dhi-Tuwā’ (one of the districts of Makkah) and then offered the two Rak‘a (of Tawaf).

1628. Narrated ‘Aishah: Some people performed Tawaf (of the Ka’bah) after the morning prayer and then sat to listen to a preacher till sunrise, and then they stood up for the Salat (prayer). Then ‘Aishah added, “Those people kept on sitting till it was the time in which the Salat (prayer) is disliked and after that (when the sun had risen) they stood up for the Salat (prayer).”

1629. Narrated ‘Abdullāh: I heard the Prophet forbidding the offering of Salat (prayer) at the time of sunrise and sunset.

1630. Narrated ‘Abida bin Ḥumaid: ‘Abdul ‘Azīz bin Rufai said, “I saw ‘Abdullāh bin Az-Zubair performing Tawaf of the Ka’bah after the Fajr prayer then offering the two Rak‘a Salat (prayer).”

1631. ‘Abdul ‘Azīz added, “I saw ‘Abdullāh bin Az-Zubair offering a two
Rak‘ā Ṣalāt after the ‘Aṣr prayer.” He informed me that ‘Āishah bint Abī Bakr as-Siddiqa told him that the Prophet used to offer those two Rak‘ā prayer whenever he entered her house.”

(74) CHAPTER. A sick person may perform Ṭawāf (of the Ka‘bah) while riding.

1632. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbās: Allah’s Messenger performed Ṭawāf (of the Ka‘bah) riding a camel (at that time the Prophet had foot injury). Whenever he came to the Corner (having the Black Stone) he would point out towards it with a thing in his hand and say “Allāhu-Akbar.”

1633. Narrated Umm Salama: I informed Allah’s Messenger about my sickness. He said, “Perform Ṭawāf (of the Ka‘bah) while riding behind the people.” So, I performed the Ṭawāf while Allah’s Messenger was offering the Ṣalāt (prayer) beside the Ka‘bah and was reciting Sūrat At-Tūr.

(75) CHAPTER. Providing the pilgrims with water to drink.

1634. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar: Among other things I narrate to you which Allah’s Messenger and Al-‘Abbās bin ‘Abdul-Muṭṭalib
asked the permission of Allâh's Messenger to let him stay in Makkah during the nights of Minâ (i.e., when one is required to stay in Minâ) in order to provide the pilgrims with water to drink, so the Prophet permitted him.


So, he drank from that water and then went to the Zamzam (well) and there the people were offering water to the others and working at it (drawing water from the well). The Prophet then said to them, “Carry on! You are doing a good deed.” Then he said, “Were I not afraid that other people would compete with you (in drawing water from the Zamzam well), I would certainly take the rope and put it over this (i.e., his shoulder) (to draw water)”. On saying that the Prophet pointed to his shoulder.

(76) CHAPTER. What is said about Zamzam (water).

1636. Narrated Anas bin Malik that Abu Dhar said: Allâh's Messenger said, “The roof of my house was made open while I was at Makkah (on the night of Mi'raj) and Jibrîl (Gabriel) descended. He opened up my chest and
washed it with the water of Zamzam. Then he brought a golden tray full of Wisdom and Belief and poured it in my chest and then closed it. Then he took hold of my hand and ascended to the nearest heaven. Jibril told the gatekeeper of the nearest heaven to open the gate. The gatekeeper asked, “Who is it?” Jibril replied, “I am Jibril.” (See Hadith No. 349, Vol. 1)

1637. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbâs رضي الله عنهما: I gave Zamzam (water) to Allah’s Messenger ﷺ and he drank it while standing. ‘Aşim (a subnarrator) said that ‘Ikrima took the oath that on that day the Prophet ﷺ had not been standing but riding a camel.

(77) CHAPTER. The Tawaf of a Al-Qârin (one who performs Hajj-al-Qîrân).

1638. Narrated ‘Âishah رضي الله عنها: We set out with Allah’s Messenger ﷺ in the year of his last Hajj and we intended (the Ihram) for ‘Umra. Then the Prophet ﷺ said, “Whoever has a Hady with him should assume Ihram for both Hajj and ‘Umra, and should not finish it till he performs both of them (Hajj and ‘Umra).” When we reached Makkah, I got my menses. When we had performed our Hajj, the Prophet ﷺ sent me with ‘Abdur-Rahmân to Tan‘im and I performed the ‘Umra. The Prophet ﷺ said, “This is in lieu of your missed ‘Umra.” Those who had assumed Ihram for ‘Umra performed Tawaf [Sa’y (going) between As-Sâfâ and Al-Marwâ] and then finished their Ihram. And then they performed another
Tawāf [Sa'y (going) (between Aṣ-Ṣafā and Al-Marwa)] after returning from Mina. And those who had assumed Iḥrām for Hajj and 'Umra together (Hajj-al-Qirān) performed only one Tawāf [Sa'y (going) (between Aṣ-Ṣafā and Al-Marwa)].

1639. Narrated Nāfi': 'Abdūllāh bin 'Abdullāh bin 'Umar and his riding animal entered the house of Ibn 'Umar. He (the son of Ibn 'Umar) said, "I fear that this year a battle might take place between the people, and you (Ibn 'Umar) might be prevented from going to the Ka'bah. I suggest that you should stay here." Ibn 'Umar said, "Once Allāh's Messenger set out (for the pilgrimage), and the Mushrikūn of Quraish intervened between him and the Ka'bah. So, if the people intervened between me and the Ka'bah, I would do the same as Allāh's Messenger had done..." "Indeed in the Messenger of Allah (Muhammad) you have a good example to follow." Then he added, "I make you a witness that I have intended to perform Hajj along with 'Umra." After arriving at Makkah, Ibn 'Umar performed one Tawāf - Sa'y only (between Aṣ-Ṣafā and Al-Marwa) for both (Hajj and 'Umra - i.e. Hajj-al-Qirān).

1640. Narrated Nāfi': Ibn 'Umar intended to perform Hajj in the year when Al-Hajjāj attacked Ibn Az-Zubair. Somebody said to Ibn 'Umar, "There is a danger of an impending battle between them." Ibn 'Umar said, "Verily, in Allāh's Messenger (ṣallī اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَرَحْمَتَهُ) you have a good example to follow." "(And if it happened as you say) then I would do the same as Allāh's..."
Messenger had done. I make you witness that I have decided to perform ‘Umra.’ Then he set out and when he reached Al-Baida’, he said, “The ceremonies of both Hajj and ‘Umra are one and the same. I make you witness that I have made Hajj compulsory for me along with ‘Umra.” He drove (to Makkah) a Hady which he had bought from (a place called) Qudaid and did not do more than that. He did not slaughter the Hady or finish his Ihram, or shave or cut short his hair till the day of slaughtering the sacrifices (10th Dhul-Hijjah). Then he slaughtered his Hady and shaved his head and considered the first Tawaf – Sayy (of As-Saf and Al-Marwa) as sufficient for Hajj and ‘Umra. Ibn ‘Umar said, “Allāh’s Messenger did the same.”

(78) CHAPTER. Tawaf with ablation.

1641. Narrated Muḥammad bin ‘Abdur-Rahmān bin Naufal Al-Qurashi: I asked ‘Urwa bin Az-Zubair (regarding the Hajj of the Prophet). ‘Urwa replied, “Aishah informed me that when the Prophet reached Makkah, the first thing he started with was the ablution, then he performed Tawaf of the Ka‘bah, and his intention was not ‘Umra alone (but Hajj and ‘Umra together).” Later Abu Bakr performed the Hajj and the first thing he started with was Tawaf of the Ka‘bah and it was not ‘Umra alone (but Hajj and ‘Umra together) and then ‘Umar did the same. Then ‘Uthmān performed the Hajj and the first thing he started with was Tawaf of the Ka‘bah and it was not ‘Umra alone. And then Mu‘āwiyah and ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Umar did the same. Then I performed Hajj with my father Az-Zubair bin Al-Awwām and the first thing...
he started with was ʿTawāf of the Kaʾbah and it was not ʿUmra alone (but ḤaJJ and ʿUmra together). Then I saw Al-Muhājirin (emigrants) and the Anṣār doing the same and it was not ʿUmra alone. And the last person I saw doing the same was Ibn ʿUmar, and he did not do another ʿUmra after finishing the first. Now here is Ibn ʿUmar present amongst the people! They neither ask him nor anyone of the previous ones. And all these people, on entering Makkah, would not start with anything unless they had performed ʿTawāf of the Kaʾbah, and would not finish their Ihram. And no doubt, I saw my mother and my aunt, on entering Makkah doing nothing before performing ʿTawāf of the Kaʾbah, and they would not finish their Ihram.”

1642. “And my mother informed me that she, her sister, Az-Zubair and such and such persons had assumed Ihram for ʿUmra and after passing their hands over the Corner (the Black Stone) (i.e. finishing their ʿUmra) they finished their Ihram.”

(79) CHAPTER. The ʿTawāf (Ṣāʾ) between Aš-Šāfa and Al-Marwa is compulsory and is one of the Symbols of Allāh.

1643. Narrated ʿUrwa: I asked ʿĀishah: “How do you interpret the Statement of Allāh: ‘Verily! A-Ṣafâ and Al-Marwa (two mountains in Makkah) are of the Symbols of Allāh. So it is not a sin on him who performs ḤaJJ or ʿUmra (pilgrimage) of the House (the Kaʾbah at Makkah) to perform the going (ʿTawāf) between them (Aš-Ṣafâ and Al-Marwa).’
(V.2:158). By Allah! (It is evident from this revelation) there is no harm if one does not perform *Tawaf* between As-Safā and Al-Marwa.” ‘Aishah said, “O, my nephew! Your interpretation is not true. Had this interpretation of yours been correct, the Statement of Allah should have been: It is not a sin on him if he does not perform *Tawaf* – *Sā’* (going) between them.’ But in fact, this Divine Revelation was revealed concerning the *Anṣār* who used to assume *Ihram* for worshipping an idol called Manāt which they used to worship at a place called Al-Mushallal before they embraced Islam, and whoever assumed *Ihram* (for the idol), would consider it not right to perform *Tawaf* – *Sā’* (going) between As-Safā and Al-Marwa. When they embraced Islam, they asked Allah’s Messenger regarding it, saying, ‘O Allah’s Messenger! We used to refrain from *Tawaf* – *Sā’* (going) between As-Safā and Al-Marwa.’ So Allah revealed: ‘Verily! As-Safā and Al-Marwa (two mountains in Makkah) are of the Symbols of Allah.’ ‘Aishah added, “Surely, Allah’s Messenger set As-Sunna (legal way) of *Tawaf* – *Sā’* (going) between As-Safā and Al-Marwa, so nobody is allowed to omit the *Tawaf* – *Sā’* (going) between them.” Later on I (‘Urwa) told Abū Bakr bin ‘Abdur-Rahmān (of ‘Aishah’s narration) and he said, “I have not heard of such information, but I heard learned men saying that all the people, (except those whom ‘Aishah mentioned and who used to assume *Ihram* for the sake of Manāt) used to perform *Tawaf* between As-Safā and Al-Marwa. When Allah referred to the *Tawaf* of the Ka’bah and did not mention As-Safā and Al-Marwa in the Qur’ān, the people asked, ‘O Allah’s Messenger! We used to perform *Tawaf* – *Sā’* (going) between As-
Safâ and Al-Marwa and Allâh has revealed (the Verses concerning) Tawâf of the Ka'bah and has not mentioned Aş-Safâ and Al-Marwa. Is there any sin if we perform Tawâf - Sa'y (going) between Aş-Safâ and Al-Marwa? So Allâh revealed: 'Verily! Aş-Safâ and Al-Marwa (two mountains at Makkah) are of the Symbols of Allâh.' Abû Bakr said, “It seems that this Verse was revealed concerning the two groups, those who used to refrain from Tawâf - Sa'y (going) between Aş-Safâ and Al-Marwa in the Pre-Islamic Period of Ignorance and those who used to perform the Tawâf - Sa'y (going) them, and after embracing Islâm they refrained from the Tawâf between them as Allâh had enjoined Tawâf of the Ka'bah and did not mention Tawâf - Sa'y (going) (of Aş-Safâ and Al-Marwa) till later Allâh did mention it after mentioning the Tawâf of the Ka'bah.”

(80) CHAPTER. What is said about Sa'y between Aş-Safâ and Al-Marwa.

And Ibn 'Umar said that Sa'y (is to be observed) from the house of Bani 'Abbad to the lane of Bani 'Abû Hussain.

1644. Narrated Nâfi': Ibn 'Umar said, “When Allâh's Messenger performed the first Tawâf, he did Ramâl in the first three rounds and then walked in the remaining four rounds (of Tawâf of the Ka'bah), whereas in performing Tawâf - Sa'y (going) between Aş-Safâ and Al-Marwa he used to run in the midst of the rain-water passage.” I asked Nâfi', “Did 'Abdullâh (bin 'Umar) use to pass by on reaching the Yemenite Corner?” He replied, “No, unless people were crowded at the Corner; otherwise he would not leave it without touching it.”
1645. Narrated ‘Amr bin Dinar: We asked Ibn ‘Umar whether a man who, while performing ‘Umra, had performed Tawaf of the Ka‘bah; and had not yet performed Tawaf – [Sā’y (going)] between As-Ṣafā and Al-Marwa, could have sexual relation with his wife. Ibn ‘Umar replied, “The Prophet reached Makkah and performed the seven rounds (of Tawaf) of the Ka‘bah and then offered a two Rak‘a prayer behind Maqam-Ibrahim and then performed the Tawaf – [Sā’y (going)] between As-Ṣafā and Al-Marwa.” He added, “Verily! In Allâh’s Messenger you have a good example (to follow).”

1646. We asked Jâbir bin ‘Abdullâh (the same question) and he said, “He (that man) should not come near (his wife) till he has completed Tawaf – [Sā’y (going)] between As-Ṣafā and Al-Marwa.”

1647. Narrated ‘Amr bin Dinâr: I heard Ibn ‘Umar saying, “The Prophet reached Makkah and performed Tawaf – [Sā’y (going)] of the Ka‘bah and then offered a two Rak‘a prayer and then performed Tawaf – [Sā’y (going)] between As-Ṣafâ and Al-Marwa.” Ibn ‘Umar then recited (the Verse): “Indeed! in the Messenger of Allâh you have a good example to follow…” (V.33:21)

1648. Narrated ‘Aṣim: I asked Anas bin Mâlik, “Did you use to dislike to
perform Ṭawāf – [Sa' (going)] between Aš-Šafā and Al-Marwa?" He said, "Yes, as it was of the ceremonies of the days of the Pre-Islamic Period of Ignorance, till Allāh revealed: 'Verily! Aš-Šafā and Al-Marwa (two mountains in Makkah) are of the Symbols of Allāh. So it is not a sin on him who performs Hajj or 'Umra (pilgrimage) of the House (the Ka'bah at Makkah) to perform the going (Ṭawāf) between them (Aš-Šafā and Al-Marwa)...'" (V.2:158)

1649. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbās: Allah’s Messenger performed Sa' of the Ka'bah and the Sa' of Aš-Šafā and Al-Marwa so as to show his strength to the Al-Mushrikūn(1).

(81) CHAPTER. A menstruating woman can perform all the ceremonies of Hajj except Ṭawāf of the Ka'bah. (What is said) regarding the performance of Ṭawāf – [Sa'y (going)] between Aš-Šafā and Al-Marwa without ablution?

1650. Narrated ‘Āishah: I was menstruating when I reached Makkah. So, I neither performed Ṭawāf of the Ka'bah, nor the Ṭawāf – [Sa'y (going)] between Aš-Šafā and Al-Marwa. Then I informed Allāh’s Messenger about it. He replied, “Perform all the ceremonies of Hajj like the

(1) Al-Mushrikūn: Polytheists, pagans, idolaters, and disbelievers in the Oneness of Allāh and in His Messenger Muhammad (ﷺ).
other pilgrims, but do not perform Tawāf of the Ka'bah till you get clean (from your menses)."

1651. Narrated Jābir bin ‘Abdullāh رضي الله عنه: The Prophet ﷺ and his Companions assumed Ihrām for Ḥajj and none except the Prophet ﷺ and Ṭalḥa had the Ḥady (sacrifice) with them. ‘Ālī arrived from Yemen and had a Ḥady with him. ‘Ālī said, “I have assumed Ihrām with the same (intention) as that of the Prophet ﷺ.” The Prophet ﷺ ordered his Companions to perform the ‘Umra with the Ḥaram which they had assumed, and after finishing Tawāf (of Ka'bah), and [Sā'y (going)]. Aṣ-Ṣafā and Al-Marwa) to cut short their head-hair, and to finish their Ḥaram except those who had Ḥady with them. They (the people) said, “How can we proceed to Mina (for Ḥajj) after having sexual relations with our wives?”

When that news reached the Prophet ﷺ he said, “If I had formerly known what I came to know lately, I would not have brought the Ḥady with me. Had there been no Ḥady with me, I would have finished the state of Ḥaram.” ‘Aishah got her menses, so she performed all the ceremonies of Ḥajj except Tawāf of the Ka‘bah, and when she got clean (from her menses), she performed Tawāf of the Ka‘bah. She said, “O Allāh’s Messenger! (All of you) are returning with the Ḥajj and ‘Umra, but I am returning with Ḥajj only.” So the Prophet ﷺ ordered ‘Abdur-Rahmān bin Abū Bakr to accompany her to Tan‘im and thus she performed the ‘Umra after the Ḥajj.
1652. Narrated Ḥafṣa b. 'Āliya: (On the days of 'Eid) we used to forbid our virgins to go out (for 'Eid prayers). A lady came and stayed at the palace of Banū Khalaf. She mentioned that her sister was married to one of the Companions of Allāh's Messenger who participated in twelve Ghaza'āt along with Allāh's Messenger and her sister was with him in six of them. She said, "We used to apply dressing to the wounded and look after the sick." She (her sister) asked Allāh's Messenger, "Is there any harm for a woman to stay at home if she doesn't have a veil?" He said, "She should cover herself with the veil of her companion and she should take part in the good deeds and in the religious gatherings of the believers." When Ṣa‘īda b. Ṭayyība came, I asked her, "Did you hear anything about that?" Ṣa‘īda said, "Bi 'abt," and she never mentioned the name of Allāh's Messenger without saying "Bi 'abt" (i.e., 'Let my father be sacrificed for you'). We asked her, "Have you heard Allāh's Messenger saying so-and-so (about women)?" She replied in affirmative and said, "Let my father be sacrificed for him. He told us that unmarried mature virgins who stay often screened, or unmarried young virgins and mature girls who stay often screened should come out and take part in the good deeds and in the religious gatherings of the believers. But the menstruating women should keep away from the Musalla (a place for offering Salah - prayers)." I asked her, "The menstruating women?" She replied, "Don't they present themselves at 'Arafāt and at such and such places?"

(1) (H. 1652) Holy battles, with the army led by the Prophet.
(82) CHAPTER. Assuming *Ihram* from Al-Batţā’ and other places by those living in Makkah and by the pilgrims on departing for Mina.

And ‘Aţā’ was asked whether one residing in Makkah can say *Talbiya* for Ḥajj. He said, “Ibn ‘Umar used to recite *Talbiya* on the day of *Tarwiya* (8th of Dhul-Hajjah) only after offering the *Zuhr* prayer and after mounting over his *Rahila* (mount).

Narrated ‘Abdul Mãlik from ‘Aţā’ from Jābir: We arrived at Makkah along with the Prophet and then finished our *Ihram*, till it was the day of *Tarwiya* (8th day of Dhul-Hijjah) when we departed from Makkah and recited *Talbiya* (assumed *Ihram*) for Hajj. Jābir said, “We assumed *Ihram* from Al-Batţā’.”

‘Ubaid bin Juraij said to Ibn ‘Umar: “I see that while you are in Makkah, you do not assume *Ihram* till the day of *Tarwiya*, whereas the others assume *Ihram* after seeing the moon (1st day of Dhul-Hijjah).” Ibn ‘Umar replied, “I never saw the Prophet starting the *Talbiya* till his mount was ready for the journey.”

(83) CHAPTER. Where to offer the *Zuhr* prayer on the day of *Tarwiya* (8th day of Dhul-Hijjah).

1653. Narrated ‘Abdul ‘Azīz bin Rufai’: I asked Anas bin Malik, “Tell me what you remember from Allah’s Messenger (regarding these questions): Where did he offer the *Zuhr* and *’Asr* prayer on the day of *Tarwiya* (8th of Dhul-Hajjah)?” He replied, “(He offered these prayers) at Mina.” I asked, “Where did he offer the *’Asr* prayer on the day of *Nafir* (i.e., departure from Mina on the 12th or 13th of Dhul-Hijjah)?” He replied, “At Al-Abtab,” and then added, “You should do as your chiefs do.”
1654. Narrated ‘Abdul ‘Azîz: I went out to Mina on the day of Tarwîya and met Anas going on a donkey. I asked him, “Where did the Prophet offer the Zuhr prayer on this day?” Anas replied, “See where your chiefs offer prayer so you too offer prayer where they offer prayer.”

(84) CHAPTER. As-Salât at Mina.


1656. Narrated Hârîthâ bin Wahâb Al-Khuzâ‘î رضي الله عنه: The Prophet ﷺ led and offered with us two Rak’â [shortened Salât (prayer) during Hajj] at Mina although our number was more than ever and we were in better security than ever.

1657. Narrated ‘Abdullâh (bin Mas‘ûd) رضي الله عنه: I offered with the Prophet ﷺ two
Rak’a [shortened Salāt (prayer) during Ḥajj] (at Minā), and similarly with Abū Bakr, and with ‘Umar, and then you differed in opinions. Wish that I would be lucky enough to have two of the four Rak’a accepted (by Allah).

(85) CHAPTER. Fasting on the Day of ‘Arafa (at ‘Arafat).

1658. Narrated Umm Al-Fadl: The people doubted whether the Prophet was observing the fast on the Day of ‘Arafa, so I sent something for him to drink and he drank it.

(86) CHAPTER. The recitation of Talbiya and Takbīr while proceeding from Mina to ‘Arafat.

1659. Narrated Muḥammad bin Abū Bakr Ath-Thaqafi: I asked Anas bin Mālik while we were proceeding from Minā to ‘Arafat, “What do you use to do on this day when you were with Allāh’s Messenger?” Anas said, “Some of us used to recite Talbiya and nobody objected to that, and others used to recite Takbīr and nobody objected to that.”
(87) CHAPTER. To proceed at noon on the Day of 'Arafa (9th of Dhul-Hijjah) (from the mosque of Namira towards 'Arafat).

1660. Narrated Sālim: ‘Abdul Mālik wrote to Al-Ḥajjāj that he should not differ from Ibn ‘Umar in proceeding during Ḥajj. On the Day of ‘Arafa, when the sun declined at midday, Ibn ‘Umar came along with me and shouted near Al-Hijāj’s cotton tent. Al-Ḥijjāj came out, wrapping himself with a waist-sheet dyed with safflower, and said, “O Abū Abdur-Rahmān! What is the matter?” He said, “If you want to follow the Sunna then proceed.” Al-Ḥijjāj asked, “At this very hour?” Ibn ‘Umar said, “Yes.” He replied, “Please wait for me till I pour some water over my head (i.e., take a bath) and come out.” Then Ibn ‘Umar dismounted and waited till Al-Ḥajjāj came out.

So, he (Al-Ḥajjāj) walked in between me and my father (Ibn ‘Umar). I said to him, “If you want to follow the Sunna then deliver a brief Khutba (religious talk) and hurry up for the stay at ‘Arafat.” He started looking at ‘Abdullāh (Ibn ‘Umar) (inquiringly), and when ‘Abdullāh noticed that, he said I had told the truth.

(88) CHAPTER. Staying on one’s riding animal at ‘Arafat.

1661. Narrated Umm Al-Faḍl bint Al-Ḥārith: On the Day of ‘Arafa, some people who were with me, differed about the fasting of the Prophet ﷺ; some said that he was observing Šaum (fasting) while others said that he was not observing
Saum. So I sent a bowl full of milk to him while he was riding his camel, and he drank that milk.

(89) CHAPTER. To offer the two Salah together [the Zuhr (prayer) and the 'Asr (prayer)] at 'Arafat.

And whenever Ibn 'Umar missed the Salah (prayer) with the Imam, he used to offer the two Salah together.

1662. Ibn Shihāb said: Sālim said, “In the year when Al-Ḥajjāj bin Yūsuf attacked Ibn Aẓ-Zubair, the former asked ‘Abdullāh (Ibn ‘Umar) what to do during the stay on the Day of ‘Arafa (9th of Dhul-Hijjah). I said to him, ‘If you want to follow the Sunna (the legal way of the Prophet ﷺ) you should offer the Salah just after midday on the Day of ‘Arafa.’ ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Umar said, ‘He (Sālim) has spoken the truth.’” They (the Companions of the Prophet ﷺ) used to offer the Zuhr and the ‘Asr prayer together according to the Sunna, I asked Sālim, “Did Allah’s Messenger ﷺ do that?” Sālim said, “And in doing that do you (people) follow anything except his (ד) Sunna?”

(90) CHAPTER. To shorten the Khutba (religious talk) on on the Day of ‘Arafa.

1663. Narrated Sālim bin ‘Abdullāh (bin ‘Umar); ‘Abdul-Malik bin Marwān wrote to Al-Ḥajjāj that he should follow ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Umar in all the ceremonies of Ḥajj. So, when it was the Day of ‘Arafa (9th of
Dhul-Hijjah), and after the sun has declined from the middle of the sky, I and Ibn ‘Umar came and he shouted near the cotton (cloth) tent of Al-Hajjaj, “Where is he?” Al-Hajjaj came out. Ibn ‘Umar said, “Let us proceed (to ‘Arafat).” Al-Hajjaj asked, “Just now?” Ibn ‘Umar replied, “Yes.” Al-Hajjaj said, “Wait for me till I pour water on me (i.e., take a bath).” So, Ibn ‘Umar dismounted (and waited) till Al-Hajjaj came out. He was walking between me and my father. I informed Al-Hajjaj, “If you want to follow the Sunna (the legal way) of the Prophet (ﷺ) today, then you should shorten the Khutba (religious talk) and then hurry up for the stay (at ‘Arafat).” Ibn ‘Umar said, “He (Sālim) has spoken the truth.”

CHAPTER. To hurry up for the stay (at ‘Arafat).

(91) CHAPTER. The staying at ‘Arafat.

1664. Narrated Muḥammad bin Jubair bin Muṭ‘im: My father said, “(Before Islām) I was looking for my camel...” The same narration is told by a different sub-narrator. Jubair bin Muṭ‘im said, “My camel was lost and I went out in search of it on the Day of ‘Arafā, and I saw the Prophet ﷺ standing in ‘Arafā. I said to myself: By Allah he is from the Hums (literally: strictly religious, Quraish were called so, as they used to say, ‘We are the people of Allāh, we shall not go out of the sanctuary’). What has brought him here?”
1665. Narrated 'Urwa: During the Pre-Islamic Period of Ignorance, the people used to perform Tawaf of the Ka'bah naked except the Hums; and the Hums were Quraish and their offspring. The Hums used to give clothes to the men who would perform the Tawaf wearing them; and women (of the Hums) used to give clothes to the women who would perform the Tawaf wearing them. Those to whom the Hums did not give clothes would perform Tawaf round the Ka'bah naked.

Most of the people used to go away (disperse) directly from 'Arafat but they (Hums) used to depart after staying at Al-Muzdalifa.

'Urwa added, “My father narrated that 'Aishah had said, ‘The following Verses were revealed about the Hums: ‘Then depart from the place whence all the people depart...' (V.2:199)

'Urwa added, “They (the Hums) used to stay at Al-Muzdalifa and used to depart from there (to Mina) and so they were ordered to proceed to 'Arafat (by Allah's Order).”

(92) CHAPTER. One's speed while one is departing from 'Arafat.

1666. Narrated 'Urwa: Usama was asked in my presence, “How was the speed of (the camel of) Allah's Messenger while departing from 'Arafat during the Hajjat-ul-Wada?” Usama replied, “The Prophet proceeded on with a modest pace, and when there was enough space he would (make his camel) go very fast.”
(93) CHAPTER. To dismount between ‘Arafat and Jam‘ (i.e., Al-Muzdalifa) (because of a necessity).

1667. Narrated Usama bin Zaid رضي الله عنهما: The Prophet ﷺ after departing from ‘Arafat, he went towards the mountain path, and there he answered the call of nature and then performed ablution. I asked, “O Allah’s Messenger! Will you offer the Salât (prayer) here?” He replied, “(The place of) As-Salât (prayer) is ahead of you (i.e., at Al-Muzdalifa).”

1668. Narrated Nafi‘: ‘Abdullah bin ‘Umar رضي الله عنهما used to offer the Maghrib and ‘Ishâ’ prayer together at Jam‘ (Al-Muzdalifa). But he used to pass by that mountain path where Allah’s Messenger ﷺ went, and he would enter it and answer the call of nature and perform ablution, and would not offer any Salât (prayer) till he had offered Salât (prayer) at Jam‘ (i.e., Muzdalifa).

1669. Narrated Usâma bin Zaid رضي الله عنهما: I rode behind Allah’s Messenger ﷺ from ‘Arafat and when Allah’s Messenger ﷺ reached the mountain path on the left side which is before Al-Muzdalifa, he made his camel kneel and then urinated, and then I poured water for his ablution. He performed light ablution and then I said to him: “(Is it
the time for) ُسَلَةَ (prayer), O Allah’s Messenger!” He replied, “The (place of) ُسَلَةَ (prayer) is ahead of you (i.e., at Al-Muzdalifa).” So Allah’s Messengerس عليه السلام rode till he reached Al-Muzdalifa and then he offered the ُسَلَةَ (prayer) (there). Then in the morning (10th Dhul-Hijjah) Al-Faḍl (bin ‘Abbās) rode behind Allah’s Messengerس عليه السلام.

1670. Kuraib, (a subnarrator) said that ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Abbās narrated from Al-Faḍl, “Allah’s Messengerس عليه السلام kept on reciting تَلْبِيْشَةَ (Talbiya) (during the journey) till he reached the Jamra (Jamrat-al-‘Aqaba).”

(94) CHAPTER. The order of the Prophetس عليه السلام that people should be calm and patient on proceeding (from ‘Arafāt) and the waving of his lash towards them.

(95) CHAPTER. The offering of two Salât (prayer) together at Al-Muzdalifa.

1672. Narrated Usâma bin Zaid: Allah's Messenger proceeded from 'Arafât and dismounted at the mountain path and then unraveled and performed a light ablution. I said to him, “(Shall we offer) the Aş-Salât (the prayer)?” He replied, “The Salât is ahead of you (i.e., at Al-Muzdalifa).” When he came to Al-Muzdalifa, he performed a perfect ablution. Then Iqâma for the Salât (prayer) was pronounced and he offered the Magârib prayer, and then every person made his camel kneel at his place; and then Iqâma for the Salât (prayer) was pronounced and he offered the (Ișâh) prayer and he did not offer any Salât (prayer) in between them (i.e., Magârib and Ișâh prayer).

(96) CHAPTER. Whoever combined (offered together) the two prayer (Magârib and Ișâh) prayer) at one time and did not offer any optional prayers.

1673. Narrated Ibn 'Umar: The Prophet offered the Magârib and Ișâh prayer together at Jam‘ (i.e., Al-Muzdalifa) with a separate Iqâma for each of them and did not offer any optional prayer in between them or after each of them.

1674. Narrated Abû Ayyûb Al-Anșârî: Allah's Messenger offered the
Maghrib and ‘Isha’ prayers together at Al-Muzdalifa.

(97) CHAPTER. Whoever pronounced (one) Adhān (for both) and Iqāma for each of them (the Maghrib and the ‘Ishā’ prayer).

1675 Narrated ‘Abdur-Rahmān bin Yazid: ‘Abdullāh performed the Hajj and we reached Al-Muzdalifa at or about the time of the ‘Ishā’ prayer. He ordered a man to pronounce the Adhān and Iqāma and then he offered the Maghrib prayer and offered two Rakʿā prayer after it. Then he asked for his supper and took it, and then, I think, he ordered a man to pronounce the Adhān and Iqāma (for the ‘Ishā’ prayer). (‘Amr, a subnarrator said: The intervening statement ‘I think’, was said by the subnarrator Zuhair) (i.e., not by ‘Abdur-Rahmān). Then ‘Abdullāh offered two Rakʿā of ‘Ishā’ prayer. When the day dawned, ‘Abdullāh said, “The Prophet never offered any Salāt (prayer) at this hour except this Salāt at this time and at this place and on this day.” ‘Abdullāh added, “These two Salāt are shifted from their actual times – the Maghrib prayer (is offered) when the people reached Al-Muzdalifa and the Fajr prayer at the early dawn.” ‘Abdullāh added, “I saw the Prophet doing that.”
(98) CHAPTER. Whosoever sent the weak amongst his family (women and children) early (from Al-Muzdalifa to Mina) at night after the moon had set. They stayed at Al-Muzdalifa and invoked Allâh there and proceeded from there when the moon had set.

1676.Narrated Sâlim: ‘Abdullâh bin ‘Umar Râziq Allâh 'anhu used to send the weak among his family early to Mina. So they used to depart from Al-Maš'ar Al-Harâm (that is Al-Muzdalifa) at night (when the moon had set) and invoke Allâh as much as they could, and then they would return (to Mina) before the Imâm had started from Al-Muzdalifa to Mina. So some of them would reach Mina at the time of the Fajr prayer and some of them would come later. When they reached Mina they would throw pebbles on the Jamra (Jamrat-al-'Aqaba). Ibn ‘Umar Râziq Allâh 'anhu used to say, “Allâh’s Messenger Râziq Allâh 'anhu gave the permission to them (weak people) to do so.”

1677. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbâs Râziq Allâh 'anhu: Allâh’s Messenger Râziq Allâh 'anhu had sent me from Jam’ (i.e. Al-Muzdalifa) at night.

1678. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbâs Râziq Allâh 'anhu: I was among those whom the Prophet Râziq Allâh 'anhu sent on the night of Al-Muzdalifa early, being among the weak members of his family.
1679. Narrated ‘Abdullah, the slave of Asma’: During the night of Jam’, Asma’ got down at Al-Muzdalifa and stood up for (offering) the Salât (prayer) and offered the Salât (prayer) for some time and then asked, ‘O my son! Has the moon set?’ I replied in the negative and she again offered Salât for another period and then asked, ‘Has the moon set?’ I replied, ‘Yes.’ So she said that we should set out (for Mina), and we departed and went on till she threw pebbles at the Jamra (Jamrat-al-Aqaba) and then she returned to her dwelling place and offered the morning prayer. I asked her, ‘O Hantâ! I think we have come (to Mina) early in the night.’ She replied, ‘O my son! Allah’s Messenger gave permission to the women to do so.’

1680. Narrated ‘Aishah: Sauda asked the permission of the Prophet to leave (early) at the night of Jam’, and she was a fat and very slow woman. The Prophet gave her permission.

1681. Narrated ‘Aishah: We got down at Al-Muzdalifa and Sauda asked the permission of the Prophet to leave (early) before the rush of the people. She was a slow woman and he gave her permission, so she departed (from Al-Muzdalifa) before the rush of the people. We kept on staying at Al-Muzdalifa till dawn, and set out with the Prophet but (I suffered so much that) I wished I had taken the permission of Allah’s Messenger as Sauda had done, and that would have been dearer to me than any
other happiness.

(99) CHAPTER. At what time is the Fajr prayer to be offered at Jam’?

1682. Narrated ‘Abdulläh: I never saw the Prophet offering any Salah (prayer) not at its stated time except two; he offered the Maghrib and the ‘Ishâ’ prayer together and he offered the Fajr prayer before its usual time (at Muzdalifa on the day of Nahr).

1683. Narrated ‘Abdur-Rahmân bin Yazid: I went out with ‘Abdulläh to Makkah and when we reached Jam’ (from ‘Arafât) he offered the two Salah (prayer) (the Maghrib and the ‘Ishâ’ prayer) together, making the Adhan and Iqama separately for each Salah. He took his supper in between the two Salah. He offered the Fajr prayer as soon as the day dawned.

Some people said, “The day had dawned (at the time of the Salah),” and others said, “The day had not dawned.” ‘Abdulläh then said, “Allâh’s Messenger said, ‘These two Salah (prayers) have been shifted from their stated times at this place only (at Al-Muzdalifa); first: The Maghrib and the ‘Ishâ’. The people may not arrive at Al-Muzdalifa till the time of the ‘Ishâ’ prayer has become due. The second Salah is the morning prayer which is offered at this hour.’”

Then ‘Abdulläh stayed there till it became a bit brighter. He then said, “If chief of the believers hastened onwards to Mina just
now, then he had indeed followed the Sunna (legal way of the Prophet ﷺ).” I do not know which preceded the other, his (‘Abdullāh’s) statement or the departure of ‘Uthmān b. ʿAffā, ṣ. ‘Abdullāh kept on reciting Talbiyyah till he threw pebbles at the Jamrat-al-ʿAqaba on the day of Nahr (that is the 10th of Dhul-Hijjah).

(100) CHAPTER. When to depart from Jam’(i.e., Al-Muzdalifah).

1684. Narrated ‘Amr bin Māinūn: I saw Ṣūlān bin Ḥujjājar offering the morning prayer at Jam’; then he got up and said, “The Mushrikūn did not use to depart (from Jam’) till the sun had risen, and they used to say, ‘Let the sun shine on Thābir (a mountain).’ But the Prophet ﷺ did contrary to them and departed from Jam’ before sunrise.”

(101) CHAPTER. The recitation of Talbiyyah and Takbir in the morning of the day of Nahr till the Ramy of Jamrat-al-ʿAqaba and riding behind somebody else on a riding animal.

1685. Narrated Ibn ʿAbbās: The Prophet ﷺ made Al-Fāḍl ride behind him, and Al-Fāḍl informed that he (the Prophet ﷺ) kept on reciting Talbiyyah till he did the Ramy of the Jamra (Jamrat-al-ʿAqaba).
1686, 1687. Narrated ʿUbaidullāh bin ʿAbdullāh: Ibn ʿAbbās ʿرضي الله عنْهُمَا said, "Usāma bin Zaid Ῥضي الله عنْهُمَا rode behind the Prophet سَمْعَهُمَا from ‘Arafat to Al-Muzdalifa; and then from Al-Muzdalifa to Mina, Al-Faḍl Ῥضي الله عنْهُمَا rode behind him." He added, "Both of them (Usāma and Al-Faḍl) said, 'The Prophet سَمْعَهُمَا was constantly reciting Talbiya till he did Ṭamūṣ of the Jamarat-al-ʿAqaba.'

1688. Narrated Abū Jamra: I asked Ibn ʿAbbās ʿرضي الله عنْهُمَا about Hajj-at-Tamattu'. He ordered me to perform it. I asked him about the Hady (sacrifice). He said, "You have to slaughter a camel, a cow or a sheep, or you may share the Hady with the others." It seemed that some people disliked it (Hajj-at-Tamattu'). I slept and dreamt as if a person was announcing: "Hajj Mabrūr and accepted Mutʿah (Hajj-at-Tamattu')" I went to Ibn ʿAbbās ʿرضي الله عنْهُمَا and narrated it to him. He said, "Allahu Akbar (Allāh is the Most Great)." (That was) the As-Ṣumma (legal way) of Abul-Qāsim (i.e., Prophet سَمْعَهُمَا).

Narrated Shuʿba that the call in the dream was, "An accepted ‘Umra and Hajj-Mabrūr."
(103) CHAPTER. The riding over the Budn (camels, cows, oxen for sacrifice). Allah's Statement refers to this:

"And the Budn (cows, oxen, or camels driven for to be offered as sacrifices by the pilgrims at the sanctuary of Makkah), We have made for you as among the Symbols of Allah, wherein you have much good. So mention the Name of Allah over them when they are drawn up in lines (for sacrifice). Then, when they are down on their sides (after slaughter) ... up to... And give glad tidings (O Muhammad ﷺ) to Muhsinun (doers of good)." (V.22:36-37)

1689. Narrated Abu Hurairah: Allah's Messenger ﷺ saw a man driving his Badana (sacrificial camel). He said, "Ride on it." The man said, "It is a Badana." The Prophet ﷺ said, "Ride on it." He (the man) said, "It is a Badana." The Prophet ﷺ said, "Ride on it." And on the second or the third time he (the Prophet ﷺ) added, "Woe to you."

1690. Narrated Anas: The Prophet ﷺ saw a man driving a Badana. He said, "Ride on it." The man replied, "It is a
Badana." The Prophet said (again), "Ride on it." He (the man) said, "It is a Badana." The Prophet said thrice, "Ride on it."

(104) CHAPTER. Whoever drove the Budn (sacrificial camels or cows) along with him.

1691. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar: During the last Hajj (Hajjat-ul-Wadā’) of Allāh’s Messenger he performed ‘Umra and Hajj together and offered Hady (sacrificial animal) which he drove along with him from Dāl-Hulaifa. Allāh’s Messenger started by assuming Ihram for ‘Umra and then for Hajj. And the people, too, performed the ‘Umra and Hajj together along with the Prophet. Some of them brought the Hady and drove it along with them, while the others did not. So, when the Prophet arrived at Makkah, he said to the people, ‘Whoever among you has driven the Hady, should not finish his Ihram till he completes his Hajj. And whoever among you has not (driven) the Hady with him, should perform Tawāf of the Ka‘bah and the [Sā’ (going) between] Ās-Ṣafā and Al-Mārwa, then cut short his head-hair and finish his Ihram, and should later assume Ihram for Hajj; but he must offer a Hady (sacrifice); and if anyone cannot afford a Hady, he should fast for three days during the Hajj and seven days when he returns home (i.e., Hajj-at-Tamattu’). The Prophet performed Tawāf of the Ka‘bah on his arrival (at Makkah); he touched the (Black Stone) Corner first of all and then did Ramal (fast walking with moving of the shoulders) during
the first three rounds, round the Ka’bah, and during the last four rounds he walked (normally). After finishing Tawaf of the Ka’bah, he offered a two Rak’a prayer at Maqám Ibrāhīm, and after finishing the Salāt (prayer) he went to Ās-Safā and Al-Marwa and performed seven goings of Tawaf — Sā’y between them and did not do any deed forbidden because of Ḥāram, till he finished all the ceremonies of his Hajj and sacrificed his Ḥady on the Day of Nahr (10th day of Dhul-Ḥijjah). He then hastened onwards (to Makkah) and performed Tawaf-al-Ifāda of the Ka’bah and then everything that was forbidden because of Ḥāram became permissible. Those who took and drove the Ḥady with them did the same as Allah’s Messenger ﷺ did (Hajj-al-Qīrān).

1692. Narrated Urwa: “‘Āishah informed me about the Hajj and ‘Umra (together) of the Prophet ﷺ and so did the people who were with him (during that Hajj and ‘Umra) a narration similar to the narration of Ibn Umar (Hadith No. 1691).

(105) CHAPTER. Buying the Ḥady on the way.

1693. Narrated Nāfi’: ‘Abdullāh (bin ‘Abdullāh) bin ‘Umar said to his father, “Stay here, for I am afraid that it (affliction between Ibn Zubair and Al-Hajjāj) might prevent you from reaching the Ka’bah.” Ibn ‘Umar said, “(In this case) I would do the same as Allah’s Messenger ﷺ did, and Allah has said, ‘Indeed, in the Messenger of Allah, you have a good example (to follow).’” So, I make you people witness that I have made ‘Umra compulsory for me.” So he assumed Ḥāram
for ‘Umra. Then he went out and when he reached Al-Baidā’, he assumed Ihram for Hajj and ‘Umra (together) and said, “The conditions (requisites) of Hajj and ‘Umra are the same.” He, then bought a Hady from Qudaid. Then he arrived (at Makkah) and performed Tawaf – [Stry (going)] between Aṣ-Ṣafā and Al-Marwa once for both Hajj and ‘Umra and did not finish the Ihram till he had finished both Hajj and ‘Umra (Hajj-al-Qirān).

(106) CHAPTER. Marking and garlanding (the Hady) at Dhul-Ḥulaifa and then assuming Ihram.

Nafi’ said, ‘Ibn ‘Umar Ṭabṣiri b. Ḥanafī took the Hady (from Al-Madīnah) at the time of Hudaibiya, he garlanded it and marked it at Dhul-Ḥulaifa, and stab the right side of its hump with a blade, and then he made it kneel with its face towards the Qiblah (Kābah at Makkah).

1694, 1695. Narrated Al-Miswar bin Makhrama and Marwan Ṭabṣirī: The Prophet Ṭabṣirī set out from Al-Madīnah with over one thousand of his Companions (at the time of the Treaty of Hudaibiya) and when they reached Dhul-Ḥulaifa, the Prophet Ṭabṣirī garlanded his Hady and marked it and assumed Ihram for ‘Umra.

1696. Narrated ‘Āishah Ṭabṣirī: I twisted with my own hands the garlands for
the *Budn* (camels for sacrifice) of the Prophet who garlanded and marked them, and then made them proceed to Makkah; yet no permissible thing was regarded as illegal for him then.

(107) CHAPTER. To twist (and make) the garlands for the *Budn* (Hady camels for sacrifice) and cows.

1697. Narrated Ḥafṣa: I said, “O Allah’s Messenger! What is wrong with the people, they have finished their *Ihram* but you have not?” He said, “I matted my hair and I have garlanded my Hady, so I will not finish my *Ihram* till I have finished my *Hajj.”

1698. Narrated `Āisha: Allah’s Messenger used to send the Hady from Al-Madina; and I used to twist the garlands for his Hady and he did not keep away from any of those things which a *Muhrim* keeps away from.

(108) CHAPTER. The marking of the *Budn* (camels for sacrifice).

Al-Miswar said, “The Prophet garlanded *Al-Hady* (animals meant for
sacrifice) and marked them and assumed Ihrām for 'Umra.”

1699. Narrated ‘Āishah Li. 30 I twisted the garlands for the Hady (animals meant for sacrifice) of the Prophet and then he marked and garlanded them (or I garlanded them) and then made them proceed to the Ka'bah (at Makkah) but he remained in Al-Madīna and no permissible thing was regarded as illegal for him then.

(109) CHAPTER. Whoever puts the garlands round the necks of the Hady (animals meant for sacrifice) with one's own hands.

1700. Narrated ‘Abdullāh bin Abū Bakr bin ‘Amr bin Ḥazm that ‘Amra bint ‘Abdur-Rahmān had told him, “Ziād bin Abū Sufyān wrote to ‘Āishah that ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Abbās had stated, ‘Whoever sends his Hady (to the Ka'bah), all the things which are illegal for a (pilgrim) become illegal for that person till he slaughters it (i.e., till the 10th of Dhul-Hijjah).’” ‘Amra added, “‘Āishah said, ‘It is not like what Ibn ‘Abbās had said. I twisted the garlands of the Hady of Allāh’s Messenger with my own hands, then Allāh’s Messenger put them round their neck with his own hands, then send them (to Makkah) with my father. Yet nothing permitted by Allāh was considered illegal for Allāh’s Messenger till the Hady were slaughtered.’”
1701. Narrated ‘Aishah: Once the Prophet sent sheep as Hady.

1702. Narrated ‘Aishah: I used to make the garlands for (the Hady of) the Prophet and he would garland the sheep (with them) and would stay with his family as a non-Muhrim.

1703. Narrated ‘Aishah: I used to twist the garlands for the sheep of the Prophet and he would send them (to the Ka‘bah), and stay as a non-Muhrim.

1704. Narrated ‘Aishah: I twisted (the garlands) for the Hady of the Prophet before he assumed Ihram.

(111) CHAPTER. The garlands made from coloured wool.

1705. Narrated the Mother of the
believers (‘Āishah bint Muzaffar): I twisted the garlands of the Hady from the coloured wool which was with me.

(112) CHAPTER. Garlanding (the Hady) with a shoe.

1706. Narrated ‘Ikrima: Abū Hurairah said, “The Prophet saw a man driving a Badana (sacrificial camel). The Prophet said (to him), ‘Ride on it.’ He replied, ‘It is a Badana.’ The Prophet again said, ‘Ride on it!’ Abū Hurairah added, ‘Then I saw that man riding it, showing obedience to the Prophet, and a shoe was (hanging) from its neck.’

Narrated Abū Hurairah on the authority of the Prophet: (as above).

(113) CHAPTER. The covering (sheet) of the Budn (camels for sacrifice).

Ibn ‘Umar used to tear off only the part of the sheet covering the camels hump. At the time of slaughtering the sacrifice he would remove the sheet, lest it should get spoiled with blood, and later on he would give it (the sheet) in charity.

1707. Narrated ‘Alī: Allāh’s Messenger ordered me to give in charity the skin and the coverings of the Budn which I had slaughtered.
(114) CHAPTER. The purchase of the Hady on the way and garlanding it.

1708. Narrated Nāfi’: Ibn ‘Umar Ṭūṣiyyān, during the rule of Ibn Az-Zubair. Some people said to him, “It is very likely that there will be a fight among the people, and we are afraid that they might prevent you (from performing Hajj).” He replied, “Verily, in Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ there is a good example for you (to follow). In this case I would do the same as he had done. I make you witness that I have intended to perform ‘Umra.”

When he reached Al-Baidā’, he said, “The conditions for both Hajj and Umra are the same. I make you witness that I have intended to perform Hajj along with Umra.” After that he took a garlanded Hady (to Makkah) which he bought (on the way). When he reached (Makkah), he performed Tawaf of the Ka’bah and (Sa’y) of Aṣ-Ṣafā (and Al-Marwā) and did not do more than that. He did not make legal for himself the things which were illegal for a Muhrim till it was the Day of Nahr (sacrifice), when he had his head shaved and slaughtered (the sacrifice) and considered sufficient his first Tawaf – [Sa’y (going) (between Aṣ-Ṣafā and Al-Marwā)], as a (Sa’y) for his Hajj and Umra both. He then said, “The Prophet ﷺ used to do like that.”
(115) CHAPTER. To slaughter cows (as sacrifices) on behalf of one's wives without being ordered by them.

1709. Narrated 'Amra bint 'Abdur-Rahmān: I heard 'Āishah saying, “Five days before the end of Dhul-Qa'da we set out from Al-Madina in the company of Allāh’s Messenger with the intention of performing Hajj only. When we approached Makkah, Allāh’s Messenger ordered those who had no Hady with them to finish their Ihrām after performing Tawāf of the Ka‘bah and [Sāy (going) between Aš-Ṣafā and Al-Marwā].”

‘Āishah added, “On the Day of Nahr beef was brought to us. I asked, “What is this?” It was said, “Allāh’s Messenger has slaughtered (cows as sacrifices) on behalf of his wives.”

(116) CHAPTER. To slaughter (sacrifices) at the Manhār (slaughtering place) of the Prophet at Mina.

1710. Narrated Nāfi‘: ‘Abdullāh (bin 'Umar) used to slaughter (his sacrifice) at the Manhār. ('Ubaidullah, a sub-narrator said, “The Manhār of Allāh’s Messenger.”)

1711. Narrated Nāfi‘: Ibn 'Umar used to send his Hady from Jam' (to Mina) in the last third of the night with the pilgrims amongst whom there were free men and slaves, till it was made to enter into the
Manhar (slaughtering place) of the Prophet ﷺ.

(117) CHAPTER. Nahr (slaughtering one’s Hady) with one’s own hands.

1712. Narrated Sahl bin Bakkār the narration of Anas (abridged), saying, “The Prophet ﷺ performed Nahr (slaughtered) with his own hands seven Budn (camels) while standing. While at Madina on the day of ‘Eia-al-Adha he (the Prophet ﷺ) slaughtered (sacrificed) two horned rams, black and white in colour.

(118) CHAPTER. Slaughtering the camels after tying their one leg.

1713. Narrated Ziyād bin Jubair: I saw Ibn ‘Umar passing by a man who had made his Badana sit to slaughter it. Ibn ‘Umar said, “Slaughter it while it is standing with one of its legs tied up as is the Sunna (legal way) of Muḥammad ﷺ.”

(119) CHAPTER. To slaughter the Budn (camels for sacrifice) while they are standing.

Ibn ‘Umar said, “(That was) the Sunna (legal way) of Muḥammad ﷺ.” Ibn ‘Abbās said, “Sawāf means...”

(1) (Ch. 117) See H. 982 and its chap. 22 along with its footnote.
the camels standing in rows or in lines (for sacrifice)."

1714. Narrated Anas: The Prophet offered four Rak'ā of Zuhr prayers at Al-Madīna; and two Rak'ā of 'Asr prayer at Dhul-Hulāifa and spent the night there and when (the day) dawned, he mounted his Rāhila (mount) and started saying ‘Lā ilāha illallah (none has the right to be worshipped but Allah)’ and ‘Gloryed be Allah’.” When he reached Al-Baidā', he recited Talbiya for both Hajj and 'Umra. And when he arrived at Makkah, he ordered them (his Companions) to finish their Ḥijrah. The Prophet slaughtered seven Būdān (camels) with his own hands while the camels were standing. Once the Prophet sacrificed two horned rams (black and white in colour) at Al-Madīna, on the Day of 'Eid-al-Adha.

1715. Narrated Anas bin Mālik: The Prophet offered four Rak'ā of Zuhr prayers at Al-Madīna and two Rak'ā of 'Asr prayer at Dhul-Hulāifa.

Narratted Ayyūb: “A man said: Anas said, ‘Then he (the Prophet) passed the night there till dawn and then he offered the Fajr prayer; and mounted his Rāhila (mount) and when it arrived at Al-Baidā' he assumed Ḥijrah for both 'Umra and Hajj.’

(120) CHAPTER. The butcher should not be given anything of the Hady.

1716(A). Narrated 'Ali: The Prophet sent me to supervise the
(slaughtering of) Budn (Hady) and ordered me to distribute their meat; and then he ordered me to distribute their covering sheets and skins.

1716(B). 'Alī added, "The Prophet ordered me to supervise the slaughtering (of the Budn) and not to give anything of it to the butcher (as wages for slaughtering)."

(121) CHAPTER. The skins of Al-Hady are to be given in charity.

1717. Narrated 'Ali: The Prophet ordered me to supervise the (slaughtering) of Budn (Hady camel) and to distribute their meat, skins and covering sheets in charity and not to give anything (of it) to the butcher as wages for slaughtering etc.

(122) CHAPTER. The covering sheets of Budn are to be given in charity.

1718. Narrated 'Ali: The
Prophet \textit{\&\&} offered one hundred \textit{Budn} as \textit{Hady} and ordered me to distribute their meat (in charity) and I did so. Then he ordered me to distribute their covering sheets in charity and I did so. Then he ordered me to distribute their skins in charity and I did so.

(123) CHAPTER. “And (remember) when We showed Ibrâhim (Abraham) the site of the (Sacred) House, (Ka'bah at Makkah), (saying): ‘Associate not anything (in worship) with Me [\textit{La ilaha illalIñh} (none has the right to be worshipped but Allah) – \textit{Islamic Monotheism}] and sanctify My House for those who circumambulate it, and those who stand up for prayer and those who bow (submit themselves with humility and obedience to Allah), and make prostration (in prayer).’

“And proclaim to mankind the Hajj (pilgrimage). They will come to you on foot... up to... then that is better for him with his Lord.” (V.22:26-30)

(124) CHAPTER. What is to be eaten of \textit{Budn} (by the one who offers them) and what is to be distributed in charity.

Ibn ‘Umar \textit{\&\&} said: “The animals slaughtered as a penalty for hunting (illegally) and the animal offered because of a vow should not be eaten by the person who has offered them, but he can eat from other kinds of offerings (as \textit{Hady}). And ‘Aţâ’ said, “It is permissible to eat and let others eat the meat of the (\textit{Hady}) animals sacrificed for \textit{Hajj-at-Tammattu’}.”

1719.Narrated Ibn Juraij: ‘Aţâ’ said, “I heard Jâbir bin ‘Abdullâh \textit{\&\&} saying, ‘We never ate the meat of the \textit{Budn} of Mina...
for more than three days. Later, the Prophet \( \text{ṣ} \) gave us permission by saying: ‘Eat and take (meat) with you. So, we ate (some) and took (some) with us.’” I asked ‘Atâ’, “Did Jâbir say (that they went on eating the meat) till they reached Al-Madina?” ‘Atâ’ replied, “No.”

1720.Narrated ‘Amra: I heard ‘Aishah saying, “We set out (from Al-Madina) along with Allâh’s Messenger \( \text{ṣ} \) five days before the end of Dhu‘l-Qa‘da with the intention of performing Hajj only. When we approached Makkah, Allâh’s Messenger \( \text{ṣ} \) ordered those who had no Hady along with them to finish the Ihram after performing Tawaf of the Ka‘bah, [and Sa‘y (going) between As-Safâ and Al-Marwa]. ‘Aishah added, “Beef was brought to us on the Day of Nahr and I said, ‘What is this?’ Somebody said, ‘The Prophet \( \text{ṣ} \) has slaughtered (cows) on behalf of his wives.’”

(125) CHAPTER. Slaughtering before having one’s head shaved.

1721. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbâs: The Prophet \( \text{ṣ} \) was asked about a person who had his head shaved before slaughtering (his Hady) (or other similar ceremonies of Hajj). He replied, “There is no harm,
there is no harm.

1722. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbās: A man said to the Prophet, “I performed the Tawāf-al-Ifāda before the Ramy (throwing pebbles at the Jamra).” The Prophet replied, “There is no harm.” The man said, “I had my head shaved before slaughtering (the Hady).” The Prophet replied, “There is no harm.”

1723. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbās: A man asked the Prophet (saying), “I have done the Ramy in the evening.” The Prophet replied, “There is no harm in it.”

Another man asked, “I had my head shaved before slaughtering (the Hady).” The
1724. Narrated Abū Mūsā: I came to Allāh’s Messenger when he was at Al-Bathā’. He asked me, “Have you intended to perform the Ḥajj?” I replied in the affirmative. He asked, “With what intention have you assumed Ihrām?” I replied, “I have assumed Ihrām with the same intention as that of the Prophet.” The Prophet said, “You have done well! Go and perform Tawaf round the Ka’bah and [Sa’ (going)] A-Safā and Al-Marwā.” Then I went to one of the women of Bani Qais and she took out lice from my head. Later, I assumed another Ihrām for Ḥajj. So, I used to give this verdict to the people till the caliphate of ‘Umar. When I told him about it, he said, “If we take (follow) Allāh’s Book, then it orders you to remain in the state of Ihrām till you finish from Ḥajj(1), and if we follow the Sunna of Allāh’s Messenger then he did not finish his Ihrām till the Hadī had reached its destination (had been slaughtered). (i.e., Ḥajj-al-Qirān). (See Hadīth No.1559)

(126) CHAPTER. Whoever matted his head-hair on assuming Ihrām and had his head-hair shaved on finishing the Ihrām.

1725. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar: Ḥafṣa said, “O Allāh’s Messenger! What is wrong with the people; they finished their Ihrām after performing ‘Umra, but you...

---

(1) (H.1724) i.e. to not finish the Ihrām, either perform Ḥajj-al-Qirān (if you have a Ḥadī), or perform Ḥajj alone without the ‘Umra and that is the opinion of ‘Umar.
have not finished it after your 'Umra?” He replied, “I have matted my head-hair and have garlanded my Hady. So, I cannot finish my Ihrãm till I slaughter (my Had).”

(127) CHAPTER. To shave the head and (or) to have the head-hair cut short on finishing the Ihrãm.

1726.Narrated Ibn ‘Umar: Allãh’s Messenger (got) his head shaved after performing his Hajj.

1727.Narrated ‘Abdullãh bin ‘Umar: Allãh’s Messenger said, “O Allãh! Be Merciful to those who have got their heads shaved.” The people said, “O Allãh’s Messenger! And (invoke Allãh for) those who have got their head-hair cut short.” The Prophet said, “O Allãh! Be Merciful to those who have got their heads shaved.” The people said, “O Allãh’s Messenger! And those who have got their head-hair cut short.” The Prophet said (the third time), “And to those who have got their head-hair cut short.” Nãfi’ said that the Prophet had said once or twice, “O Allãh! Be Merciful to those who have got their head shaved,” and on the fourth time he added, “And to those who have got their head-hair cut short.”

Forgive those who have their heads shaved.” The people requested the Prophet (saying): “Also (invoke Allah for) those who have got their head-hair cut short?” The Prophet (invoked) Allah for those who have got their heads shaved and at the third time said, “— also (forgive) those who have got their head-hair cut short.”

1729. Narrated ‘Abdullãh رضي الله عنه: The Prophet و some of his Companions got their heads shaved and some others got their head-hair cut short.

1730. Narrated Mu‘awiya: I cut short the head-hair of Allah’s Messenger with a long blade of an arrow-head.

(128) CHAPTER. To get the head-hair cut short after performing ‘Umra of Hajj at-Tamattu’.  

1731. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbãs رضي الله عنهما: When the Prophet came to Makkah, he ordered his Companions to perform Tawâf round the Ka‘bah and [Sa’y (going)] between Aş-Safã and Al-Marwa, to finish their Ihãm and get their head-hair shaved or cut short.
25 - THE BOOK OF HAJJ

(129) CHAPTER. The visit [(of the Ka'bah) to perform *Tawaf-al-Ijada*] on the Day of *Nahr*.

Narrated Ibn Aż-Zubair from 'Āishah and Ibn 'Abbās: The Prophet [ص] delayed the visit till night. Ibn 'Abbās narrated that the Prophet [ص] used to visit the House (Ka'bah) during the days of Mina.

1732. Narrated Näfi' that Ibn 'Umar [ص] performed only one Tawaf. He would take an afternoon nap and then return to Mina. That was on the day of *Nahr* (slaughtering).

1733. Narrated 'Āishah [ص]: We performed *Hajj* with the Prophet [ص] and performed *Tawaf-al-Ijada* on the Day of *Nahr* (slaughtering). Safiyya got her menses and the Prophet [ص] desired from her what a husband desires from his wife. I said to him, "O Allâh's Messenger! She is having her menses." He said, "Is she going to detain us?" We informed him that she had performed *Tawaf-al-Ijada* on the Day of *Nahr*. He said, "(Then) depart."
(130) CHAPTER. If one did the Ramy of the Jamra after Maghrib (evening) or has his head shaved before slaughtering the Hady because of forgetfulness or ignorance.

1734. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbás: The Prophet was asked about the slaughtering, shaving (of the head), and the doing of Ramy before or after their due times. He said, “There is no harm in that.”

1735. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbás: The Prophet was asked (as regards the ceremonies of Hajj) at Minā on the Day of Nahr and he replied that there was no harm. Then a man said to him, “I got my head shaved before slaughtering.” He replied, “Slaughter (now) and there is no harm in it.” (Another) man said, “I did the Ramy (of the Jimār) after midday.” The Prophet replied, “There is no harm in it.”

(131) CHAPTER. To give religious verdicts near the Jamra while riding an animal.

1736. Narrated ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Amr: Allah’s Messenger stopped (for a while near the Jimār at Minā) during his last Hajj and the people started asking him questions. A man said, “Ignorantly I got my head shaved before slaughtering.” The Prophet replied, “Slaughter (now) and there is no harm in it.” Another man said, “Unknowingly I slaughtered the Hady before doing the Ramy.” The Prophet said, “Do Ramy now and there is no harm in it.” So, on
that day, when the Prophet ﷺ was asked about anything (about the ceremonies of Hajj) done before or after (its stated time) his reply was, “Do it (now) and there is no harm.”

1737. Narrated ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Amr bin Al-‘Āṣī: I witnessed the Prophet ﷺ when he was delivering the Khutba (religious talk) on the day of Nahr. A man stood up and said, “I thought that such and such was to be done before such and such. I got my hair shaved before slaughtering.” (Another said), “I slaughtered the Hady before doing the Ramy.” So, the people asked about many similar things. The Prophet ﷺ said, “Do it (now) and there is no harm in all these cases.” Whenever the Prophet ﷺ was asked about anything on that day, he replied, “Do it (now) and there is no harm in it.”

1738. Narrated ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Amr bin Al-‘Āṣī: Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ stopped (near the Jimār at Mina) while on his she-camel (the subnarrator then narrated the Hadith as above, i.e. Hadith No.1737).

(132) CHAPTER. Al-Khutba (religious talk) during the Days of Minā.
1739. Narrated ‘Ikrima: Ibn ‘Abbās said: “Allāh’s Messenger delivered a Khutba (religious talk) on the day of Nahr, and said, ‘O people! (Tell me) what is the day today?’ The people replied, ‘It is the forbidden (sacred) day.’ He asked again, ‘What town is this?’ They replied, ‘It is the forbidden (sacred) town (Makkah).’ He asked, ‘Which month is this?’ They replied, ‘It is the forbidden (sacred) month.’ He said, ‘No doubt! Your blood, your properties, and your honour are sacred to one another like the sanctity of this day of yours, in this town (Makkah) of yours, in this month of yours.’ The Prophet repeated his statement again and again. After that he raised his head and said, ‘O Allāh! Haven’t I conveyed (Your Message) to them? Haven’t I conveyed Your Message to them?’ Ibn ‘Abbās added, “By Him in Whose Hand my soul is, the following was his will (Prophet’s will) to his followers: ‘It is incumbent upon those who are present to convey this information to those who are absent. Beware don’t renegade (as) disbelievers (turn into infidels) after me, by striking the necks (cutting the throats) of one another (i.e., by killing one another).’”


1741. Narrated Abū Bakra: The Prophet delivered to us a Khutba.
(religious talk) on the day of Nahr. He said, "Do you know what is the day today?" We said, "Allah and His Messenger know better." He remained silent till we thought that he might give that day another name. He said, "Isn’t it the day of Nahr?" We said, "Yes! It is." He further asked, "Which month is this?" We said, "Allah and His Messenger know better." He remained silent till we thought that he might give it another name. He then said, "Isn’t it the month of Dhul-Hijjah?" We replied: "Yes! It is." He further asked, "What town is this?" We replied, "Allah and His Messenger know it better." He remained silent till we thought that he might give it another name. He then said, "Isn’t it the forbidden (sacred) town (of Makkah)?" We said, "Yes! It is." He said, "No doubt, your blood and your properties are sacred to one another like the sanctity of this day of yours, in this month of yours, in this town of yours, till the day you meet your Lord (Allah). No doubt! Have I conveyed Allah’s Message to you? They said, "Yes (you have)." He said, "O Allah! Be witness. So it is incumbent upon those who are present to convey it (this information) to those who are absent because the informed one might comprehend it (what I have said) better than the present audience who will convey it to him. Beware! Do not renegade (as) disbelievers after me by striking the necks (cutting the throats) of one another (i.e., by killing one another).”

1742. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar: At Mina, the Prophet ﷺ said, “Do you know what is the day today?” The people replied,
“Allāh and His Messenger know it better.” He said, “It is the forbidden (sacred) day. And do you know what town is this?” They replied, “Allāh and His Messenger know it better.” He said, “This is the forbidden (sacred) town (Makkah). And do you know which month is this?” The people replied, “Allāh and His Messenger know it better.” He said, “This is the forbidden (sacred) month.” The Prophet ﷺ added, “No doubt, Allāh made your blood, your properties, and your honour sacred to one another like the sanctity of this day of yours in this month of yours in this town of yours.”

Narrated Ibn ‘Umar رضي الله عنهما: On the day of Nahr (10th of Dhul-Hijjah), the Prophet ﷺ stood in between the Jamrāt during his Hajj which he performed (as in the previous Hadith) and said, “This is the greatest day (i.e., 10th of Dhul-Uijjah).” The Prophet ﷺ started saying repeatedly, “O Allāh! Be Witness (I have conveyed Your Message).” He then bade the people farewell. The people said, “This is Hajjat-ul-Wada’.”

(133) CHAPTER. May those who provide the pilgrims with water stay at Makkah during the nights of Mina?

1744. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar that the Prophet allowed (as above).

1745. Narrated Ibn ‘Umar: Al-‘Abbás asked permission from the Prophet to stay at Makkah during the nights of Mina in order to provide water to the people, so the Prophet allowed him.

(134) CHAPTER. To do the Ramy of the Jimār.

Jābir said, “The Prophet did the Ramy on the day of Nahr (10th of Dhul-Hijjah) before noon (this is only for Jamrat-al-Aqaba), and then (on the 11th and the 12th of Dhul-Ijihjah) he did the Ramy after the decline of the sun (after Zuhr).

1746. Narrated Wabra: I asked Ibn ‘Umar, “When should I do the Ramy of the Jimār?” He replied, “When your leader does that.” I asked him again the same question. He replied, “We used to wait till the sun declined and then we would do the Ramy (i.e., on the 11th and 12th of Dhul-Hijjah).”

(135) CHAPTER. To do the Ramy of Jimār from the middle of the valley.
1747. Narrated 'Abdur-Rahmân bin Yazid: 'Abdullâh (bin Mas'ûd) did the Ramy from the middle of the valley. So, I said, “O, Abû 'Abdur-Raḥmân! Some people do the Ramy (of the Jamra) from above it (i.e., from the top of the valley).” He said, “By Him except Whom none has the right to be worshipped, this is the place from where the one - on whom Sûrat Al-Baqarah was revealed (i.e. Allah’s Messenger ﷺ) - did the Ramy.”

(136) CHAPTER. The Ramy of the Jimâr with seven small stones.

And this has been narrated by Ibn 'Umar رضي الله عنهما from the Prophet ﷺ.

1748. Narrated 'Abdur-Raḥmân bin Yazid: When 'Abdullâh (bin Mas'ûd) reached the big Jamra (i.e. Jamrat-ul-'Aqaba) he kept the Ka'bah on the left side and Mina on his right side and threw seven pebbles (at the Jamra) and said, “The one on whom Sûrat Al-Baqarah was revealed (i.e., the Prophet ﷺ) had done the Ramy similarly.”

(137) CHAPTER. Keeping the House (Ka'bah) on the left on doing Ramy of the Jamrat-ul-'Aqaba.

1749. Narrated 'Abdur-Raḥmân bin Yazid: I performed Hajj with Ibn Mas'ûd رضي الله عنه and saw him doing Ramy of the big
Jamra (Jamrat-ul-‘Aqaba) with seven small pebbles, keeping the Ka’bah on his left side and Mina on his right. He then said, “This is the place where the one on whom Surat Al-Baqarah was revealed (i.e. Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ) stood.”

(138) CHAPTER. To say ‘Allâhu Akbar (Allâh is the Most Great)’ on throwing every pebble.

This was stated by Ibn ‘Umar that the Prophet ﷺ said so.”

1750. Narrated Al-A’mash: I heard Al-Hajjâj saying on the pulpit, “The Surah in which Al-Baqarah (the cow) is mentioned and the Surah in which the family of ‘Imrân is mentioned and the Surah in which the women (An-Nisâ) is mentioned.” I mentioned this to Ibrahim, and he said, “‘Abdur-Rahmân bin Yazid told me, ‘I was with (Abdullah) Ibn Mas’ûd when he did the Ramy of the Jamrat-ul-‘Aqaba. He went down the middle of the valley, and when he came near the tree (which was near the Jamra) he stood opposite to it and threw seven small pebbles and said: Allâhu Akbar on throwing every pebble.’ Then he said, ‘By Him, except Whom none has the right to be worshipped, here (at this place) stood the one on whom Surat Al-Baqarah was revealed (i.e., Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ).’”

(139) CHAPTER. Not standing (for invocation) after doing Ramy of the Jamrat-ul-‘Aqaba.
Ibn ‘Umar narrated this on the authority of the Prophet.

(140) CHAPTER. After doing Ramy of the (other) two Jamrat (Dunya and Wustā) one should go and stand on level ground, (and invoke Allah), facing the Qiblah (Ka’bah at Makkah).

1751. Narrated Sālim: Ibn ‘Umar used to do Ramy of the Jamrat-ud-Dunya (the Jamra near to the Khaif mosque) with seven small stones and used to recite Takbir on throwing every pebble. He then would go ahead till he reached the level ground where he would stand facing the Qiblah for a long time and invoke (Allāh) while raising his hands. Then he would do Ramy of the Jamrat-ul-Wusta (middle Jamra) and then he would go to the left towards the middle ground, where he would stand facing the Qiblah. He would remain standing there for a long period and invoke (Allāh) while raising his hands. Then he would do Ramy of the Jamrat-ul-‘Aqaba from the middle of the valley, but he would not stay by it, and then he would leave and say, “I saw the Prophet doing like this.”

(141) CHAPTER. To raise the hands (for invocation) near Al-Jamrat-ud-Dunya and Al-Jamrat-ul-Wustā.

1752. Narrated Sālim bin ‘Abdullāh: ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Umar used to do Ramy of the Jamrat-ud-Dunya with seven small pebbles and used to recite Takbir on throwing each stone. He, then, would proceed further till he reached the level ground, where he would stay for a long time, facing the Qiblah to invoke (Allāh) while
raising his hands. Then he would do *Ramy* of the Jamrat-ul-Wusţā similarly and would go to the left towards the level ground, where he would stand for a long time facing the Qiblah to invoke (Allāh) while raising his hands. Then he would do *Ramy* of the Jamrat-al-'Aqaba from the middle of the valley, but he would not stay by it. Ibn 'Umar used to say, “I saw Allāh’s Messenger doing like that.”

(142) CHAPTER. Invoking (Allāh) near the two Jamrāt.

1753. Narrated Az-Zuhri: Whenever Allāh’s Messenger stoned the Jamra near Mina mosque, he would do *Ramy* of it with seven small pebbles and say *Takbīr* on throwing each pebble. Then he would go ahead and stand facing the Qiblah with his hands raised, and invoke (Allāh) and he used to stand for a long period. Then he would come to the second Jamra (Al-Wusţā) and stone it with seven small stones, reciting *Takbīr* on throwing each stone. Then he would descend to the left near the valley and stand facing the Qiblah with raised hands to invoke (Allāh). Then he would come to the Jamra near the ‘Aqaba (Jamrat-ul-Aqaba) and do *Ramy* of it with seven small pebbles, reciting *Takbīr* on throwing each stone. He then would leave and not stay by it.

Narrated Az-Zuhri: I heard Sālim bin ‘Abdullāh saying the same that his father said so on the authority of the Prophet. And Ibn ‘Umar used to do the same.
(143) CHAPTER. To perfume oneself after doing Ramy of the Jinār and to have one's head shaved before Tawāf-al-Ifāda.

1754. Narrated 'Abdur-Rahmān bin Al-Qāsim: I heard my father who was the best man of his age, saying, "I heard 'Āishah saying, 'I perfumed Allah's Messenger with my own hands before finishing his Iḥrām while yet he has not performed Tawāf-al-Ifāda.' She spread her hands (while saying so.)"

(144) CHAPTER. Tawāf-al-Wadā'.

1755. Narrated Ibn 'Abbas: The people were ordered to perform the Tawāf of the Ka'bah (Tawāf-al-Wadā') as the last thing before leaving (Makkah), except the menstruating women who were exempted.

1756. Narrated Anas bin Mālik: The Prophet offered the Zuhr, 'Asr, Maghrib and the 'Ishā' Salah (prayers) and slept for a while at a place called Al-Muhāṣṣab and then rode to the Ka'bah and performed Tawāf round it (Tawāf-al-Wadā').
(145) CHAPTER. If a woman gets her menses after Tawaf-al-Ifada (would it be obligatory for her to perform Tawaf-al-Wada’)?

1757. Narrated ‘Āishah, Safiyya bint Huyai, the wife of the Prophet got her menses, and Allah’s Messenger was informed of that. He said, “Would she delay us?” The people said, “She has already performed Tawaf-al-Ifada.” He said, “Then she will not (delay us).”

1758, 1759. Narrated ‘Ikrima: The people of Al-Madina asked Ibn ‘Abbas about a woman who got her menses after performing Tawaf-al-Ifada. He said, “She could depart (from Makkah).” They said, “We will not act on your verdict and ignore the verdict of Zaid.” Ibn ‘Abbâs said, “When you reach Al-Madina, inquire about it.” So, when they reached Al-Madina they asked (about that). One of those they asked was Umm Sulaim. She told them the narration of Safiyya (Hadith No.1757).

1760. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbâs: A menstruating woman was allowed to leave Makkah if she had done Tawaf-al-Ifada.
1761. Tawūs (a subnarrator) said that his father said, “I heard Ibn 'Umar saying that she should not depart. Then later I heard him saying that the Prophet had allowed them (menstruating women) to depart.”

1762. Narrated 'Aishah: We set out with the Prophet with the intention of performing Hajj only. The Prophet reached Makkah and performed Tawāf [of the Ka'bah and Sa'y (going) between As-Ṣafā and Al-Marwa] and did not finish the Ihram, because he had the Hady with him. His Companions and his wives performed Tawāf [of the Ka'bah and Sa'y (going) between As-Ṣafā and Al-Marwa], and those who had no Hady with them finished their Ihram. I got the menses and performed all the ceremonies of Hajj. So, when it was the night of Ḥaṣba (night of departure), I said, “O Allah’s Messenger! All your Companions are returning with Hajj and 'Umra except me.” He asked me, “Didn’t you perform Tawāf of the Ka'bah (Umra) when you reached Makkah?” I said, “No.” He said, “Go to Tan'im with your brother 'Abdur-Rahmān, and assume Ihram for 'Umra and I will wait for you at such and such a place.” So, I went with 'Abdur-Rahmān to Tan'im and assumed Ihram for 'Umra. Then Ṣafīyya bint Ḥuyai got menses. The Prophet said, “'Aqrā Ḥalqā!’ You will detain us! Didn’t you perform Tawāf (Al-Ifāda) on the day of Nahr (slaughtering)’” She said, “Yes, I did.” He said, “Then there is no harm, depart.” So I met the Prophet when he was ascending

(1) (H.1762) "'Aqrā Ḥalqā’": See the glossary.
the heights towards Makkah and I was descending, or vice-versa.

(146) CHAPTER. Whoever offered the ‘Asr prayer at Abtah on the day of departure from Minā (Day of Nafr).

1763. Narrated ‘Abdul-Azīz bin Rufai: I asked Anas bin Mālik, “Tell me something you have observed about the Prophet concerning where he offered the Zuhr prayer on the day of Tarwiya (8th D’ul-Hijjah).” Anas replied, “He offered it at Mina.” I said, “Where did he offer the ‘Ar prayer on the day of Nafr (day of departure from Minā)?” He replied, “At Al-Abtah,” and added, “You should do as your rulers (or leaders) do.”

1764. Narrated Anas bin Mālik: The Prophet offered the Zuhr, ‘Asr, Maghrib and ‘Ishā, Ṣalāt (prayers) and slept for a while at a place called Al-Muḥaṣṣab and then he rode towards the Ka’bah and performed Ṭawāf (al-Wadā’).
1765. Narrated 'Aishah: It is situated between Makkah and Minā and is also called Al-'Abtāḥ or Ḥaṣba or Khāīf Banā Khīāni. It was a place where the Prophet used to camp so that it might be easier for him to depart.

1766. Narrated Ibn 'Abbās: Staying at Al-Muḥassāb is not one of the ceremonies of Hajj, but Al-Muḥassāb is a place where Allāh's Messenger camped (during his Ḥajj at-Waṭā').

1767. Narrated Nāfi' Ibn 'Umar: He used to spend the night at Dhi-Tuwā in between the two Thaniya and then he would enter Makkah through the Thaniya which is at the higher region of Makkah, and whenever he came to Makkah for Hajj or 'Umra, he never made his she-camel kneel down except near the gate of the Masjid (Al-Masjid-al-Haram), and then he would enter (it) and go to the Black (Stone) Corner and start from there the circumambulation of the Ka'bah seven times: hastening in the first three rounds (Ramal) and walking in the last four.

On finishing, he would offer two Rak'ā prayer (of Tawāf) and set out to perform Tawaf - [Sā'y (going)] between Aṣ-Ṣafā and Al-Marwa before returning to his dwelling.
place. On returning (to Al-Madina) from Hajj or ‘Umra, he used to make his camel kneel down at Al-Bathä which is at Dhul-Hulaifa, the place where the Prophet used to make his camel kneel down.

1768. Narrated Khâlid bin Al-Ḥârith: ‘Ubaydullâh was asked about Al-Muhâṣṣab. ‘Ubaydullâh narrated: Nâfi’ said, “Allâh’s Messenger, ‘Umar and Ibn ‘Umar camped there.” Nâfi’ added, “Ibn ‘Umar used to offer the Zuhr and ‘Asr prayer at it (i.e. Al-Muhâṣṣab).” I think he mentioned the Maghrib prayer also. I said, “I don’t doubt about ‘Isha’ (i.e., he used to offer it there also), and he used to sleep there for a while. He used to say, ‘The Prophet used to do the same.’”

(149) CHAPTER. Staying at Dhi-Tuwa on returning from Makkah.

1769. Narrated Nâfi’: Whenever Ibn ‘Umar approached (Makkah), he used to pass the night at Dhi-Tuwa till dawn, and then he would enter Makkah. On his return from Makkah, he used to pass by Dhi-Tuwa and pass the night there till dawn, and he used to say that the Prophet used to do the same.

(150) CHAPTER. Trading during the time of Hajj, and selling in the markets of the Pre-Islamic Period.

1770. Narrated Ibn ‘Abbâs: Dhul-Majâz and ‘Ukâz were the markets of
the people during the Pre-Islamic Period of Ignorance. When the people embraced Islam, they disliked to do bargaining there till the following Verses were revealed:

“There is no sin on you if you seek of the Bounty of your Lord (during Hajj by trading, etc.)…” (V.2:198)

(151) CHAPTER. To depart from Al-Muḥaṣṣab in the last part of night.


[Note: The text continues with Arabic and English paragraphs, not fully transcribed here.]
My brother went with me and we came across the Prophet in the last part of the night. He said, "Wait at such and such a place."